

FROM THE LIBRARY OF
REV. LOUIS FITZGERALD BENSON, D. D.
BEQUEATHED BY HIM TO
THE LIBRARY OF
PRINCETON THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

ScB
15000

B
D
2/



THE
RUDIMENTS
OF
LATIN AND ENGLISH
GRAMMAR;

DESIGNED
TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF BOTH LANGUAGES, BY
CONNECTING THEM TOGETHER.

BY
ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D.
Rector of the High School of Edinburgh.

Grammatice est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et
quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis quam ostentationis. Ne
quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa; quia interiora velut
facri hujus adeuntibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo acuere
ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditio[n]em ac scientiam possit.
Quintilian i. 4, 5.

First American from the Fifth English Edition, with
Improvements.

Recommended by the University at *Cambridge (Mass.)*
to be used by those who are intended for that Seminary.

BOSTON:
Printed by MANNING & LORING,
For S. HALL, W. SPOTSWOOD, J. WHITE,
THOMAS & ANDREWS, D. WEST,
E. LARKIN, W. P. & L. BLAKE,
and J. WEST.

DECEMBER, 1799.

ADVERTISEMENT of CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY.

WHEREAS the University in Cambridge for several years past has suffered much inconvenience, and the interest of Letters no small detriment, from the variety of Latin and Greek Grammars used by the students, in consequence of that diversity, to which, under different instructors, they have been accustomed in their preparatory course; to promote, so far as may be, the cause of Literature, by preventing those evils in future, the Government of the University, on due consideration of the subject, has thought it expedient to request all instructors of Youth, who may resort to Cambridge for education, to adopt "*Adam's Latin Grammar*," and the "*Gloucester Greek Grammar*," with reference to such pupils, as Books singularly calculated for the improvement of students in these languages. The University has no wish to recommend, much less to dictate, to any other institution, but only to facilitate the acquisition of Literature by promoting uniformity within itself. These being the Grammars which will be used at this College by all classes, admitted after the present year, it seems necessary, to prevent future difficulty, by giving this public and timely notice; for though a knowledge of the Grammar is not at present made indispensably necessary to admission into the University, yet every Scholar, who may be accepted after the present Commencement without such knowledge, will be required immediately to form a radical and intimate acquaintance with them, as no student will be permitted at the classical exercises to use any other Grammar.

Cambridge, July 7, 1799.

P R E F A C E

TO THE
FIRST EDITION.

MAN enjoys the singular advantage of being able to communicate his thoughts by articulate sounds. Different nations employ very different verbal signs for the expression of thought ; but with respect to the nature and use of the several parts of speech in general, they uniformly agree. Hence the Principles of Grammar in all languages are much the same.

The study of Grammar has been considered as an object of great importance by the wisest men in all ages. But, like other sciences, it has often been involved in mystery, and perplexed with needless difficulties. Instead of facilitating the acquisition of languages, which was its original design, it has frequently served to render that more laborious.

As language is regular in its general structure, rules must no doubt be useful to assist us in understanding it. We first learn to speak from imitation. We use the expressions which we hear from others. But when we have once gained a certain stock of words, we employ them according to general rules. When a child, for instance, has occasion to speak of two persons, he will say, "two mans," instead of "two men ;" because he learns the general method of forming the plural, before he attends to particular exceptions. The same may be observed of a person who endeavours to acquire any foreign language. Memory furnishes us with proper terms to express our thoughts, but

but judgment must be exerted in adapting these to particular circumstances.

Every science may be reduced to principles. The principles of Grammar may be traced from the progress of the mind in the acquisition of language. Children first express their feelings by motions and gestures of the body, by cries and tears. This is the language of nature, and therefore universal. It fitly represents the quickness of sentiment and thought, which are as instantaneous as the impression of light on the eye. Hence we always express our stronger feelings by these natural signs. But when we want to make known to others the particular conceptions of the mind, we must represent them by parts, we must divide and analyze them. We express each part by certain signs, and join these together according to the order of their relations. Thus words are both the instrument and signs of the division of thought. But as words are only artificial signs of thought, and their connection with what they represent, merely arbitrary ; the same thought may be expressed by different signs, and these signs variously arranged : Hence the diversity of languages and idioms. All languages, however, must consist of the same essential parts. There must be some words to mark the subject of discourse, and others to express what we affirm concerning it. The former excite our curiosity, and by the latter it is gratified. In this manner must language have been originally invented, if it be a human invention ; and in this manner do children always acquire the use of speech. We are first taught the names of objects ; and then we learn the words, which express their qualities and actions. As we grow up, we become acquainted with the use of Prepositions, Adverbs, and Conjunctions, together with the different variations of Verbs employed to mark time, number, and person. By joining these together, we form sentences, which we compound and arrange variously, according to the sentiments we want to express. Thus we come to analyze our thoughts, and represent them by parts, so as to convey them properly to others, with all their circumstances and relations.

Grammar is founded on common sense. Every sentiment expressed by words exemplifies its rules, and the ignorant observe them, as well as the learned. The Principles of Grammar are the first abstract truths which a young mind can comprehend. Children discover their capacity for understanding the rules of Grammar, by putting them in practice. It is indeed difficult to make young people attend to what passes in their own minds. But perhaps this is partly owing to the abstruse manner in which it is laid before them. The Principles of Grammar will be most successfully taught by arranging and explaining them according to the order of nature. Every art is more or less involved in obscurity by the hard terms peculiar to it. In no art is this more remarkably the case than in Grammar. The terms it employs are so abstract, that, unless they be properly explained, even persons of advanced years cannot understand them. Could this inconvenience be thoroughly removed, the Principles of Grammar might be adapted to the meanest capacity: For were the nature of the different parts of speech, and their use in sentences properly explained, the mind would recognise its own operations, and perceive that Grammar is nothing else than a delineation of those rules which we observe in every expression of thought by words. Thus the study of Grammar would not only improve the memory, but serve in a high degree to strengthen and enlarge all the faculties of the mind.

Whatever we learn first, is the most familiar to us. For this reason children will most easily apprehend the Principles of Grammar, when explained and exemplified in that language which is natural to them. Hence it seems proper to begin in Grammar, as in reading, with the language of our own country. But as most of the modern languages in Europe are in a great measure founded on the Latin, and as a very considerable part of our knowledge, with regard both to science and taste, is derived from Latin authors, the study of Latin Grammar has generally been preferred to that of the Grammar of the mother tongue. This has particularly been the practice in this country. Till of late very little attention has been paid to the study of

English Grammar ; in consequence of which many irregularities have crept into the language, which might otherwise have been prevented. Were the importance of the two languages to come into competition, that would no doubt deserve the preference which we have the most frequent occasion to use. But to such as aim at polite literature, the study of both seems necessary : and the knowledge of the one will be found highly conducive to that of the other. The English language has received its greatest improvements from those who were masters of classical learning ; and perhaps it cannot be thoroughly understood, without some acquaintance with the Latin. It is certain, no one can properly translate from the one language into the other, without understanding the idioms of both. In order therefore to teach Latin Grammar with success, we should always join with it a particular attention to the rudiments of English. This is the design of the following attempt. And as in writing upon Grammar, materials entirely new cannot be expected, the compiler has with freedom borrowed from all hands whatever he judged fit for his purpose. He acknowledges himself particularly indebted to Mr Harris's *Hermes* with regard to the principles of universal Grammar ; to Wallis and Dr Lowth, for most of his observations concerning the English ; and to Gerard Vossius, and Ruddiman, with respect to the Latin.

The merit of any performance on this subject must in a great measure depend upon the method of illustration and arrangement. In the present essay that arrangement has been observed, which appeared most natural. The several parts of Grammar are reduced to general principles ; and after these are subjoined particular observations and exceptions. The most essential rules and remarks are printed in larger characters ; and the committing of these to memory, together with the examples, will to a learner at first, it is thought, be found sufficient. - A careful perusal of the particular observations, afterwards, joined with the reading of the classics, and the practice of writing and speaking Latin, will supersede the use of any other Grammar rules. If a further exercise for the memory be

be wanted, beautiful passages selected from the Classics seem much more proper for this purpose, than Latin verses about words and phrases, however accurately composed.

Whatever other Grammar may have formerly been taught, the perusal of the following, it is hoped, will be attended with advantage. The compiler has done every thing in his power to prepare it for the public. He has examined with care the method of education, and the several Grammars made use of both at home and abroad. He has communicated his own plan to many persons of the first character for letters in this kingdom ; and the attention which they have been pleased to pay to it, and the many useful observations which he has received from them, he will always remember with gratitude. He is still afraid, that notwithstanding all his care, some defects may be found in the execution ; but hopes that his design at least will meet with approbation, and earnestly entreats the assistance of the encouragers of learning, to enable him to bring his scheme to greater perfection..

EDINBURGH,
May, 1772.

PREFACE

P R E F A C E.

TO THE

FOURTH EDITION.

THE compiler was first led, at an early period of life, to think of composing this Book, by observing the hurtful effects of teaching boys Grammar Rules in Latin verse, which they did not understand ; while they were ignorant, not only of the principles of that language, but also of those of their mother tongue. Experience has since afforded him the most convincing proofs of the impropriety of this practice ; and his opinion has been still further confirmed by perusing the writings of the old Grammarians, and of the most eminent among the moderns. The old Grammarians, *Charisius, Diomedes, Priscianus, Probus, Donatus, Servius, Victorinus, Augustinus, Cassiodorus, Macrobius, Beda, Alcuinus,* &c.* have no verse rules ; and so in latter times *Perotte, Manutius, Erasmus, Valerius, Buchanan, Milton, &c.* Nicolaus Perotte was one of the chief restorers of learning in the fifteenth century. He died Archbishop of Siponto in 1480. The compiler has a copy of the first edition of his Grammar, printed at Brescia anno 1474. - It is composed by way of question and answer ; but without any verse rules. - Soon after the invention of printing, and perhaps before, for the compiler has not been able to ascertain the precise period, the custom was introduced of expressing the principles

* TERENTIANUS MAURUS, a learned Grammarian, by birth an African, who is supposed to have lived under Trajan, and wrote in verse, treats only of poetry.

plexes of almost every art and science in Latin and Greek verse. The rules of Logic, and even the aphorisms of Hippocrates, were taught in this manner. Among the versifiers of Latin Grammar *Despauter* and *Lily* were the most conspicuous. The first complete edition of Despauter's Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. Lily was made first Master of St Paul's school in London, by Dr. Colet, its founder, anno 1510; so that he was contemporary with Despauter. His Grammar was appointed, by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors; as, *Sanctius*, *Alvarus*, *Scioppius*, *Kirkwood*, *Watt*, *Ruddiman*, &c. to improve on the plan of Despauter and Lily; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to express with sufficient perspicuity the Principles of Grammar in Latin verse; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it should be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin Grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded in reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions from a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from Ruddiman's Grammar; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys; and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the compiler judges necessary. They are printed at the end of the book; and such as choose it, may have Lily's rules, Watt's rules, or any other, substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode*, or *Port Royal Grammar* in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek, by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the rules of Latin Grammar, in French verse. Some authors in England, as, *Clarke*, *Phillips*, &c. have imitated their example.

example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such versification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable.—However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped, will not be deemed improper..

When the learner is once master of the inflexion of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author; and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better; but he should never be obliged to get Grammar rules in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself; because although the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning : Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose. Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory ; as when there is a number of exceptions from a general rule, where alone they are indeed of advantage : and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long, that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is an useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in as short time as possible, to join without hesitation an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison ; and in like manner to touch upon any part of a verb, and tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition is followed. This facility practice alone can teach, and the method of acquiring it must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of Syntax, and the other parts of Grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors..

As the ancient Romans joined the Grammar of their own language with that of the Greek ; so we ought to connect the study of English Grammar with that of the Latin ; and when the learner properly understands Latin Grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek; the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England, and other countries, where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it boys at school learn many improprieties in point of Grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct. This attention is less requisite in England ; though even there, in the opinion of Dr. Lowth, to use his own words, “ the connection of the English with the Latin Grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, might be of good service.”*

EDINBURGH, {
Oct. 25, 1793. }

In the present edition the Appendix to Etymology has been omitted, because a larger work on that subject is intended, and will probably soon be sent to the press.

EDINBURGH, {
Jan. 23. 1798. }

* In a letter concerning this book, after having read the manuscript, dated, Cuddesdon, Sept. 27, 1771.

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of LETTERS,	1
Diphthongs	2
Syllables	3
Part II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of WORDS,	4
Division of WORDS or PARTS OF SPEECH	ib.
The ARTICLE ;—wanting in Latin	5
I. NOUN or SUBSTANTIVE,	6
English Nouns	7
Latin Nouns	8
DECLEMNION of NOUNS	ib.
GENDER of NOUNS	10
First Declension	13
Second Declension	19
Third Declension	28
Fourth Declension	47
Fifth Declension	49
IRREGULAR Nouns	ib.
DIVISION of NOUNS, according to their signification and derivation	56
ADJECTIVE	58
Numeral Adjectives	66
COMPARISON of Adjectives	69
II. PRONOUN	72
English Pronouns	ib.
Latin Pronouns	73
1. Simple Latin Pronouns	ib.
2. Compound Latin Pronouns	74
III. VERB	78
English Verbs	81
CONJUGATION of LATIN VERBS	86
First Conjugation	90
Second Conjugation	95
Third Conjugation	97
Fourth Conjugation	98
FORMATION of the different parts of Latin Verbs	99
SIGNIFICATION of the different TENSES	101

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION	104
SECOND CONJUGATION	108
THIRD CONJUGATION	112
FOURTH CONJUGATION	122
DEONENT and COMMON VERBS	124
IRREGULAR VERBS	128
DEFECTIVE VERBS	133
IMPERSONAL VERBS	135
REDUNDANT VERBS	136
<i>Obsolete Conjugation</i>	138
DERIVATION and COMPOSITION of Verbs	ib.
IV. PARTICIPLE	140
V. ADVERB	142
VI. PREPOSITION	146
VII. INTERJECTION	148
VIII. CONJUNCTION	149

PART III. SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, which treats of SENTENCES,

Division of Sentences into Simple and Compound.	151
I. SIMPLE SENTENCES	152
CONCORD or Agreement of Words in Simple Sentences	ib.
GOVERNMENT of Words in Simple Sentences	157
I. Government of SUBSTANTIVES	ib.
II. Government of ADJECTIVES	160
III. Government of VERBS	166
1. VERBS governing one case	ib.
2. VERBS governing two cases	172
Government of PASSIVE VERBS	177
of IMPERSONAL VERBS	179
Construction of the INFINITIVE	181
of PARTICIPLES, &c.	182
of GERUNDS	183
of SUPINES	185
of ADVERBS	186
Government of Adverbs	189
of PREPOSITIONS	190
Construction of CIRCUMSTANCES	196
1. Price	ib.
2. Manner and Cause	ib.
3. Place	177
4. Measure and Distance	200
5. Time	201

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
II. COMPOUND SENTENCES	201
Sentences are compounded by Relatives and Conjunctions	ib.
Construction of RELATIVES	220
of CONJUNCTIONS	205
of COMPARATIVES	210
The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	211
APPENDIX to SYNTAX ; containing	
I. Various SIGNIFICATION and CONSTRUCTION of VERBS	214
II. FIGURATIVE CONSTRUCTION, or FIGURES of SYNTAX	235
III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION	237
IV. Different kinds of STYLE	241
V. FIGURES of RHETORIC	243
1. Figures of Words or TROPS	ib.
2. Repetition of Words	248
3. Figures of Thought	249
 Part IV. PROSODY, which treats of the Quantity	
of Syllables, of Accent and Verse,	
I. QUANTITY of SYLLABLES	252
1. Quantity of first and middle Syllables	ib.
2. Quantity of final Syllables	253
Quantity of Derivatives and Compounds	261
Quantity of Derivatives and Compounds	264
II. ACCENT	266
III. VERSE	267
The measuring of Verses by Feet, or SCANNING	ib.
Different kinds of Verses	268
FIGURES in SCANNING	275
Different kinds of POEMS	277
Combination of Verses in Poems	278
Different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan	279
ENGLISH VERSE	281
APPENDIX I. Punctuation, Capitals, &c.	286
II. Rules from Ruddiman's Grammar	291

THE

THE
RUDIMENT'S
OF
LATIN AND ENGLISH
GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of grammar.

LETTERS.

A Letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z;

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W, w.*

Letters

| Letters are divided into *Vowels*, and *Consonants*. |

| Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants. |

| A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e, i*. |

| A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*. |

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concourse of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, q, and g*; but *b, d, and g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as, *bla, stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, be, &c.* but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el, em, &c.*

The double consonants are, *x, z, and j*. *X* is made up of *cs*, *ks*, or *gs*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

Y in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

| A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound. |

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To these, some, not improperly, add other three, namely, *ai*; as in *Maius*; *oi*, as in *Troia*: and *ui*, as in *Harpua*, or in *cui* and *hūic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *æ*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as *aetas*, or *ætas*; *œ*, or *æ*; as *poena* or *pæna*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs, the just pronunciation of which practice alone can teach. In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded; as in *beauty*, *lieutenant*.

S Y L L A B L E S.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as *a*, *to*, *strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds; as, *in-fal-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *sua-deo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Disyllables*; and of more than two, *Poly-syllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Poly-syllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-ūtor*, *in-ops*, *propt̄er-ea*, *et-ēnim*, *vel-ut*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb, as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c.

Observe: A long syllable is thus marked [-]; as, *amāre*;

or with a circumflex accent thus, [^]; as, *amáris*. A short syllable is marked thus [˘]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology, or Analogy.*

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives, Attributives, and Connectives.* Thus in the following sentence, "The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home," the words *boy, lesson, school, home,* are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent, reads, carefully,* express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the, in, and, at,* are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound, primitive or derivative.*

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius, pious; ego, I; dōceo, I teach.*

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word, and some syllable added, as, *impius, impious; dēdōceo, I unteach; ēgōmet, I myself.*

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius, pious; disco, I learn; dōceo, I teach.*

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *pietas, piety; doctrīna, learning.*

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech.*

PARTS OF SPEECH.

| The parts of speech in Latin are eight;
 1. *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle;* declined:
 2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction;* undeclined. }

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined* which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old; all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel; or a silent *h*.

A is called the *Indefinite*; *The* the *Definite Article*.

A is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is: *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

A man means simply some one or other of that kind: *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may signify, either, *a son of a king*, or *a king's son*; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

The placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted; as, *the lion*, *the ox*, &c.

A can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number: *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole; as, *a thousand men*, *a few*, *a great many men*.

The is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly; as, “*the wiser*,” “*the better*;” “*the more I think of it, the better I like it*.”

NOUN.

N O U N.

| A noun is either substantive or adjective. |

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

S U B S T A N T I V E.

| A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book.*)

| Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.)

| Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places; such are, *Cæsar, Rome.*)

| Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*)

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude: men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an Alexander*;" or, "The *Alexander* of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*, that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive : in Latin, by declension, or by different cases ; that is, by changing the termination of the noun ; as, *rex*, a king, or *the king* ; *rēgis*, of a king, or of the king.

ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the genitive, or possessive case, which is formed from the noun, by adding an *s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it ; as, *John's book*, the same with, *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnie book*.

Some have thought the 's a contraction for *his* ; but improperly ; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justness, that by the addition of the 's the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added ; as, *for righteousness sake* ; and never to the plural number ending in *s* ; as, *on eagles wings*. Perhaps it would be better in the plural, when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle, and not the possessive form ; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used ; as, *a soldier of the king's* : but here there are two possessives ; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es* ; as, *king, kings* ; *church, churches* ; *brush, brushes* ; *witness, witnesses* ; *fox, foxes* ; *leaf, leaves* ; in which last, and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en* ; as *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound ; as, *brethren, children, swine, kine, women, men, &c.* for *brotheren, sowen, &c.* Instead of *kine* we now commonly say *cows* ; and we seldom use *brethren* but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *i* ; as, *cherry, cherries, city, cities*. *Cherry's, city's, &c.* are in the possessive case.

Some

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly; as, *mouse*, *mice*; *louse*, *lice*; *tooth*, *teeth*; *foot*, *feet*; *goose*, *geese*, &c.

The words *sheep*, *deer*, are the same in both numbers. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, or in the plural form; as, *wheat*, *pitch*, *gold*, *sloth*, *pride*, &c. and *bellows*, *scissars*, *lungs*, *bowels*, &c.

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination, to express gender; as *prince*, *princess*; *actor*, *actress*; *lion*, *lioness*; *hero*, *heroine*; *duke*, *duchess*, &c.

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender: unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as persons; as, when we say of the sun, *he shines*; or of the moon, *she shines*.

LATIN NOUNS.

(A Latin noun is declined by Genders, Cases, and Numbers.)

(There are three genders, *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.)

(The cases are six, *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.)

(There are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*.)

(There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth declensions*.)

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cūdo*, to fall; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, the straight case; and the other cases, *cāsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *a* diphthong; the second has *i*; the third

third has *is*; the fourth has *us*; and the fifth has *ēi* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES of Declension.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a.*

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomās*, *Thoma*; *Anchīses*, *Anchise*; *Pāris*, *Pari*; *Pan-thus*, *Panthu*; *Pallas*, *-antis*; *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ō Achilleś*, rarely *-e*; *O Socrātes*, seldom *-e*: and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais*, *Mysis*, *Pallas*, *-ādis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duo-decim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English;

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>a king</i> ,
Gen. of	<i>a king</i> ,
Dat. to or for	<i>a king</i> ,
Acc.	<i>a king</i> ,
Voc. O	<i>king</i> ,
Abl. with, from, in, by,	<i>a king</i> ,
	<i>Abl. with, from, in, by, kings.</i>
	2. With

2. With the definite article, 'the king.'

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>the king;</i>	Nom. <i>the kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of the king,</i>	Gen. <i>of the kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for the king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for the kings,</i>
Acc. <i>the king,</i>	Acc. <i>the kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O king,</i>	Voc. <i>O kings,</i>
Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the king:</i>	Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the kings.</i>

GENERAL RULES

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex; but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bona penna*, a good pen, and not *bonus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hōmērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hēlēna*, Helen; *mūlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sōror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as, *Hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hæc pārens*, a mother.)

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adolescens,

dólescens,	a young man, or woman.	Conjux, a husband or wife.	Nēmo, no body.
Juvēnis,		Convīva, a guest.	Obses, an hostage.
Affīnis, a relation by marriage.		Custos, a keeper.	Patruēlis, a cousin-german by the father's
Antiflēs, a prelate.		Dux, a leader.	Prāes, a surety. [side.
Auctōr, an author.		Hæres, an heir.	Princeps, a prince or princess.
Augur, a seothsayer.		Hostis, an enemy.	Sacerdos, a priest or priestess.
Cānis, a dog or bitch.		Infans, an infant.	Sus, a swine.
Cīvis, a citizen.		Interpres, an interpreter.	Testis, a witness.
Cliens, a client.		Jūdex, a judge. [ter.	Vātes, a prophet.
Cōmes, a companion.		Martyr, a martyr.	Vindex, an avenger.*
		Miles, a soldier.	
		Mūnīceps, a burgher.	

But *antiflēs*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine, thus, *antiflēta*, *clienta*, *hospīta*: in the same manner with *lēo*, a lion; *leēna*, a lioness; *ēquus*, *ēqua*; *mūlus*, *mūla*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *ad-vēna*, a stranger; *agricōla*, a husbandman; *assecla*, an attendant; *accōla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *ōpifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipiūm*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner *ōpēræ*, slaves or day-labourers; *vīgiliæ*, *excūbiæ*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. I. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *paffer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *āquila*,

* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*.

Affīnis, *vindex*, *jūdex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,

Augur, et *antiflēs*, *juvēnis*, *convīva*, *sacerdos*,

Mūnīceps, *vātes*, *adolescens*, *cīvis*, et *auctōr*,

Custos, *nēmo*, *comes*, *testis*, *fus*, *bosque*, *canisque*,

Interpresque, *cliens*, *princeps*, *prāes*, *martyr*, et *obses*.

Aquila, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene* or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *femina*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *femina passer*, a female sparrow.

OBS. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprīlis*, April; *hic Aquilo*, the north wind; *hic Afrīcus*, the south-west wind; *hic Tīberis*, the river Tiber; *hic Oīrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Aētna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Sōraēte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as, *hæc Aīgyptus*, Egypt; *Sāmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrinthus*, the city Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems, *hæc īlia*s, -*ados*, and *Olyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Aēnēis*, -*idos*, a poem of Virgil's; *hæc Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, -*ōnis*; *Pessīnus*, -*untis*; *Hydrus*, -*untis*, names of towns; *hæc Persis*, -*idis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, -*iuis*, the city Carthage; *hoc Albion*, Britain; *hoc Cere*, *Reāte*, *Prānestē*, *Tībur*, *īlium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelida Prānestē*, Juvenal. iii. 190.; *Alta Iliōn*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *bleaster*, -*tri*, a wild olive tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cytīsus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *ītus*, the lot-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum* the bush, or box-tree; *lignystrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, -*ēris* the cork-

cork-tree; *sīler*, -ēris, the osier; *rōbur*, -ōris, oak of the hardest kind; *ācer*, -ēris, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbuslūm*, *quercētūm*, *escūlētūm*, *sālīctūm*, *frūtīcētūm*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: Also the names of fruits and timber, as, *pānum*, or *mālūm*, an apple; *pīrum*, a pear; *ēbēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dīes*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vālūs*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

| Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.
Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the *ter-*
minine gender. |

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *æ* diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *â*: Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ*; Gen. *ārum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*: Thus,

Singular.	Penna, <i>a pen</i> , fem.	Plural.	Termina-
<i>N.</i> penna, <i>a pen</i> ;	<i>N.</i> pennæ, <i>pens</i> ;		<i>a</i> ,
<i>G.</i> pennæ, <i>of a pen</i> ;	<i>G.</i> pennārum, <i>of pens</i> ;		<i>æ</i> ,
<i>D.</i> pennæ, <i>to a pen</i> ;	<i>D.</i> pennis, <i>to pens</i> ;		<i>æ</i> ,
<i>A.</i> pennam, <i>a pen</i> ;	<i>A.</i> pennas, <i>pens</i> ;		<i>am</i> ,
<i>V.</i> penna, <i>O pen</i> ;	<i>V.</i> pennæ, <i>O pens</i> ;		<i>a</i> ,
<i>A.</i> pennâ, <i>with a pen</i> :	<i>A.</i> pennis, <i>with pens.</i>		<i>â</i> ,
		In like manner decline,	<i>is.</i>

Ācerra, <i>a censer.</i>	Ālūta, <i>tanned leather.</i>	Āncilla, <i>an handmaid.</i>
Ācta, <i>the score.</i>	Āmbrōsia, <i>the food of the gods.</i>	Ānchōra, <i>an anchor.</i>
Āera, <i>a period of time.</i>	Āmita, <i>an aunt, the father's sister.</i>	Ānguilla, <i>an eel.</i>
Āerumina, <i>toil.</i>	Āmphōra, <i>a cask.</i>	Anfa, <i>a handle.</i>
Āgricōla, <i>a bryhandman.</i>	Āmpullia, <i>a jug. plur. bombast.</i>	Āntenna, <i>a sail-yard.</i>
Āla, <i>a wing.</i>	Āmurea, <i>the lees of oil.</i>	Āntlia, <i>a pump.</i>
Āläpa, <i>a blow.</i>		Āqua, <i>water.</i>
Ālauda, <i>a lark.</i>		Āquila, <i>an eagle.</i>
Ālga, <i>sea-weed.</i>		Āra, <i>an altar.</i>
		Ārēnea,

Arānea, <i>a spider.</i>	Cātāulta, <i>an engine to cast darts.</i>	Crēpida, <i>a scupper.</i>
Arca, <i>a chest.</i>	Cātēna, <i>a chain.</i>	Ciēta, <i>chalk.</i>
Ardea, & -eōla, <i>a heron.</i>	Cāterva, <i>a body of men.</i>	Ciūta, <i>a crest.</i>
Ārea, <i>an open place.</i>	Cāthedra, <i>a chair, a pulpit.</i>	Crūmēna, <i>a purse.</i>
Ārēna, <i>sand.</i>	Cauda, <i>the tail.</i>	Crusta, & -um, <i>a morsel.</i>
Argilla, <i>potter's earth.</i>	Caula, <i>a sleep-cote.</i>	Culcīta, <i>circusion.</i>
Ārista, <i>an ear of corn.</i>	Causa, <i>a cause.</i>	Cūlīna, <i>a kitchen.</i>
Airha, <i>an earnest penny.</i>	Cāverna, <i>a cavern.</i>	Culpa, <i>a fault.</i>
Arvīna, <i>fat.</i>	Cāvilla, <i>a banter.</i>	Cūmēra, <i>a corn basket.</i>
Aſcia, <i>an ex.</i>	Cella, <i>a cell.</i>	Cūpa, <i>a tun.</i>
Athlēta, <i>m. a wrestler.</i>	Cēra, <i>wax.</i>	Cūra, <i>care.</i>
Aula, <i>a hall.</i>	Cērēmonia, <i>a ceremony.</i>	Cūria, <i>a senate-house.</i>
Aura, <i>a breeze.</i>	Cervīsia, <i>ale, beer.</i>	Currūca, <i>a hedge-sparrow.</i>
Aurīga, <i>m. a charioteer.</i>	Cērussa, <i>white lead, paint.</i>	Cymba, <i>a boat.</i>
Āvia, <i>a grandmother.</i>	Cetra, <i>a square target.</i>	Dēcempēda, <i>a pole of ten feet.</i>
Axilla, <i>the arm-pit.</i>	Charta, <i>paper.</i>	Diæta, <i>diet, food.</i>
Bälæna, <i>a whale.</i>	Chorda, <i>a string.</i>	Döläbra, <i>an ex.</i>
Barba, <i>a beard.</i>	Cicāda, <i>a kind of insect.</i>	Drachma, <i>a drachm, a weight or coin.</i>
*-Bīla. <i>any large beast.</i>	Cicōnia, <i>a fork.</i>	Epistōla, <i>a letter.</i>
Band. <i>þāntrast.</i>	Cicūta, <i>hemlock.</i>	Esca, <i>a bait.</i>
Bēta, <i>beet, an herb.</i>	Cināra, <i>an artichoke.</i>	Fäba, <i>a bean.</i>
Bibliōpōla, <i>a bookseller.</i>	Cista, <i>a chest.</i>	Fäbūla, <i>a fable.</i>
Bibliōthēca, <i>a library.</i>	Cisterna, <i>a cistern.</i>	Fāma, <i>fame.</i>
Blatta, <i>a moth.</i>	Cithāra, <i>a harp.</i>	Fārīna, <i>meal.</i>
Braðte, <i>a thin leaf of gold.</i>	Clāva, <i>a club.</i>	Fascia, <i>a bandage.</i>
Brassīca, <i>collyflower.</i>	Clepsydra, <i>an hour-glass.</i>	Fävilla, <i>embers.</i>
Brūma, <i>winter.</i>	Cloūca, <i>a sink.</i>	Fēneſtra, <i>a window.</i>
Bulla, <i>a bubble, a ball of bees.</i>	Cochlea, <i>a snail.</i>	Fēra, <i>a wild beast.</i>
Byrsā, <i>an ox-hide.</i>	Cœna, <i>a supper.</i>	Fērūla, <i>a red.</i>
Calīga, <i>a kind of shoe set with nails.</i>	Cōlumbā, <i>a pigeon.</i>	Festūca, <i>the shoot of a tree.</i>
Caltha, <i>marygold.</i>	Cōma, <i>the hair.</i>	Fibra, <i>a fibre.</i>
Calvīa & calvaria, <i>a skull.</i>	Cōmœdia, <i>a comedy.</i>	Fibūla, <i>a clasp. [Sel.</i>
Cālumnia, <i>slander.</i>	Concha, <i>a shell.</i>	Fidēlia, <i>an earthen vessel.</i>
Cāmēna, <i>a muse, a song.</i>	Cōpia, <i>plenty.</i>	Fimbria, <i>a fringe.</i>
Cāmēra, <i>a vault.</i>	Cōpūla, <i>a bond.</i>	Fiscīna, <i>a bag, or basket.</i>
Campāna, <i>a bell.</i>	Corrigia, <i>a shoe-latchet.</i>	Fistūca, <i>a rammer.</i>
Canna, <i>a cane or reed.</i>	Cōrōna, <i>a crown, a circle.</i>	Fistūla, <i>a pipe.</i>
Candēla, <i>a candle.</i>	Cortīna, <i>a cauldron.</i>	Flamma, <i>a flame.</i>
Capra, <i>a sheep-goat.</i>	Costa, <i>a rib.</i>	Fœmīna, <i>a woman.</i>
Capsa, <i>a coffer.</i>	Coxa, <i>the haunch.</i>	Forma, <i>a form.</i>
Cārīna, <i>the keel of a ship.</i>	Crāpūla, <i>a surfet.</i>	Formīca, <i>an ant.</i>
Cāſa, <i>a cottage.</i>	Crātēra, <i>a cup.</i>	Fossa, <i>a ditch.</i>
Castānea, <i>a chestnut.</i>	Crāticūla, <i>a gridiron.</i>	Fōvea, <i>a pit.</i>
	Crēna, <i>a notch.</i>	Frāmea, <i>a skurt spear.</i>
		Fūlīca, <i>a sea-sow.</i>
		Funda,

Funda, a <i>sling.</i>	Läcerna, a <i>riding coat.</i>	Mätēria, <i>matter, stuff,</i> <i>timber.</i>
Furca, a <i>fork.</i>	Läcerta, a <i>lizard.</i>	Mätertēra, <i>the mother's</i> <i>sister.</i>
Fuscīna, a <i>trident.</i>	Läcīnia, a <i>fringe.</i>	Matta, a <i>mat or mat-</i>
Gälēa, an <i>helmet.</i>	Lacrȳmia, a <i>tear.</i>	Mätūla, a <i>chamber-pot.</i>
Gallīna, - a <i>hen.</i> [ulcer.	Lactūca, <i>lettuce.</i>	Mēdulla, <i>marrow.</i>
Gangræna, an <i>eating</i>	Läcūna, a <i>ditch.</i>	Membrāna, a <i>thin skin,</i> <i>a film; parchment.</i>
Gaza, a <i>treasure.</i>	Lägēna, a <i>flagon.</i>	Mēmōria, <i>memory.</i>
Gemīna, a <i>gem.</i>	Läma, a <i>ditch.</i>	Mensa, a <i>table.</i>
Gěna, the <i>cheek.</i>	Lämīa, a <i>sorceress.</i>	Mēnsūra, a <i>measure.</i>
Gēnista, <i>broom.</i>	Lämīna, a <i>plate.</i>	Merda, <i>dung.</i>
Gingīva, the <i>gum.</i>	Lāna, <i>wool.</i>	Mērga, a <i>pitch-fork.</i>
Glārea, <i>gravel.</i>	Lancea, a <i>spear or spear.</i>	Mērūla, a <i>black bird.</i>
Glēba, a <i>clod.</i>	Länista, m. a <i>fencing-</i> <i>master.</i>	Mēta, a <i>goal.</i>
Güla, the <i>gullet.</i>	Larva, a <i>magg.</i>	Mētāphōra, a <i>trope.</i>
Gutta, a <i>drop.</i>	Läterna, a <i>lantern.</i>	Mīca, a <i>crumb.</i>
Häbēna, a <i>rein.</i>	Latrīna, a <i>house of of-</i> <i>fice.</i>	Mitra, a <i>mitre.</i>
Hära, a <i>hog-sty.</i>	Lectīca, a <i>sedan- or</i> <i>chair.</i>	Möla, a <i>mill.</i>
Härūga, a <i>sacrifice.</i>	Lēna, a <i>batwd.</i>	Mönēdūla, a <i>jack-daw.</i>
Hasta, a <i>spear.</i>	Lepra, the <i>leprosy.</i>	Mönēta, <i>money.</i>
Hēdēra, <i>ivy.</i>	Libra, a <i>pound.</i>	Mōra, a <i>delay.</i>
Herba, an <i>herb.</i>	Ligūla, a <i>latchet.</i>	Multa, a <i>fine.</i>
Herma, v. -es, m. a statue of Mercury.	Läma, a <i>file.</i>	Mūræna, a <i>lamprey.</i>
Hernia, a <i>rupture.</i>	Linea, a <i>line.</i>	Mūria, <i>pickle, brine.</i>
Hilla, a <i>sausage.</i>	Lingua, the <i>tongue.</i>	Mūsa, a <i>muse.</i>
Hōra, an <i>hour.</i>	Līra, a <i>ridge or fīryxv.</i>	Muīca, a <i>fly.</i>
Hostia, a <i>victim.</i>	Litēra, a <i>letter.</i>	Mustēla, a <i>weasel.</i>
Hydria, a <i>water-pot.</i>	Lōcusta, a <i>locust.</i>	Myrrha, <i>myrrh.</i>
Jactūra, <i>loss.</i>	Lūcerna, a <i>light.</i>	Myrica, a <i>tamarisk.</i>
Jānua, a <i>gate.</i>	Lūna, the <i>moon.</i>	Mysta, v. -es, m. a priest.
Idea, a <i>form, an idea.</i>	Luscīnia, a <i>nightingale.</i>	Naiſa, a <i>net.</i>
Idiōta, m. an <i>illiterate</i> <i>person.</i>	Lymphā, <i>water.</i>	Nausea, <i>sea-sickness.</i>
Ignōmīnia, an <i>affront.</i>	Lyra, a <i>lyre.</i>	Nauta, m. a <i>mariner.</i>
Illēcebra, an <i>allure-</i> <i>ment.</i>	Mächiūna, a <i>machine.</i>	Nitēdūla, a <i>field mouse.</i>
Impensa, <i>expense.</i>	Mactra, a <i>kneading</i> <i>trough.</i>	Nœnia, a <i>funeral song.</i>
Indīgena, m. a <i>native.</i>	Mäcula, a <i>stain.</i>	Norma, a <i>rule.</i>
Inedia, <i>hunger.</i>	Mäla, the <i>cheek-bone.</i>	Nōvācūla, a <i>razor.</i>
Infūla, a <i>mitre.</i>	Mälacia, a <i>calm.</i>	Nōverca, a <i>step-mother.</i>
Injūria, a <i>wrong.</i>	Malva, a <i>mallow.</i>	Nympha, a <i>nymph.</i>
Inōpia, <i>want.</i>	Mamīna, a <i>pup.</i>	Occa, an <i>harrow.</i>
Instīta, a <i>fringe.</i>	Mänīca, a <i>sleeve.</i>	Ocrea, a <i>boot.</i>
Insūla, an <i>island.</i>	Mantīca, a <i>wallet.</i>	Öda, v. -e, an <i>ode or</i> <i>song.</i>
Inūla, <i>decampagne, an</i> <i>herb.</i>	Mappa, a <i>napkin.</i>	Offa, a <i>morsel.</i>
Invidīa, <i>envy.</i>	Margārīta, a <i>pearl.</i>	Olea, an <i>olive.</i>
Ira, <i>anger.</i>	Marra, a <i>mattock.</i>	Olla, a <i>pot.</i>
Juba, the <i>mane.</i>	Massa, a <i>bump.</i>	

Ora, a coast.	Pīca, a magpy.	Rāna, a frog.
Oribita, a paib.	Pīla, a ball.	Rēpulsa, a refusat.
Orca, a jar.	Pila, a pillar.	Resīna, rosin.
Orchestra, the stage, or the place next it, where the nobles sat.	Pincerna, m. a butler.	Rhēda, a chariot.
Ostrea, an oyster.	Pinna, a fin, a wing.	Rīma, a chink.
Pænūla, a riding coat.	Pirāta, m. a pirate.	Rīpa, a bank.
Página, a page.	Piscīna, a fish-pond.	Rīxa, a scoll.
Pálala, a shovel.	Pituita, phlegm.	Rōsa, a rose.
Pálæstra, a rerefiling, or place for it.	Plicenta, a cake.	Rōta, a wheel.
Pálea, chaff.	Plága, a climate.	Rüga, a wrinkle.
Palinōdia, a recanta- tion.	Plága, a blow.	Ryñna, a downfall.
Palla, a large goren.	Planta, a plant.	Runcīna, a saw or Rūta, rue. [plane.
Palma, the palm.	Plátēa, or Platēa, a broad street.	Säburra, ballast.
Palpebra, the eye lid.	Plúma, a feather.	Säga, a scrcereſe.
Pápilla, the nipple.	Plūvia, rain.	Sägina; cramming.
Pápula, a pimple.	Pödagra, the gout.	Sägitta, an arrow.
Päräböla, comparing things together.	Pœna, a punishment.	Sälebra, a rugged way.
Parma, a shield.	Poëta, m. a poet.	Säliunca, lavender.
Parra, a jay.	Poetria, a poetess.	Säliva, spittle.
Pätéra, a goblet.	Pölenta, malt.	Salpa, stock fış.
Pausa, a stop or pause.	Pölitia, policy.	Sambūca, an harp, or engine of war.
Pédica, a fetter.	Pompa, a procession.	Sanctimōnia, devotion.
Pénūla, a mantle.	Pöpa, m. a priest who slew the sacrifice.	Sandäpila, a bier.
Pénūria, want.	Pöpīna, a tavern.	Sanna, a ſoſſ.
Péra, a purse.	Porta, a gate.	Sarcīna, a burden.
Perca, a perch.	Præd, plunder.	Särissa, a long spear.
Fersüga, m. a deserter.	Prærögātiva, sc. tri- bus, v. centuria, that voted first.	Saträpa, v. -es, m. a Persian governor.
Pergämēna, sc. char- ta, parchment.	Pröcella, a storm.	Sätyra, a satyr.
Perna, a gammon of bacon.	Prōra, the prow.	Scäla, a ladder.
Personā, a mask.	Prōſa, prose.	Scandūla, a lath to cov- er houses.
Pertīca, a pole.	Prōſapia, a race.	Scäpha, a boat.
Petra, a rock.	Pruina, boar frost.	Scäpūla, the ſoulder.
Phälärīca, a long spear.	Prūna, a burning coal.	Scēna, a ſage.
Phäretra, a quiver.	Pſaltria, a music girl.	Schēda, a ſheet or ſcrolly.
Phäſiāna, sc. avis, a pheasant.	Puella, a girl.	Schöla, a ſchool.
Phiäläla, a vial.	Pugna, a battle.	Scintilla, a spark.
Philōmēla, a nightin- gale.	Pulpa, the pulp.	Scriblita, a tart or wafer.
Philýra, the linden tree, a leaf of paper.	Pūpīla, the apple of the eye.	Scrofūla, the king's evil.
Phiōca, a ſea-calf.	Purpūra, purple.	Scurra, m. a buffoon.
	Pustūla, a blister.	Scütica, a scourge.
	Pyra, a funeral pile.	Scytala, a kind of ſer- pent, or round ſtaff.
	Quadra, ४ -um, a square.	Sēlibra, half a pound.
	Räbūla, m. a wrangler.	Semihōra, half an hour.
		Sēmita,

Sēmīta, a path.	Sublīca, a pil.	Tūba, a trumpet.
Sententia, an opinion.	Sūbūčula, a skirt.	Tūnīca, a tunic.
Sentīna, a sink.	Sūbūla, an awl. [con.	Turba, a crowd.
Sēra, a lock.	Succīdia, a fitch of ba-	Turma, a troop.
Serra, a saw.	Summa, a sum, the	Ulna, an ell.
Sesquihōra, an hour and a half.	whole.	Ulūla, an owl.
Sēta, a bristle.	Sūperbia, pride.	Ulva, sedge.
Sibylla, a prophetess.	Sūra, the calf of the leg.	Umbra, a shade.
Sīca, a dagger.	Sutrina, sc. taberna,	Unda, a wave.
Silīqua, an huk.	a shoemaker's shop.	Ungūla, a nail, the
Silva, a wood.	Sūtūra, a seam.	hoof.
Sīmia, an ape.	Sycōphanta, m. a	Ūpūpa, the hoopoe, a
Simīla, flour.	sharper.	bird.
Sítūla, a bucket.	Syllāba, a syllable.	Ūrīna, urine.
Sōcořdia, sloth.	Symhōla, a club, a	Urna, an urn.
Sōlea, a sole.	share of a reckoning.	Urtīca, a nettle.
Sōphista, ſ -es, m.	Syniphōnia, harmony.	Ūva, a grape.
a sophist.	Syngrapha, a bill or	Vacea, a cow.
Spēcula, a watchtower.	bond.	Vāgīna, a scabbard.
Spēlunca, a cave.	Tāberna, a shop.	Vappa, palled wine, a
Sphēra, a sphere.	Tābūla, a table.	spendthrift.
Spīca, an ear of corn.	Tæda, a torch.	Vena, a vein.
Spiňa, the back bone.	Tænia, a ribbon.	Vénia, leave.
Spira, a wreath.	Techna, a trick or	Verna, m. an home-
Sponda, a bedstead.	wile.	born slave.
Spongia, a sponge.	Tēgūla, a tile.	Verrūca, a wart.
Sponsa, a bride.	Tēla, a web.	Vēsīca, the bladder.
Sporta, a boar.	Tērebra, a thimble.	Vespa, a wasp.
Spūma, foam.	Terra, the earth.	Via, a way.
Squāma, a scale.	Teisēra, a dye.	Vicia, a vetch or tare.
Squilla, a prawn or	Testa, an earthen pot.	Victīma, a victim.
shrimp.	Textīna, a weaver's	Victōria, a conquest.
Stātēra, a balance.	shop.	Villa, a country seat.
Stātua, a statue.	Thēca, a case.	Vindēmia, vintage.
Stella, a star.	Tibia, a pipe, the leg.	Vindičta, vengeance:
Stipūla, nubile.	Tilia, the linden tree.	a rod laid on the head
Stīria, an icicle.	Tīnea, a moth.	of slaves when freed.
Stīva, the plough-tail.	Tonstrīna, a barber's	Vičla, a violet.
Stōla, a gown.	shop.	Vipēra, a viper.
Strangūria, the making	Trāgēdia, a tragedy.	Virga, a rod.
of water with great	Trāgūla, a javelin	Vita, life.
pain.	with a barbed head.	Vitča, a fillet.
Strēna, a new year's	Traheā, a sledge or dray.	Viverra, a ferret.
gift.	Trāma, the woof.	Vōla, the palm of the
Strūma, a botch.	Trochlea, a pulley.	hand.
Stūpa, tow.	Trullā, a trowel.	Zōna, a girdle, a zone.
	Trūtīna, a balance.	

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea; *cōmeta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *fāmīlia* usually retain; as, *māter-fāmīlias*, the mistress of a family; genit. *mātris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

<i>Aīma</i> , the soul, the life.	<i>Filia</i> , & <i>Nāta</i> , a daughter.
<i>Dea</i> , a goddess.	<i>Lībera</i> , a freed woman.
<i>Fqua</i> , a mare.	<i>Mūla</i> , a she-mule.
<i>Fāmūla</i> , a female servant.	

Thus *deābus*, *filiābus*, rather than *filii*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

| Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.)

| Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative, as, *Ænēas*, *Æneas*, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēe*; dat. -*æ*; acc. -*am* or *an*; voc. -*a*; abl. -*ā*.) So *Bōreas*, -*eae*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, -*e*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Ossa*, -*am*, or -*an*, the name of a mountain.

| Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

Anchīses, Anchises, the name of a man.

Singular.

Nom. Anchīses,

Acc. Anchisen,

Gen. Anchisē,

Voc. Anchise,

Dat. Anchisē,

Abl. Anchise.

Pēnēlōpe, Penelope, the name of a woman.

Singular.

Nom. Pēnēlōpe,

Acc. Penelopen,

Gen. Penelopes,

Voc. Penelope,

Dat. Penelope,

Abl. Penelope.)

These

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

| The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Airīda*, for *Airīdes*; *Perſa*, for *Perſes*, a Persian; *Geometra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *Epiſc̄ina*, for *-me*, an abridgment; *Grammātica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhetōrica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note. We sometimes find the genit. plur. contracted; as, *Cælicolūm*, for *Cælicolarum*; *Æneādīm*, for *-arum*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

{ Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*. }

| Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine. }

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*:) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

| *Gēner*, a son in law, masc.

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
Nom. <i>gēner</i> ,	Nom. <i>gēnēri</i> ,	<i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>i</i> ,
Gen. <i>genēri</i> ,	Gen. <i>generōrum</i> ,	<i>i</i> , <i>orum</i> ,
Dat. <i>genero</i> ,	Dat. <i>generis</i> ,	<i>o</i> , <i>is</i> ,
Acc. <i>generum</i> ,	Acc. <i>generos</i> ,	<i>um</i> , <i>os</i> ,
Voc. <i>gener</i> ,	Voc. <i>generi</i> ,	<i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> ,
Abl. <i>genero</i> .	Abl. <i>generis</i> .	<i>o</i> , <i>is</i> .

After the same manner decline *sōcer*, *-ēri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-ēri*, a boy: So *Farc̄ifer*, a villain; *Luc̄ifer*, the morning star; *ādulter*, an adulterer; *arm̄iger*, an armour bearer; *presb̄yter*, an elder; *Mulc̄iber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *īber*, *-ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celt̄iber*, *-ēri*: Also, *vir*, *vīri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *Lēvir*, a brother-in-law; *Sem̄vir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *Sātur*, *-ēri*, full, (cf old *saturus*,) an adjective.

| But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,
Ager, a field, masc.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. äger,	Nom. agri,
Gen. agri,	Gen. agrōrum,
Dat. agro,	Dat. agris,
Acc. agrum,	Acc. agros,
Voc. ager,	Voc. agri,
Abl. agro.	Abl. agris.)

In like manner decline,

Äper, a wild boar.	Cäper, an he goat.	Fäber, a workman.
Arbiter, (S -tra,) a judge.	Cöläter, S -bra, a serpent.	Mägister, a master.
Auster, the south-wind.	Culter, the coulter of a plough, a knife.	Minister, a servant.
Cancer, a crab fyb.		Önäger, a wild ass.

Also *liber*, the bark of a trēe, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the God of wine, have *liberi*. So likewise proper names, Alexander, Evander, Periander, Mēnander, Teucer, Mēleäger, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *evandri*, &c.

Döminus, a lord, masc.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. döminus,	Nom. dömini,
Gen. domini,	Gen. dominōrum,
Dat. domino,	Dat. dominis,
Acc. dominum,	Acc. döminos,
Voc. domine,	Voc. domini,
Abl. domino.	Abl. dominis.)

In like manner decline,

Äbäcus, a table or desk.	Argentarius, a banker.	Cächinnus, a loud laugh.
Äcerbus, a heap.	Arnius, the shoulder of a beast; also of a man.	Cäduceus, a wand.
Äcüleus, a sting.	Äsinus, S -a, an ass.	Cädus, a coif.
Agnus, a lamb.	Autumnus, the autumn.	Cälamus, a reed.
Älnus, f. an alder tree.	Ävus, a grandfather.	Cäläthus, a basket.
Alvens, the channel of a river.	Ävunculus, the mother's brother.	Callus, S -um, hard flesh.
Angulus, a corner.	Bajulus, a porter.	Cäminus, a chimney.
Annum, the mind.	Barbas, an elephant.	Campus, a plain.
Annus, a year.	Bélus, a morsel.	Canthärus, a cup or jug.
Annulus, a ring.	Bombus, a buzz.	Carduus, a thistle.
Anus, a circle.	Cäballus, a pack-horse.	Carpus, the wrist.
Architectus, a master-builder.	Cäcabus, a hilt.	Carrus, S -um, a cart.

Cascus;

Cāſeus, <i>cheſe</i> .	Cūbitus, <i>a cubit</i> .	Furnus, <i>an oven</i> .
Cātālögus, <i>a roll</i> .	Cūcullus, <i>a hood</i> .	Fūſus, <i>a spindle</i> .
Cātinus, <i>a platter</i> .	Cūcūlus vel cūcūlus, <i>a</i> <i>cuckoo</i> .	Gallus, <i>a cock</i> .
Caurus, <i>a west wind</i> .	Cūleus, <i>a leather bag</i> .	Gērūlus, <i>a porter</i> .
Cedrus, f. <i>a cedar tree</i> .	Culmus, <i>a stalk</i> .	Gibbus, <i>a swelling</i> .
Cer̄sus, <i>a stag</i> .	Cūlullus, <i>a pot or jug</i> .	Glādius, <i>a sword</i> .
Cētus, <i>a whale</i> , pl. ce- te, n. indecl.	Cūmīlus, <i>an heap</i> .	Glōbus, <i>a globe</i> .
Chīrurgus, <i>a surgeon</i> .	Cūneus, <i>a wedge</i> .	Grābātus, <i>a couch</i> .
Chōrus, <i>a choir</i> .	Cūnicūlus, <i>a rabbit</i> .	Grācūlus, <i>a jackdaw</i> .
Cibus, <i>meat</i> .	Cyāthus, <i>a cup or glass</i> .	Grūmus, <i>a hillock</i> .
Cincinnus, <i>a curl</i> .	Cygnus, <i>a swan</i> .	Guttus, <i>a cruet or vial</i> .
Cinnus, <i>a medley</i> .	Cylindrus, <i>a roller</i> .	Gyrus, <i>a circle</i> .
Cippus, <i>a grave-stone</i> .	Diālōgus, <i>a discourse</i> <i>between two or more</i> .	Hædus, <i>a kid</i> .
Circinus, <i>a pair of</i> <i>compasses</i> . (<i>circle</i> .)	Dīgitus, <i>a finger</i> .	Hāmusp, <i>a hawk</i> .
Circus & circūlus, <i>a</i>	Discus, <i>a quoit</i> .	Hāriōlus, <i>a diviner</i> .
Cirrus, <i>a tuft, or curl</i> .	Dīvus, <i>a god</i> .	Hērus, <i>a master</i> .
Citrus, f. <i>a citron tree</i> .	Dōlus, <i>deceit</i> ,	Hespērus, <i>the evening</i> .
Clathrus, <i>a grate</i> .	Dūmus, <i>a bush</i> .	Hinnūleus, <i>a young</i> <i>hind or fawn</i> .
Clāvus, <i>a nail</i> .	Echīnus, <i>an urchin</i> .	Himnūlis, <i>a mule</i> .
Ck̄bānus, <i>a portable</i> <i>oven</i> .	Elēgus, <i>an elegy</i> .	Hircus, <i>a goat</i> .
Clīvus, <i>a bill</i> .	Ephēbus, <i>a youth</i> .	Hortus, <i>a garden</i> .
Clypeus, <i>a round shield</i> .	Epilōgus, <i>a conclusion</i> .	Hūmērus, <i>a shoulder</i> .
Coccus, v. -um. <i>scarlet</i> .	Episcōpus, <i>an overseer</i> , <i>a bishop</i> .	Hydrus, <i>a water-ser- pent</i> .
Colāphus, <i>a box on the</i> <i>ear</i> .	Equileus, <i>an instru- ment of torture</i> .	Internuncius, <i>a go be- tween</i> .
Condus, <i>a butler</i> .	Equus, <i>an horse</i> .	Isthmus, <i>a neck of land</i> <i>between two seas</i> .
Condylus, <i>the knuckle</i> .	Eiēbus, <i>bell</i> .	Juncus, <i>a bulrush</i> .
Cōngius, <i>a gallon</i> .	Eurus, <i>the east wind</i> .	Jūvencus, <i>a bullock</i> .
Consōbrīnus, <i>a cousin-</i> <i>german by the mother's</i> <i>side</i> .	Fāgus, f. <i>a beech-tree</i> .	Lābȳrinthus, <i>a maze</i> .
Contus, <i>a long pole</i> .	Fāmīlus, <i>a man ser- vant</i> .	Lācertus, <i>the arm</i> .
Conus, <i>a cone</i> .	Fāvōnius, <i>the west wind</i> .	Lānius, <i>a butcher</i> .
Cophīnus, <i>a basket</i> .	Fāvus, <i>an honeycomb</i> .	Lāqueus, <i>a noose</i> .
Cōquus, <i>a cook</i> .	Fīgūlus, <i>a potter</i> .	Leētus, <i>a couch</i> .
Cornus, f. <i>the cornel</i> <i>tree</i> .	Fīscus, <i>the exchequer</i> .	Lēgātus, <i>an ambassador</i> .
Corvus, <i>a raven</i> .	Floccus, <i>a lock of wool</i> .	Lēgūleius, <i>an ignorant</i> <i>lawyer, a puffedogger</i> .
Cōrylus, f. <i>a hazle-tree</i> .	Flīvius, <i>a river</i> .	Lēthārgus, <i>the lethargy</i> .
Cōrymbus, <i>a bunch of</i> <i>ivy berries</i> .	Fōcuſ, <i>a hearth</i> .	Limbus, <i>a selvedge</i> .
Cōryphēus, <i>a ring-</i> <i>leader</i> .	Fraxīnus, f. <i>an ash tree</i> .	Līmus, <i>lime</i> .
Cōrytus, or -os, <i>a bow-</i> <i>case</i> .	Fritillus, <i>a dice-box</i> .	Lītuus, <i>a crooked staff</i> .
Cothurnus, <i>a bustion</i> .	Fūcus, <i>a drene bee,</i> <i>paint</i> .	Lūcūs, <i>a sacred grove</i> .
	Fūmīus, <i>smoke</i> . [dancer.]	Lumbrīcus, <i>an earth</i> <i>worm</i> .
	Fūnambūlus, <i>a rope-</i>	Lumbus, <i>the loin</i> .
	Fundus, <i>a farm</i> .	Lūpus, <i>a wolf</i> .
	Fungus, <i>a mushroom</i> .	Lychnus, <i>a lamp</i> .
		Māgus,

Mägus, <i>a magician.</i>	Pâgus, <i>a canton or village.</i>	Pulvînus, <i>a pillow.</i>
Malleus, <i>a mallet.</i>	Pâlus, <i>a stake.</i>	Pûillus, <i>an orphan.</i>
Mâlus, <i>the mast of a ship.</i>	Pannus, <i>cloth.</i>	Pûpus, <i>a young child, a babe.</i>
Mâlus, f. <i>an apple-tree.</i>	Pârásîtus, <i>a flatterer.</i>	Pûteus, <i>a well.</i>
Mannus, <i>a little horse.</i>	Pardus, <i>a panther.</i>	Quâlus & quâsillus, <i>a basket.</i> [grapes.]
Mâthémâticus, <i>a mathematician.</i>	Pârôchus, <i>an enter-</i>	Râcêmus, <i>a cluster of</i>
Médiastînus, <i>a slave, a drudge.</i>	<i>tainer.</i>	Râdius, <i>a ray.</i>
Mëdîcus, <i>a physician.</i>	Patruus, <i>the father's brother.</i>	Râmus, <i>a branch.</i>
Mendîcus, <i>a beggar.</i>	Patrônus, <i>a patron.</i>	Rêmus, <i>an ox.</i>
Mergus, <i>a cormorant.</i>	Pëdicûlus, <i>a louse.</i>	Rhombus, <i>a turbot.</i>
Milvus, <i>a kite.</i>	Pessûlus, <i>a bolt.</i>	Rhonchus, <i>a snorting.</i>
Mîmus, <i>a mimic.</i>	Pëtâsus, <i>a broad brimmed hat.</i>	Riscuâ, <i>a trunk.</i>
Mödîus, <i>a bush.</i>	Phârus, or -os, <i>a watch-</i>	Rîvus, <i>a rivulet.</i>
Mödus, <i>a manner.</i>	<i>tower.</i>	Rögus, <i>a funeral pile.</i>
Mœchus, <i>an adulterer.</i>	Philôsôphus, <i>a lover</i>	Rythmus, <i>metre, rhythm.</i>
Môrus, f. <i>a mulberry tree.</i>	<i>of wisdom.</i>	Saccus, <i>a sack.</i>
Mûcus, <i>the filth of the nose, snot.</i>	Phœbus, <i>poet. the sun.</i>	Sarcophagus, <i>a stone, in which dead bodies were inclosed.</i>
Mullus, <i>a mullet fish.</i>	Phýsicus, <i>an inquirer</i>	Satyrus, <i>a satyr, a kind of demigod.</i>
Mûlus, & -a, <i>a mule.</i>	Pîcus, <i>a wood-pecker.</i>	Scalmus, <i>a boat ; a piece of wood where the oars hang.</i>
Mûrus, <i>a wall.</i>	Pîleus, <i>a hat.</i>	Scâpus, <i>a stalk, a staff or stank.</i>
Muscus, <i>moss.</i>	Pîlus, <i>a hair.</i>	Scârus, <i>the scar, a fish.</i>
Myrtus, f. <i>a myrtle tree.</i>	Pîrus, f. <i>a pear-tree.</i>	Scirpus, <i>a rush.</i>
Nævus, <i>a spot.</i>	Plâgiarius, <i>a plagiary, a man-stealer ; or one who steals from others books.</i>	Sciurus, <i>a squirrel.</i>
Nânus, <i>a dwarf.</i>	Planus, <i>a vagrant, a beggar.</i>	Scopûlus, <i>a rock.</i>
Nâsus, <i>the nose.</i>	Flûteus, <i>a pent-house, a press for books.</i>	Scôpus, <i>a mark.</i>
Nervus, <i>a string.</i>	Pôlus, <i>the pole, heaven.</i>	Scrûpulus, <i>a doubt or scruple.</i>
Nîdus, <i>a nest.</i>	Pontus, <i>the sea.</i>	Scrûpus, <i>a little stone.</i>
Nimbus, <i>a cloud.</i>	Pôpûlus, <i>people.</i>	Scyphus, <i>a bowl.</i>
Nôdus, <i>a knot.</i>	Pôpûlus, f. <i>a poplar.</i>	Servus, <i>a slave.</i>
Nôthus, <i>a bastard.</i>	Porcus, <i>a boar.</i> (tree.)	Sestertius, <i>two pounds and a half ; a sesterce, a Roman coin.</i>
Nôtus, <i>the south wind.</i>	Porrus, <i>a leek.</i>	Sicarius, <i>an assassin.</i>
Nucleus, <i>a kernel.</i>	Prîmipîlus, <i>the chief centurion.</i>	Sînius, <i>S - a, an ape.</i>
Nûmîrus, <i>a number.</i>	Prîvignus, <i>a steppon.</i>	Sîrius, <i>the dog star.</i>
Nummus, <i>a piece of money.</i>	Prôcus, <i>a suitor.</i>	Soccus, <i>a kind of shoe.</i>
Nuntius, <i>a messenger.</i>	Prômus, <i>a steward.</i>	Sominus, <i>sleep.</i>
Obôlus, <i>a farthing.</i>	Prûnus, f. <i>a plum-tree.</i>	Sônus, <i>a sound.</i>
Occénus, <i>the ocean.</i>	Psittâicus, <i>a parrot.</i>	Spârus, <i>a spear.</i>
Occîlus, <i>the eye.</i>	Pugnus, <i>the fist.</i>	Sponsus, <i>a bridegroom.</i>
Orcus, <i>hell.</i>	Pullus, <i>a chicken.</i>	Stimûlus,
Ornus, f. <i>a wild oak.</i>		
Ostrâcisnus, <i>a voting with shells.</i>		
Pædagôgus, <i>a servant who attended boys.</i>		

S <small>tim</small> ūlus, <i>a</i> <i>string</i> , <i>a</i> <i>spur</i> .	Thrōnus, <i>a royal seat</i> .	T <small>y</small> pus, <i>a figure or type</i> .
Stōmāchus, <i>th</i> <i>stomach</i> .	Thyāsus, <i>a chorus in honour of Bacchus</i> .	Ulmus, <i>f</i> <i>an elm tree</i> .
Strūpus, <i>a</i> <i>thong</i> , <i>a</i> <i>strap</i> .	Thyrsus, <i>a spear wrapt with ivy</i> .	Umbilicus, <i>the navel</i> .
St̄lus, <i>a</i> <i>style</i> , <i>or iron pen to write with on waxen tables</i> .	Tit̄lius, <i>a title</i> .	Uncus, <i>a hook</i> .
Sūbulcus, <i>a</i> <i>swine herd</i> .	Tēmus, <i>a volume</i> .	Ureeus, <i>a pitcher</i> .
Succus, <i>juice</i> .	Tōnus, <i>a note in music</i> .	Ursus, <i>a bear</i> .
Sulcus, <i>a furrow</i> .	Tōphus, <i>a gravel stone</i> .	Urus, <i>a buffalo</i> .
Surcūlus, <i>a young twig</i> .	Tornus, <i>a turner's wheel</i> .	Uterus, <i>the womb</i> .
Sūfurrus, <i>a whisper</i> .	Tōrus, <i>a couch</i> .	Vallus, <i>a stake</i> .
Tālus, <i>the ankle</i> , <i>a die</i> .	Trībūlus, <i>a thistle</i> .	Vēnēfīcus, <i>a sorcerer</i> .
Taurus, <i>a bull</i> .	Triumphus, <i>a triumph</i> .	Ventus, <i>the wind</i> .
Taxus, <i>f</i> . <i>the yew tree</i> .	-Trōchus, <i>a top</i> .	Vicus, <i>a village</i> , <i>a street</i> .
Termīnus, <i>a bound</i> .	Truncus, <i>the trunk</i> .	Villicus, <i>ε -a</i> , <i>an overseer of a farm</i> .
Thālāmus, <i>a marriage bed-chamber</i> .	Tūbus, <i>a tube or pipe</i> .	Vilius, <i>scaggy hair</i> .
Thēolōgus, <i>a divine</i> .	Tūmūlus, <i>a hillock</i> .	Vitellus, <i>the yolk of an egg</i> .
Thēsaurus, <i>a treasure</i> .	Turdus, <i>a thrush</i> .	Vitricus, <i>a stepfather</i> .
Thōlus, <i>the roof of a temple</i> .	Tyrannus, <i>a tyrant</i> .	Vitūlus, <i>a calf [wind]</i> .
		Zēphyrus, <i>the west</i> .

/ Regnum, *a kingdom*, neut.

Sing.

Nom.	regnum,
Gen.	regni,
Dat.	regno,
Acc.	regnum,
Voc.	regnum,
Abl.	regno :

Nom.	regna,
Gen.	regnōrum,
Dat.	regnis,
Acc.	regna,
Voc.	regna,
Abl.	regnis.)

In like manner decline,

Acētum, <i>vinegar</i> .	Armentum, <i>an herd</i> .	Būtȳrum, <i>butter</i> .
Acōnītum, <i>wolfs-bane</i> , <i>a poisonous plant</i> .	Arvum, <i>ε -us</i> , <i>a field</i> .	Cælum, <i>a graving tool</i> .
Ādāgium, <i>a proverb</i> .	Astruni, <i>a star</i> .	Cæmentum, <i>materials</i> <i>for building</i> .
Admīnicūlum, <i>a prop.</i>	Asylum, <i>a sanctuary</i> .	Cāniſtrum, <i>a basket</i> .
Ādītum, <i>the most secret part of a temple</i> .	Atrium, <i>a court or hall</i> .	Cāpiſtrum, <i>a halter or muzzle</i> .
Ālbum, <i>a register</i> .	Aukēum, <i>tapestry</i> .	Castrum, <i>a castle</i> .
Allium, <i>garlick</i> .	Aurum, <i>gold</i> .	Centrum, <i>the centre</i> .
Āmentum, <i>a thong</i> .	Auxiliū, <i>assistance</i> .	Cīrebrum, <i>the brain</i> .
Āmūlētum, <i>a charm</i> .	Aviārium, <i>a cage</i> .	Chīrogrāphum, <i>a hand-writing</i> .
Anēthum, <i>anise</i> .	Balsānum, <i>balm</i> .	Cīlium, <i>the e-e-lyses</i> .
Antīcum, <i>a fire-door</i> .	Bārathrum, <i>an abyss</i> .	Cītrum, <i>citron w ed</i> .
Antrum, <i>a cave</i> .	Bāſium, <i>a kiss</i> .	Clāſicūm, <i>a trumpet</i> .
Āpium, <i>parsley</i> .	Bellum, <i>war</i> .	Cōelum, <i>pl. -i, heaven</i> .
Argentum, <i>silver</i> .	Bīdūm, <i>two dsys</i> .	Cōenum,
	Biennium, <i>two years</i> .	
	Brāchium, <i>an arm</i> .	

Cœnum, mire, dirt.	Ervum, vetches.	Initium, a beginning.
Collōquium, a conference.	Eſſēdūm, a chariot.	Intervallum, distance between.
Collum, the neck.	Everrīcūlūm, a drag-net.	Jūdīcīum, judgment.
Commōdūm, advantage.	Exemplūm, an example.	Jūgūlūm, the throat.
Confiniūm, a bound or limit.	Exītūm, destruction.	Jūgūm, a yoke, the ridge of a hill.
Congiārīum, a largess.	Exordīum, a beginning.	Jurgīum, a quarrel.
Convīcīum, a reproach.	Fānum, a temple.	Jussūm, an order.
Cōrium, a bide.	Fascīnūm, witchcraft.	Justītūm, a vacation.
Costūm, spikenard.	Fastīgīum, the top.	Lābūm, the lip.
Crēmūm, a dry stick.	Fercūlūm, a dish of meat.	Lardūm, bacon.
Crēpuscūlūm, the twilight.	Ferrūm, iron.	Lāsānum, a chamber-pot.
Cribrum, a sieve.	Fīlūm, a thread.	Libūm, a sweet-cake.
Cūbīcūlūm, a bed-chamber.	Flābelīlūm, a fan.	Līcīum, the woof.
Cumīnum, cumin, an herb.	Flagrūm & fīgellūm, a whip.	Līgnūm, wood.
Cymbālūm, a cymbal.	Flammēum, a veil.	Līlīum, a lily.
Damnum, loss.	Fœnum, hay.	Linteūm, a sheet.
Dēlūbrūm, a temple.	Fēliūm, a leaf.	Līnum, lint.
Dēmensūm, an allowance of meat.	Fōrūm, a market-place.	Lōrūm, a thong.
Detrīmentūm, damage.	Frāgūm, a strawberry.	Lūerūm, gain.
Diārīum, a day's wages.	Frētūm, a narrow sea.	Lūdībriūm, a laughing-stock.
Dīlūcūlūm, the dawning of day.	Frūmentūm, corn.	Lūstrūm, a survey.
Dīum, poet. the open air.	Frustum, a bit or piece.	Lūteūm, the yolk of an egg.
Dōliūm, a task.	Fulcrūm, a prop.	Lūtūm, clay.
Dōmīcīlūm, an abode.	Furtūm, theft.	Macellūm, the bazaar.
Dōnum, a gift.	Grānārīum, a granary.	Mānubriūm, a bilt or handle.
Dorsūm, the back.	Grānum, a grain.	Matrīmōniūm, marriage.
Effūgūm, a escape.	Grāphīum, a pencil.	Mausolæūm, any sumptuous monument.
Ilectryūm, amber.	Grēmūm, the bosom.	Membrūm, a member.
Elemeatūm, an element, a letter.	Gymnāsīum, a place of exercise.	Mendācīum, a lie.
Elēgūm, a brief saying, a testimonial in one's prīse.	Gynæcēūm, the women's apartment.	Mentūm, the chin.
Fmōlūmentūm, profit.	Gypsum, plaster.	Mētallūm, metal, a mine.
Emplaſtrūm, a plaster.	Hauſtrūm, a bucket.	Miliūm, millet, a kind of grain.
Empōriūm, a mart or market town.	Hellebōrūm, Θ -us, hellebore, a plant.	Mīlīum, vermillion.
Ephippūm, a saddle.	Hōrūlēgūm, any thing that tells the hours.	Mōmentūm, weight, importance.
Epitāphīum, an inscription on a tomb.	Idōlūm, an image.	Mōnōpōliūm, the sole right of selling any thing.
Ergastūlūm, a work-house.	Idyllūm, a pastoral poem.	Monſtrūm, a monster, any
	Impēriūm, command.	
	Inceptūm, an enterprise.	
	Indicūm, a discovery.	
	Indūlūm, a skirt.	
	Ingēnūm, wit, genius.	

any thing against the common course of nature.	Perpendicūlum, a straight line upwards or downwards.	Rastrum, a rake.
Mortārium, a mortar.	Pētoritūm, a waggon.	Rēfūgium, a shelter.
Mūsēum; a study or library.	Pīlentūm, a chariot.	Rēmēdium, a cure.
Mustum, new wine.	Pīlum, a javelin.	Rēmulcūm, a tow-barge.
Mysterium, a mystery, a thing not easily comprehended.	Pistillūm, the pestle of a mortar.	Rēpāgūlum, a bar.
Nasturtium, cresses.	Pīsuin, pease.	Rēpūdium, a divorce.
Naulum, freight.	Plaistrum, a waggoz.	Responsum, an answer.
Naufrāgium, ship-wreck.	Plectrum, a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.	Rētinacūlum, a cable.
Nēgōtium, a thing, business.	Plumbum, lead.	Rostrum, the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.
Nitrum, nitre.	Pōmārium, an orchard.	Rūdūmentum, pl. -a, the first principles of any art.
Obsequium, comp'iance.	Pōmcērium, a void space on each side of a town-wall.	Rutrum, a pick-ax.
Ōdiūm, hatred.	Pōnum, an apple.	Sabbātum, the sabbath.
Ōmāsum; the paunch.	Posticūm, a back-door.	Sābūlum, gravel.
Omentum, the caul, or skin which covers the bowels.	Postlimiñum, a return to one's country.	Sacchāruni, sugar.
Oppidum, a town.	Prēdiūm, a farm.	Sācellum, a chapel.
Opprobrium, a reproach.	Prejūdīcium, a fore-judging.	Sācerdōtium, the priest-hood.
Opsōniūm, fyſ, or any thing eaten with bread.	Præliūm, a battle.	Sacrāmentum, a military oath.
Orgānum, any instrument. [the lips.	Præmīum, a reward.	Sacrīficium, a sacrifice.
Oſcūlum, a kiss; pl.	Præſidiūm, a defence, a garrison.	Sacrīlegium, stealing sacred things.
Oſtrum; purple.	Prandīum, a dinner.	Sāgum, a soldier's cloak.
Ōtium, repose.	Prātum, a meadow.	Sālārium, a salary.
Oſtium, the door.	Prēlum, a press.	Sālinūm, a salt-cellar.
Ōvum, an egg.	Prētium, a price.	Salsāmentum, salt-meat.
Pābūlum, fodder.	Prīmordiūm, a begin-	Sālunī, the sea.
Paſtum; an agreement.	Prīncipiūm, ſ. ning.	Sandāliūm, a ſlipper.
Pālātium, a palace.	Prīvilegiūm, a private law or ſpecial right.	Sarcūlum, a weeding-book, a ſpade.
Pālātum; the palate.	Probrum, a disgrace.	Sarinētum, a twig.
Pallium; a cloak.	Prōdīgiūm, a prodigy, any thing preternatural.	Sātisdatūm, a bond of security.
Pālūdāmentum, a general's robe..	Prōmissūm, a promise.	Saxum, a large ſtone.
Pānārium; a bread-basket.	Prōpōſitūm, a purpose.	Scalprum, dim. Scalpellum, a knife.
Pātibūlum; a gibbet.	Prōpugnācūlum, a bulwark. [ſaying.	Scainnum, dim. Scabellum, a bench or form.
Pensum, a task. [robe.	Prōverbium, an old	Sceptrum, a ſceptre, a mace.
Pēplum; a woman's	Pulpitum, a pulpit.	Scītum, a decree.
Perjūriūm, perjury, taking a false oath.	Rāmentum, a chip or ſhaving..	Scortūm, an harlot.
		Scrīnium, a coffer.
		Scriptum;

Scriptum, a writing.	Sterquilinium, a dung-	Tintinnabulum, a lit-
Scrūpulūm, a scruple,	bill.	tle bell.
a certain weight.	Stīpendium, pay.	Tirocinium, an ap-
Scūtum, a shield.	Strāgūlum, a blanket.	prenticeship.
Sēcūlum, an age.	Strātum, a couch.	Tormentum, an engine,
Sēminārium, a nursery.	Strigmentum, a stra-	a torment.
Sēnācūlum, a senate-	ping.	Toxicum, poison.
house.	Stūdium, desire, study.	Tribūtum, tax or
Sēnātūs consultum, a	Stuprum, debauchery.	custom.
decree of the senate.	Sūavium, a kiss.	Triclinium, a dining-
Sērīcum, silk.	Subsellium, a bench.	room.
Servitium, slavery.	Subsidium, help.	Triduum, three days.
Serpyllum, wild thyme.	Sūburbanum, a house	Triennium, three years.
Sertum, a garland.	near the town.	Trīpūdium, a dancing.
Sērum, whey.	Sūburbium, the sub-	Trivium, a place where
Sestertium, a thousand	urbs, the part of a	three ways meet.
s̄fertii.	town without the	Tropæuin, a trophy, a
Sevum, tallow.	wal's.	token of victory.
Signum, a sign, a	Sūdārium, a bandker-	Tūgūrium, a cottage.
standard.	chief.	Tympanum, a drum.
Sigilluni, a seal.	Sūfrāgium, a vote.	Vaccinum, a berry.
Silicernium, a funeral	Suggeitum, & -us, ūs,	Vādimōnium, bail; a
supper, an old man.	a place raised above	promise to appear in
Sīnum, a milk pail.	others.	court.
Sistrum, a timbrel.	Sūnumārium, an a-	Vādum, a ford, theca.
Sōdālitium, a company,	bridgment.	Vallum, a rampart.
a corporation.	Supercilium, the brow,	Vēlum, a veil, a sail.
Sēlārium, a sun-dial.	pride.	Vēnābūlum, a bunting
Sōlātium, comfort.	Suspīrium, a sigh.	pole.
Sōlium, a throne.	Symbōlum, a sign or	Vēnēnum, poison.
Sōlum, the ground.	token.	Ventilabrum, a fan.
Somnium, a dream.	Sympōsium, & -on,	Verbum, a word.
Spātium, a space.	a banquet.	Vestibūlum, a porch.
Spectācūlum, a skew.	Tabernācūlum, a tent.	Vestigium, the print of
Spec̄trum, a phantasm,	Tābūlātum, a story.	the foot.
or apparition.	Tābum, black gore.	Vexillum, a banner.
Spēcūlum, a looking	Tædium, weariness.	Viāticum, money, or
glass.	Talentum, a talent.	provisions for a jour-
Spēlāum, a den.	Tectum, the roof, a	ney.
Spicilēgium, a gleaning.	house.	Vincūlum, a chain.
Spiculām, a dart.	Tēlum, a weapon.	Vīnum, wine.
Spiracūlum, a breath-	Templum, a church.	Vítium, vice, a fault.
ing hole.	Tergum, the back.	Vitrum, glass.
Spōlium, spoil.	Testimōnium, an evi-	Vivārium, a place to
Spūtum, spittle.	dence.	keep beasts in, a war-
Stābūlum, a stable.	Theatrum, a theatre.	ren or fish-pond.
Stādium, a furlong.	Thūribūlum, a censer,	Vōcabūlum, a name
Stagnum, a pond.	a vessel to burn incense in.	or word.
Stannum, tin.		Vōtum, a vow.

EXCEPTIONS in Gender.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *būmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*:

Abyssus, a bottomless pit.	Carbāsus, a sail.	Frēmus, a desert.
Antidōtus, a preservative against poison.	Dialectus, a dialect, or manner of speech.	Měthōdus, a method.
Arctos, the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.	Diāmetros, the diameter of a circle.	Périōdus, a period.
	Diphthongus, a diphthong.	Périmetros, the circumference.
		Phārus, a watch tower.
		Synōdus, an assembly.

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

Amēthystus, an amethyst.	Sappīrus, a sapphire.	Byffus, fine flax or linen.
[zelite.]	Tōpazius, a topaz.	
Chrysolithus, a chry-	{ an Egyptian	Costus, costmary.
Chrysophrāsus, a kind of topaz.	Biblus, reed of which pa-	Crōcus, saffron.
Chrystallus, crystal.	Pāpyrus, per was made..	Hysōpus, hyssop.
Leucōchrysus, a jacinth.		Nardus, spikenard.

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *Bēryllus*, the beryl; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *Pyrōpus*, a ruby; *Smāragdus*, an emerald. And also names of plants; as, *Aspārāgus*, asparagus, or sparrowgrass; *elleborus*, ellebore; *raphānus*, radish or colewort; *intybus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow, are either masculine or feminine:

Ātōmus, an atom.	Barbitus, a harp.	Grossus, a green fig.
Balānus, the fruit of the palm-tree, ointment.	Cāmēlus, a camel.	Pēnus, a store-house.

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poison; *pēlāgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS in Declension.

Proper names in *iūs* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Hōrātius*, *Horāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgili*; *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men; *Lārius*, *Lāri*; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also hath *fīlī*: *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni*; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc.

and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus* in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tābellārius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tīrynthiās*, *Tīrynthie*; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the voc. of nouns in *us* like the nom. as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, for *fluvie*, *Latine*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely. Thus, *Audi tu pōpalus*, for *pōpūle*. Liv. i, 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* unto *us*; as *Evandir*, or *Evendrus*, voc. *Evander*, or *Evandre*: So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Tacer*, &c. and so anciently *puer* in the voc. had *puēre* from *puērus*.

Note, When the gen. sing. ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūri*, for *tugurii*; *ingēni*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the gen. plur. we find *deūn*, *liberūm*, *saturni*, *duūn.virūm*, &c. for *deorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrūn*, *Graiu*, *Argivūm*, *Dānaūm*, *Pēlosgūm*, &c. for *Teucerum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and on are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *īlion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *īlium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eis* or *īis* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphīs*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphēi* or *Orphi*. So *Thesēus*, *Promētēus*, &c. But nouns in *eis*, when the *ei* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the gen. sing. in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, gen. *Androge*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third decl. thus, nom. *Androgeo*, gen. *Androgeōnis*: So *Atho* or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the gen. in *u*; as, *Mēnandru*, *Apolledēru*, for *Mēnandi*, *Apollodori*, Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the acc. in *um* or *on*; as, *Dīlus* or *Delos*, acc. *Delūm* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the gen. plur. in *ēn*; as, *Georgīca*, gen. pl. *Georgīcēn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters, are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *ɛ*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with

with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these: nom. sing. *a*, *e*, &c.; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with the nominative*; abl. *e*, or *i*: nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es*, *a*, or *ia*; gen. *um*, or *ium*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; thus,

<i>Sermo, speech, msc.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> sermo,	<i>N.</i> sermōnes,
<i>G.</i> sermōnis,	<i>G.</i> sermōnum,
<i>D.</i> sermoni,	<i>D.</i> sermonībus,
<i>A.</i> sermonem,	<i>A.</i> sermones,
<i>V.</i> sermo,	<i>V.</i> sermones,
<i>A.</i> sermonē.	<i>A.</i> sermonib⁹s.)

<i>Căput, the head, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> căput,	<i>N.</i> capítā,
<i>G.</i> capit⁹s,	<i>G.</i> capitūm,
<i>D.</i> capit⁹i,	<i>D.</i> capitib⁹s,
<i>A.</i> caput,	<i>A.</i> capita,
<i>V.</i> caput,	<i>V.</i> capita,
<i>A.</i> capite.	<i>A.</i> capitib⁹s.)

<i>Rupes, a rock, fem.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> rūpes,	<i>N.</i> rupes,
<i>G.</i> rupis,	<i>G.</i> rupium,
<i>D.</i> rupi,	<i>D.</i> rupib⁹s,
<i>A.</i> rupem,	<i>A.</i> rupes,
<i>V.</i> rupes,	<i>V.</i> rupes,
<i>A.</i> rupe.	<i>A.</i> rupibus.)

<i>Sedile, a seat, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> sedile,	<i>N.</i> sedilia,
<i>G.</i> sedili⁹s,	<i>G.</i> sediliūm,
<i>D.</i> sedili,	<i>D.</i> sedilib⁹s,
<i>A.</i> sedile,	<i>A.</i> sedilia,
<i>V.</i> sedile,	<i>V.</i> sedili⁹z,
<i>A.</i> sedili⁹.	<i>A.</i> sedilib⁹s.)

<i>Lapis, a stone, msc.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> lāpis,	<i>N.</i> lāpides,
<i>G.</i> lapid⁹s,	<i>G.</i> lapidūm,
<i>D.</i> lapidi,	<i>D.</i> lapidib⁹s,
<i>A.</i> lapidem⁹,	<i>A.</i> lapides,
<i>V.</i> lapis,	<i>V.</i> lapides,
<i>A.</i> lāpide.	<i>A.</i> lapidib⁹s.)

<i>Iter, a journey, neut..</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> itēter,	<i>N.</i> itinēra,
<i>G.</i> itinēris,	<i>G.</i> itinerūm,
<i>D.</i> itineri,	<i>D.</i> itinerib⁹s,
<i>A.</i> iter,	<i>A.</i> itinera,
<i>V.</i> iter,	<i>V.</i> itinera,
<i>A.</i> itinere.	<i>A.</i> itinerib⁹s.)

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

A, *E*, *I*, and *Y*.

I. (Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.)

(Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *atis*; as, *diadēmia*, *diadematis*,) a crown; *dogma*, -*atis*, an opinion. So,

Enigma, a riddle. *Diplōma*, a charter. *Poēma*, a poem.

Āpōthēgma, a skort Epigramma, an in-pithy saying. Schēma, a scheme or

Ārōma, sweet spices. Nūmisma, a coin. Sōphisma, a deceitful

Axiōma, a plain truth. Phasma, an apparition. argument.

Stemma,

Stemma, a pedigree.
Stigma, a mark or brand, a disgrace.

Strātāgēma, an artful contrivance.
Thēma, a theme, a Tōreuma, a carved vessel.

subject to write or speak on.
for shipping.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *i*; as, rēle, retis, a net. So,
Ancīle, a shield.
Aplūstre, the flag of a ship.

Criñāle, a pin for the hair.
Cūbile, a couch.
Equile, a stable for horses.
Lāqueāre, a ceiled roof.
Mantile, a towel.
Mónile, a necklace.

Nāvāle, a dock or place for shipping.
Övile, a sheep-fold.
Præsēpe, a stall; a bee-hive.
Sēcāie, ry.
Suile, a sow-cote.
Tibiāle, a stocking.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, gummi, gum; zingitēri, ginger: but some Greek nouns add *is*; as, hydrōnēli, hydromelitis, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, moly, molyos, an herb; mysy, -yos; vitriol.

O.

2. {Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *onis*; } as,

Sermo, sermōnis, speech;	draco, drācōnis, a dragon.—So,
Agālo, a horse-keeper.	Gālio, the chief of a ward or curia.
Aquilo, the north wind.	Equiso, a groom or gäller.
Arrhābo, an earthen-pantry, a pledge.	Erro, a wanderer.
Bālatro, a pitiful fellow.	Fulio, a fuller of cloth.
Bambālio, a frizerer.	Helluo, a glutton.
Bāro, a blockhead.	Histrio, a player.
Būbo, an owl.	Iatro, a repper.
Bīto, a toad.	Lēno, a pimp.
Cīlo, a soldier's slave.	Lūdio,-ius, a player.
Cāpo, a capon.	Lurco, a glutton.
Carbo, a coal.	Māngō, a slave-merchant.
Caupo, an innkeeper.	Mirmillo, a fencer.
Cerdo, a cobler, or one who follows a mean trade.	Mōrio, a fool.
Ciniflo, a frizier of hair.	Mucro, the point of a weapon.
Crabro, a wasp, or hornet.	Mulio, a muleteer.
	Nēbūlo, a knave.
	Pāvo, a peacock.
	Upīlio, a shepherd.
	Volo, a volunteer.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify anything without a body; as, *ratio*, *rationis*, reason.—So, *Captio*, a *quirk*. *Perduellio*, *treason*. *Sectio*, *the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods*.

<i>Cautio</i> , <i>caution</i> , <i>cure</i> .	<i>Portio</i> , <i>a part</i> .	<i>Sedatio</i> , <i>a mutiny</i> .
<i>Concio</i> , <i>an assembly</i> , a speech.	<i>Potio</i> , <i>drink</i> .	<i>Sessio</i> , <i>a sitting</i> .
<i>Cesio</i> , <i>a yielding</i> .	<i>Proscriptio</i> , <i>a proscription</i> , <i>ordering citizens to be slain, and confiscating their effects</i> .	<i>Sistio</i> , <i>a station</i> .
<i>Dictio</i> , <i>a word</i> .		<i>Suspicio</i> , <i>mistrust</i> .
<i>Deditio</i> , <i>a surrender</i> .		<i>Titillatio</i> , <i>a tickling</i> .
<i>Lectio</i> , <i>a lesson</i> .	<i>Quæsio</i> , <i>an inquiry</i> .	<i>Translatio</i> , <i>a transferring</i> .
<i>Lègio</i> , <i>a legion</i> , <i>a body of men</i> .	<i>Rebellio</i> , <i>rebellion</i> .	<i>Uscapio</i> , <i>the enjoyment of a thing by prescription</i> .
<i>Mentio</i> , <i>mention</i> .	<i>Règio</i> , <i>a country</i> .	
<i>Notio</i> , <i>a notion or idea</i> .	<i>Relatio</i> , <i>a telling</i> .	
<i>Opinio</i> , <i>an opinion</i> .	<i>Religio</i> , <i>religion</i> .	
<i>Optio</i> , <i>a choice</i> .	<i>Remissio</i> , <i>a slackening</i> .	<i>Vacitio</i> , <i>freedom from labour</i> , &c.
<i>Oratio</i> , <i>a speech</i> .		
<i>Pensio</i> , <i>a payment</i> .	<i>Sancio</i> , <i>a confirmation</i> .	<i>Visio</i> , <i>an apparition</i> .

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

<i>Circùlio</i> , <i>the throat-pipe, the weasand</i> .	<i>Scipio</i> , <i>a staff</i> .	<i>Unio</i> , <i>a pearl</i> .
<i>Papilio</i> , <i>a butterfly</i> .	<i>Scorpio</i> , <i>a scorpion</i> .	<i>Vespertilio</i> , <i>a bat</i> .
<i>Pugio</i> , <i>a dagger</i> .	<i>Septentrio</i> , <i>the north</i> .	<i>Ternio</i> , <i>the number three</i> .
<i>Pūlio</i> , <i>a little child</i> .	<i>Stellio</i> , <i>a lizard</i> .	<i>Quaternio</i> , — four.
	<i>Titio</i> , <i>a firebrand</i> .	<i>Senio</i> , — six.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *-inis*; as, *ärundo*, *arundinis*, a reed; *imago*, *imaginis*, an image.—So,

<i>Ärugo</i> , <i>rust</i> , (of brass.)	<i>Hirundo</i> , <i>a swallow</i> .	<i>Sartago</i> , <i>a frying-pan</i> .
<i>Cäligo</i> , <i>darkness</i> .	<i>Intercapēdo</i> , <i>a space between</i> .	<i>Scatûrigo</i> , <i>a spring</i> .
<i>Cartilago</i> , <i>a gristle</i> .		<i>Testudo</i> , <i>a tortoise</i> .
<i>Crēpido</i> , <i>a creek</i> , <i>a bank</i> .	<i>Lanugo</i> , <i>dowm</i> .	<i>Torpēdo</i> , <i>a numbness</i> .
<i>Farrago</i> , <i>a mixture</i> .	<i>Lentigo</i> , <i>a pimple</i> .	<i>Ülgo</i> , <i>the natural moisture of the earth</i> .
<i>Ferrugo</i> , <i>rust</i> , (of iron.)	<i>Origo</i> , <i>an origin</i> .	<i>Välétudo</i> , <i>health</i> .
<i>Formido</i> , <i>fear</i> .	<i>Porrigo</i> , <i>surf, or scales in the head</i> ;	<i>Vertigo</i> , <i>a dizziness</i> .
<i>Fuligo</i> , <i>soot</i> .	<i>dandruff</i> .	<i>Virgo</i> , <i>a virgin</i> .
<i>Grando</i> , <i>bil</i> .	<i>Pröpago</i> , <i>a lineage</i> .	<i>Vörägo</i> , <i>a gulf</i> .
<i>Hirudo</i> , <i>a horse-leech</i> .	<i>Rübigo</i> , <i>rust, mildew</i> .	

But the following are masculine:

<i>Cardo</i> , <i>-inis</i> , <i>a hinge</i> .	<i>Margo</i> , <i>-inis</i> , <i>the brink of a river</i> ;
<i>Cudo</i> , <i>-onis</i> , <i>a leather cap</i> .	also fem.
<i>Harpago</i> , <i>-onis</i> , <i>a drag</i> .	<i>Ordo</i> , <i>-inis</i> , <i>order</i> .
<i>Ligo</i> , <i>-onis</i> , <i>a spade</i> .	<i>Tendo</i> , <i>-inis</i> , <i>a tenion</i> .

Cupido, *desire*, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis*,
 Apollo, -*inis*, *the god Apollo* Nēmo, -*inis*, m. or f. *no body*.
 Hōmo, -*inis*, *a man or woman*. Turbo, -*inis*, m. *a whirlwind*.
 Cāro, *flesh*, fem. has *carnis*: Anīo, masc. the name of a river, *Anīmis*: Nerīo, *Nerīonis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Aher*, *Nerien*. Turīo, the name of a man, has *inis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dīdo*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*, } &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*: so ēcho, -*as*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -*as*, the name of a ship; hālo, -*onis*, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

<i>Ānīmāl</i> , <i>ānīmālis</i> , } a living creature; <i>tōral</i> , - <i>ālis</i> , a bed-cover; <i>hālec</i> , <i>hāleis</i> , a kind of pickle.—So,	<i>Minerval</i> , entry-money. <i>Pūneal</i> , a well cover.
<i>Cervīcal</i> , a belfer. <i>Cūbital</i> , a cushion.	<i>Mīnūtal</i> , minced meat. <i>Vēctīgal</i> , a tax.
Except. <i>Consul</i> , - <i>ūlis</i> , n. a <i>consul</i> .	<i>Mūgil</i> , - <i>ilis</i> , m. a mullet-fish.
<i>Fel</i> , <i>sellis</i> , n. gall.	<i>Sal</i> , <i>sālis</i> , m. or n. salt.
<i>Lac</i> , <i>lactis</i> , n. milk.	<i>Sāles</i> , - <i>ium</i> , pl. m. witty sayings.
<i>Mel</i> , <i>mellis</i> , n. honey.	<i>Sol</i> , <i>sōlis</i> , m. the sun.

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davīdis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

<i>Cānon</i> , - <i>ōnis</i> , a rule.	<i>Phȳsiognōmon</i> , - <i>ōnis</i> , one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.
<i>Dæmon</i> , - <i>ōnis</i> , a spirit.	<i>Rēn</i> , <i>rēnis</i> , the reins.
<i>Delphin</i> , - <i>īnis</i> , a dolphin.	<i>Splen</i> , <i>splēnis</i> , the spleen.
<i>Gnōmon</i> , - <i>ōnis</i> , the cock of a dial.	<i>Sȳren</i> , - <i>ēnis</i> , f. a Syren.
<i>Hȳmen</i> , - <i>ēnis</i> , the god of marriage.	<i>Titan</i> ; - <i>ānis</i> , the sun.
<i>Lien</i> , - <i>ēnis</i> , the milt.	
<i>Pēan</i> , - <i>ānis</i> , a song.	

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as *flūmen*, *flumīnis*; a river.—So,
Abdōmen, the paunch. *Agmen*, an army on *Alāmen*, alum.
Acūmen, sharpness. march. *Bitūmen*, a kind of clay.
Cācūmen,

Căcūmen, <i>the top.</i>	Germen, <i>a sprout.</i>	Sagmen, <i>vervain, an herb.</i>
Carmen, <i>a song,</i> a psem.	Grāmen, <i>grass.</i>	Sēmen, <i>a seed.</i>
Cognōmen, <i>a surname.</i>	Lēgūmen, <i>all kind of pulse.</i>	Spēcimen, <i>a proof.</i>
Cōlūmen, <i>a support.</i>	Lūmen, <i>light.</i>	Stāmen, <i>the warp.</i>
Crīmen, <i>a crime.</i>	Nōmen, <i>a name.</i>	Subtēmen, <i>the woof.</i>
Discrīmen, <i>a difference.</i>	Nūmen, <i>the deity.</i>	Tegmen, <i>a covering.</i>
Exāmen, <i>a swarm of bees.</i>	Ōmen, <i>a presage.</i>	Vīmen, <i>a twig.</i>
Förāmen, <i>a hole.</i>	Pütāmen, <i>a nut-shell.</i>	Völūmen, <i>a folding.</i>

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

Glüten, -inis, <i>glue.</i>	Inguen, -inis, <i>the groin.</i>
Unguen, -inis, <i>ointment.</i>	Pollen, -inis, <i>fine flour.</i>

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis*; *pečen*, a comb; *tūbīcen*, a trumpeter; *tībīcen*, a piper; and *oscen*, v. *osčinis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine : *Sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen; *äēdon*, -ōnis, a nightingale; *Halcyon*, -ōnis, a bird called the King's fisher; *icon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laōmēdon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *Chamæleon*, *Phaēthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as,

<i>Calcar</i> , <i>calcāris</i> , a spur;	<i>murmur</i> , <i>murmūris</i> , a noise.—So,
<i>Guttur</i> , -ūris, the throat.	<i>Nectar</i> , -āris, drink of the gods.
<i>Jūbar</i> , -āris, a sun-beam.	<i>Pulvīnar</i> , -āris, a pillow.
<i>Lăcūnar</i> , -āris, a ceiling.	<i>Sulphur</i> , -ūris, sulphur.
Except, <i>Ēbur</i> , -ōris, n. ivory.	<i>Jēcur</i> , -ōris, or <i>jecinōris</i> , n. the liver.
Far, <i>farris</i> , n. corn.	<i>Rōbur</i> , -ōris, n. strength.
Fēmur, -ōris, n. the thigh.	<i>Sălar</i> , -aris, m. a trout.
Furfur, -ūris, m. bran.	<i>Turtur</i> , -ūris, m. a turtle-dove.
Fur, <i>fūris</i> , m. a thief.	<i>Vultur</i> , -ūris, m. a vulture.
Hēpar, -ătis, or <i>ătos</i> , n. the liver.	

ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

<i>Anser</i> , <i>ansēris</i> , a goose or gander;	<i>agger</i> , -ēris, a rampart;
<i>āer</i> , -ēris, the air;	<i>carcer</i> , -ēris, a prison;
& <i>affis</i> , -is, a plank;	<i>affer</i> , -ēris, & <i>affis</i> , -is, a plank;
<i>dōlor</i> , -ōris, pain;	<i>cōlor</i> , -ōris, a colour.—So,

A&tor, a deer, a pleader.	Ödor, Ö -os, a smell.	Söpor, sleep.
Crēdītor, he that trusts or lends.	Ölor, a swan.	Splendor, brightness.
Cruor, gore.	Pæder, filth.	Sponsor, a surety.
Dēbitor, a debtor.	Pastor, a shepherd.	Squālor, filthiness.
Fætor, an ill smell.	Prætor, a commander.	Sūpor, dulness.
Hōnor, honour.	Pūdor, shame.	Sūtor, a sewer.
Lector, a reader.	Rūbor, blushing.	Tēpor, warmth.
Lictor, an officer among the Romans who at- tended the magistrates.	Rūmor, a report.	Terror, dread.
Līvor, paleness, malice.	Sāpor, a taste.	Timor, fear.
Nidor, a strong smell.	Sartor, a cobler or tailor.	Tensor, a barber.
Rhētor, a rhetorician, has rhētoris ; cætor, a beaver, -ōris.	Sātor, a sewer, a fa- ther.	Tūtor, a guardian.
		Vāpor, a vapour.
		Vēnātor, a hunter.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Acer, -ēris, a maple-tree.	Marmor, Öris, marble.
Ädor, -ōris, fine wheat.	Päpäver, -ēris, poppy.
Äquor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.	Piper, -ēris, pepper.
Cădāver, -ēris, a dead carcass.	Spinther, -ēris, a clasp.
Cicer, -ēris, vetches.	Tüber, -ēris, a swelling.
Cor, cordis, the heart.	Über, -ēris, a pop, or fatness.
Iter, itinēris, a journey.	Ver, vēris, the spring.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. Tuber, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in ber have bris in the genitive ; as, hic imber, imbris, a shower. So Insüber, Oðöber, &c.

Nouns in ter have tris ; as venter, ventris, the belly ; päter, patris, a father ; frāter, -tris, a brother ; accip̄iter, -tris, a hawk ; but crāter, a cup, has crāteris ; sōter, -ēris, a saviour ; läter, a tile, latēris ; Jūp̄iter, the chief of the Heathen gods, has Jōvis ; linter, -tris, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

A S.

7. { Nouns in as are feminine, and have the genitive in ätis ; as, ætas, ætatis, } an age.—So,		
Aetas, the summer.	Simultas, a feud, a grudge.	Vēritas, truth.
Pietas, piety.	Tempestas, a time, a tempest.	Vōluntas, will.
Potestas, power.		Voluptas, pleasure.
Prōbitas, probity.	Übertas, fertility.	Anās, a duck, han- natis.
Satiētas, a glut or dis- gift.		

Except. 1. As, assis, m. a piece of money,
or any thing which may be
divided into twelve parts.

Mas, märis, m. a male.
Vas, vādis, m. a surety.
Vas, vālis, n. a vessel.

Note.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; *as sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dextans*, or *dextans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dextans*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *-antis* in the genit. *as*, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *adamas*, *-antis*, an adamant; *elephas*, *-antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *-atis*, or *-ados*; *as*, *lampas lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *dromas*, *-atis*, f. a dromedary: likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcadis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *-atis*; *as*, *buccras*, *-atis*, an herb; *artocreas*, *-atis*, a pie.

E S.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as,

<i>rāpes</i> , <i>rūpis</i> ,	a rock;	<i>nūbes</i> , <i>nubis</i> , a cloud.	— So,
<i>āedes</i> , or <i>-is</i> ,	temple;	<i>lues</i> , a plague.	<i>Sēpes</i> , a hedge.
plur. a house.		<i>Mōles</i> , a heap.	<i>Sōbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Cautes</i> , a rugged rock.		<i>Nātes</i> , the buttock.	<i>Strāges</i> , a daughter.
<i>Clādes</i> , an overthrow, destruction.		<i>Pālumbes</i> , m. or f. a pigeon.	<i>Strūes</i> , a heap.
<i>Crātes</i> , a hurdle.		<i>Prōles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Sūdes</i> , a scab.
<i>Fāmes</i> , hunger		<i>Pūbes</i> , youth.	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.
<i>Fides</i> , a fiduci.			<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Ales</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a vine-branch.
<i>Annes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a sweler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a wall.
<i>Aries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pes</i> , <i>pēdis</i> , the foot.
<i>Bes</i> , <i>bēsis</i> , two thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a footman.
<i>Ceipes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Eques</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Pīafes</i> , <i>-īdis</i> , a present.
<i>Fomes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a life-guard.
<i>Gurges</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Stīpes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the stalk of a tree.
<i>Hēres</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , an olive bough.
<i>Indiges</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vātes</i> , <i>vatis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Mīles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verres</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar-fight.
<i>Obses</i> , <i>-īdis</i> , a boyfage.	

But *ales*, *miles*, *heres*, *interpres*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

E

Exc.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Abies, -ētis, a fir-tree.

Cēres, -ēris, the goddess of corn.

Merces, -ēdis, a reward, hire.

Merges, -ītis, a handful of corn.

Quies, -ētis, rest.

Rēquies, -ētis; or requiēi, (of the fifth declension,) rest.

Sēges, -ētis, growing corn.

Tēges, -ētis, a mat or coverlet.

Tūdes, -īs, or -ītis, a hummer.

To these add the following adjectives.

Ales, -ītis, swift.

Bīpes, -ēdis, two-footed.

Quadrūpes, -ēdis, four-footed.

Dēses, -īdis, slothful.

Dīves, -ītis, rich.

Hēbes, -ētis, dull.

Perpes, -ētis, perpetual.

Præpes, -ētis, swift-winged.

Rēses, -īdis, idle.

Sōspes, -ītis, safe.

Sūperstes, -ītis, surviving.

Tēres, -ētis, round and long, smooth.

Lōcuples, -ētis, rich.

Manfues, -ētis, gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as *hic ācīnāces, -is*, a Persian sword, a scimitar; but some are neuter; as, *hoc cācoēthes*, an evil custom; *hippōmānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pānāces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllables *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis* in the genitive, as, *hic magnes, maguetis*, a load-stone; *tāpes, -ētis*, tapestry; *lēbes-ētis*, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is*; as, *Dāres, Darētis, or Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Achilles*, has *Āchillīs*; or *Achilli* contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei*, of the second decl. from *Achillēus*: So *Ulysses, Pēricles, Verres, Aris-tōtēles, &c.*

I S.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

auris, auris, the ear; āvis, avis, a bird. — So,

Apis, a bee.

Bīlis, the gall, anger.

Classis, a fleet.

Felis, a cat.

Fōris, a door; oftener

plur. fōres, -īum.

Messis, a harvest or crop.

Nāris, the nostril.

Neptis, a nice.

Ōvis, a sheep.

Pellis, a skin.

Pestis, a plague.

Rātis, a raft.

Rūdis, a rod.

Vallis, a valley.

Vestis, a garment.

Vitis, a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Axis,

<i>Axis, axis, an axle-tree.</i>	<i>Ensis, a sword.</i>	<i>Patruēlis, a cousin-ger-</i>
<i>Aquālis, a water-pot,</i> <i>an ewer.</i>	<i>Fascis, a bundle.</i>	<i>man.</i>
<i>Callis, a beaten road.</i>	<i>Fēciālis, a herald.</i>	<i>Piscis, a fish.</i>
<i>Caulis, the stalk of an</i> <i>herb.</i>	<i>Follis, a pair of bellows.</i>	<i>Postis, a post.</i>
<i>Collis, a Hill.</i>	<i>Fustis, a staff.</i>	<i>Sōdālis, a companion.</i>
<i>Cenchrīs, a kind of sier-</i> <i>pent.</i>	<i>Mensis, a month.</i>	<i>Terris, a fire-brand.</i>
	<i>Mūgilis, or -il, a mul-</i> <i>let fish. [world.]</i>	<i>Unguis, the nail.</i>
	<i>Orbis, a circle, the</i>	<i>Vectis, a lever.</i>
		<i>Vermis, a worm.</i>

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pānis*, bread; *cīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *īdis*; as *tȳrannis*, *tȳrannīdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

<i>Cīnis, -ēris, cībes.</i>	<i>Pūbis or pūbes, -is, or often -ēris,</i>
<i>Cūcūmis, -is, or -ēris, a cucumber.</i>	<i>marriageable.</i>
<i>Dis, dītis, the god of riches, or rich,</i> <i>an adj.</i>	<i>Pulvis, -ēris, dust.</i>
<i>Glis, glīris, a dormouse, a rat.</i>	<i>Quiris, -ītis, a Roman.</i>
<i>Impūbis, or impūbes, -is or -ēris;</i> <i>not marriageable.</i>	<i>Samnis, -ītis, a Samnite.</i>
<i>Lāpis, -īdis, a stone.</i>	<i>Sanguis, -īnis, blood.</i>
	<i>Sēmis, -īfīs, the half of any thing.</i>
	<i>Vōmis, or -er, -ēris, a ploughshare.</i>

Pulvis and *cīnis* are sometimes feminine. *Sēmis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impubis* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberibus caulem feliis*, a stalk with downy leaves, *Virg. Aēn. xii. 413.* *Impube corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes, -is, f.*) of youth, *Herat. epod. 5. 13.* *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adj. has *exsanguis* in the gen.

Exc. 3. The following are either masc. or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule.

<i>Annis, a river.</i>	<i>of a field, or territories, is always</i>
<i>Anguis, a snake.</i>	<i>masc.</i>
<i>Cānālis, a conduit-pipe.</i>	<i>Scrōbis, or scrobs, a ditch.</i>
<i>Clūnis, the buttock.</i>	<i>Torquis, a chain.</i>
<i>Corbis, a basket.</i>	

Exc. 4. These feminines have *īdis*: *Cāfīs, -īdis*, a helmet; *cūspīs, -īdis*, the point of a spear; *capīs, -īdis*, a kind of cup; *prōmulſīs, -īdis*, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Līs*, strife, f. has *ītīs*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: Some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hērēſīs, -eos*, or *-ios* or *-is*, a heresy; so, *bāſīs*, f. the foot of a pillar; *phrāſīs*, a phrase; *phtkīſīs*, a conſumption: *psēſīs*, poetry: *metrōpōlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *īdis*, or *īdos*;

īdos; as, *Pāris*, *-īdis*, or *-īdos*, the name of a man; *aspis*, *-īdis*, f. an asp; *ēphēmēris*, *-īdis*, f. a day book; *īris*, *-īdis*, f. the rainbow; *pyxis*, *-īdis*, f. a box. So, *Aegis*, the shield of Pallas; *canthāris*, a sort of fly; *pēriscēlis*, a garter; *protoſcis*, an elephant's trunk; *pȳrāmis*, a pyramid; and *tigris*, a tiger, *-īdis*, seldom *īgris*: all fem. Part have *īdis*; as, *Psōphis*, *-īdis*, the name of a city: others have *īnis*; as, *Fleusis*, *-īnis*, the name of a city; and some have *entis*; as, *Sīmois*, *Simoentis*, the name of a river, *Chāris*; one of the graces, has, *Chāritis*.

O S.

10. { Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,

nēpos, *-ōtis*, } a grandchild; *sacerdos*, *-ōtis*, a priest, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, a tree.

Eos, *eōs*, the morning.

Cos, *cōtis*, a whetstone.

Glos, *glōris*, the husband's sister, or brother's wife.

Dos, *dōtis*, a dowry.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, *fūris*, a flower.

Custos, *-ōdis*, a keeper; also fem.

Hōnos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, honour.

Hēros, *herōis*, a hero.

Lābos, or *-or*, *-ōris*, labour.

Mīnos, *-ōis*, a king of Crete.

Lēpas, or *-or*, *-ōris*, wit.

Tros, *Trōis*, a Trojan.

Moe, *mōris*, a cystem.

Bes, *bōvis*, m. or f. an ox or cow.

Rcs, *rōris*, dew.

Exc. 3. *Os*, *offis*, a bone; and *ōs*, *oris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *-ōis*; as *kēros*, *-ōis*, a hero, or great man: So *Mīnos*, a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *θ̄os*, a kind of wolf.

U S.

11. { Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris*; as,

pectus, *peclōris*, } the breast; *tempus*, *temporis*, time. So,

Corpus, a body.

Frīgus, cold.

Pēnus, provisions.

Dēcus, honour.

Littus, a shore.

Pignus, a pledge.

Dēdēcus, disgrace.

Nēmus, a grove.

Stercus, dung.

Fācīnus, a great action.

Pēcus, cattle.

Tergus, a hide.

Vēnus, fury.

Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have ēris.

Ācus, chaff.	Mūnus, a gift, or office.	Scēlus, a crime.
Fūnus, a funeral.	Ōlus, pot-herbs.	Sīdus, a star.
Fētūs, a covenant.	Ōnus, a burden.	Vellus, a fleece of wool .
Gēnus, a kind, or kin-dred.	Ōpus, a work.	Vīscus, an entrail.
Glōmus, a clew.	Pondus, a weight.	Ulcus, a bile.
Lātus, the side.	Rūdus, rubbish.	Vulnus, a wound.

Thus acēris, funēris, &c. Glōmus, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has glēni, of the second declension. Vēnus, the goddess of love, and vētus, old, an adjective, likewise have ēris.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

Incus, -ūdis, an anvil.	Jūventus, -ūtis, youth.
Pālus, -ūdis, a pool or marsh.	Sālus, -ūtis, safety.
Pēcus (not used), -ūdis, a sheep.	Sēnectus, -ūtis, old age.
Subscus, -ūdis, a dove-tail.	Servitus, -ūtis, slavery.
Tellus, -ūris, the earth, or goddess of the earth.	Virtus, -ūtis, virtue.
Intercus, -ūtis, an hydrophsy.	

Intercus is properly an adjective, having aqua understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have ūris in the genitive ; as,

Crus, crūris, the leg.	Rus, rūris, the country.
Jus, jūris, law or right ; also broth.	Thus, thūris, frankincense.
Pus, pūris, the corrupt matter of any sore.	Se Mus, mūris, masc. a mouse.

Ligus, or -ur, a Ligurian, has Ligūris; lēpus, masc. a hare, lēpōris; suis, masc. or fem. a swine, suis; grus, mas. or fem. a crane, gruis.

OĒlipus, the name of a man, has OEdipōdis : sometimes it is of the second declension, and has OEdipi. The compounds of pus have ūdis; as, tripus, masc. a tripod, tripus; but lāgōpus, -ōdis, a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is fem. Names of cities have ūntis; as, Trūpezus, Trapezuntis; Ōpus, Opuntis.

Y S.:

12. Nouns in ys are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive, they have sometimes yis or yos; as haec chēlys, chelys, or -yos, a harp; Cāpys, Cāpyis, or -yos; the name of a man: sometimes they have ydis, or ydos; as, haec chlām̄ys, chlāmydis or chlām̄ydos, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes ynis, or ynes; as, Trāchys, Trachynis, or Trachynos, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in æs and aus are,

Æs, æris, n. brass, or money..	Laus, laudis, f. praise.
Fraus, fraudis, f. fraud.	Præs, prædis, m. or f. a surety.
Substantives ending in the syllable eus are all proper names, and	have

have the genitive in *eas*; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; *Tereus*, *Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eas* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphēus*, genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphēi*, and that into *Orphī*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *trābis*, a beam; *scobs*, *scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems*, *hiēmis*, winter; *gens*, gentis, a nation; *stips*, *stīpis*, alms; *pars*, *partis*, a part; *sors*, *sortis*, a lot; *mors*, -*tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chālybs, - <i>ybis</i> , <i>steel</i> .	Mērops, - <i>öpis</i> , a wood-pecker.
Dens, - <i>tis</i> , a tooth.	Mons, - <i>tis</i> , a mountain.
Fons, - <i>tis</i> , a well.	Fons, - <i>tis</i> , a bridge.
Gryps, grȳphis, a griffin.	Seps, sēpis, a kind of serpent; bat.
Hydrops, - <i>öpis</i> , the dropsy.	Seps, sēpis, a hedge, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine:

Adeps, adīpis, fatness.	Serpens, - <i>tis</i> , a serpent.
Rūdens, - <i>tis</i> , a cable.	Stirps, stirpis, the root of a tree.
Scrobs, scrōbis, a ditch.	Stirps, an offspring, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps*, *forcipis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps*, -*ipis*, a prince or princess; *particeps*, -*ipis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs*, *cælibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cāput* have *cipitis*; as, *præceps*, *præcipitis*, headlong; *anceps*, *ancipitis*, doubtful; *biceps*, -*cipitis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucūpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, the leaf of a tree.	Juglans, dis, a walnut.
Glans, glandis, an acorn.	Lens, lendis, a nit.

So, *libripens*, *libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nephrens*, -*dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concors*, *concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vècors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens*, *euntis*; *quiens*, *queuntis*; *rēdiens*, *redēuntis*; *nēquiens*, *nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambīuntis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. { There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput*, *cāptis*, the head, neuter.) In like manner, its compounds, *sincīput*, *sincīptis*, the forehead: and *occīput*, *-ītis*, the hind-head,

X.

16. { Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,
vox, *vōcis*, } the voice; *lux*, *lūcis*, light.—So,

Appendix, -īcis, <i>m. ad-</i> <i>dition</i> ; <i>dum.</i> -īcūla.	Crux, <i>crūcis</i> , <i>a criss.</i>	Mērx, -īcis, <i>meridianē.</i>
Arx, <i>arcis</i> , <i>a citē.</i>	Fæx, -īcis, <i>dregē.</i>	Nutrix, -īcis, <i>a nurſe.</i>
Cēlox, -ōcis, <i>a pīnace.</i>	Falx, -īcis, <i>a scythe.</i>	Nux, nūcis, <i>a nut.</i>
Cervix, -īcis, <i>the neck.</i>	Fax, -ācis, <i>a torch.</i>	Pax, -ācis, <i>peacē.</i>
Cicātrix, -īcis, <i>a scar.</i>	Filix, -īcis, <i>a ferr.</i>	Pix, pīcis, <i>pitch.</i>
Cornix, -īcis, <i>a crow.</i>	Lanx, -īcis, <i>a plate.</i>	Rādix, -īcis, <i>a root.</i>
Cōturnix, -īcis, <i>a quail.</i>	Lōdix, -īcis, <i>a fleet.</i>	Sālix, -īcis, <i>a willow.</i>
Coxendix, -īcis, <i>the hip.</i>	Mēretrix, -īcis, <i>a cour- tesan..</i>	Vibix, or -ex, -īcis, <i>the mark of a wound.</i>

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrax*, -ācis, a breast-plate; *Cōrax*, -ācis, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *īcis*; as, *pollex*, -īcis, m. the thumb.—So the following nouns, also masculine,

Āpex, <i>the tip or tassel on the top of a prieſt's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.</i>	Cīmex, <i>a bug.</i>	Pōdex, <i>the breech.</i>
Ārtifex, <i>an artiſt..</i>	Cōdex, <i>a book.</i>	Pontīflex, <i>a chief prieſt.</i>
Carnīfex, <i>an executioner:</i>	Cīlex, <i>a gnat, a midge.</i>	Pūlex, <i>a flea.</i>
Caudex, <i>the trunk of a tree.</i>	Fītex, <i>a ſcrub..</i>	Rīmex, <i>a rupture.</i>
Vervex, <i>a wedder ſheep,</i> has <i>vervēcis</i> ; <i>fanīcēs</i> , <i>a mower of hay,</i> <i>fanīcēs</i> : <i>Rēfēs</i> , m. -īcis, <i>a vine-branch cut off.</i>	Index, <i>an informer..</i>	Sūrex, <i>a rat.</i>
	Lātex, <i>any liquor.</i>	Vertex, <i>the crown of the head.</i>
	Mūrex, <i>a ſeal-fish,</i> <i>purple.</i>	Vortex, <i>a whirlpool.</i>

Vervex, *a wedder ſheep,* has *vervēcis*; *fanīcēs*, *a mower of hay,*
fanīcēs: *Rēfēs*, m. -īcis, *a vine-branch cut off.*

To these masculines add,

Cālix, -īcis, <i>a cup.</i>	Oryx, -īcis, <i>a wild goat.</i>
Cālyx, -īcis, <i>the bud of a flower.</i>	Phœnix, -īcis, <i>a bird ſo called.</i>
Coccyx, -īgis, <i>vel</i> -īcis, <i>a cuckow.</i>	Trāduz, -ūcis, <i>a graff, or off-set of a vine; also fem.</i>
Fornix, -īcis, <i>a vault.</i>	But

But the following polysyllables in <i>ax</i> and <i>ex</i> are feminine..	
Fornax, -ācis, <i>a furnace.</i>	Smilax, -ācis, <i>the herb rope-weed.</i>
Panax, -ācis, <i>the herb all-heal.</i>	Cērex, -īcis, <i>a sedge.</i>
Clūnax, -ācis, <i>a ladder.</i>	Sūpellex, <i>supellectilis, Louselotus,</i>
Forsex, -īcis, <i>a pair of scissars.</i>	<i>furniture.</i>
Hālex, -ēcis, <i>a herring.</i>	

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -cis, <i>the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal; but calx, lime, is always fem.</i>	Lāmax, -ācis, <i>a snail.</i>
Cortex, -īcis, <i>the bark of a tree.</i>	Obex, -īcis, <i>a bolt or bar.</i>
Hystrix, -īcis, <i>a porcupine.</i>	Perdix, -īcis, <i>a partridge.</i>
Imbrex, -īcis, <i>a gutter or roof-tile.</i>	Pūmex, -īcis, <i>a pumice-stone.</i>
Lynx, -cis, <i>an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.</i>	Rūmex, -īcis, <i>sorrel, an herb.</i>
	Sandix, -īcis, <i>a purple colour.</i>
	Silex, -īcis, <i>a flint.</i>
	Vārix, -īcis, <i>a swain vein.</i>

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Aquilex, -ēgis, <i>a well-maker.</i>	Phālanx, -angis, f. <i>a phalanx.</i>
Conjunx, or -ux, -ūgis, <i>a husband or wife.</i>	Rēmex -īgis, <i>a river.</i>
Frux, (<i>not used</i>), frūgis, f. <i>corn.</i>	Rek, rēgis, <i>a king.</i>
Grex, grēgis, m. or f. <i>a flock.</i>	Nix, nīvis, f. <i>snow.</i>
Lex, legis, f. <i>a law.</i>	Nox, noctis, f. <i>night.</i>
	Sēnex, sēnis, <i>(an adj.), old.</i>

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns: thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, *a silk-worm*, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *onyx*, masc. or fem. *onjchis*, *a precious stone*; and so *sardonyx*; *larynx*, *laryngis*, fem. *the top of the wind-pipe*; *Phryx*, *Phrygic*, *a Phrygian*; *sphinx*, -ngis, *a fabulous hag*; *strix*, -īgis, f. *a screechowl*; *Styx*, -īgis, f. *a river in hell*; *Hylax*, -īlis, *the name of a dog*; *Bibrax*, *Bibractis*, *the name of a town*, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Ejuriante leoni ex ore exculpere prædam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. *Aen.* x. 361. for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1.	The following nouns have the accusative in <i>im</i> :
Xmūsis, f.	a mason's rule.
Būris, f.	the beam of a plough.
Gummis, f.	gum.
Mēphitis, f.	a damp or strong smell.
Rāvis, f.	hoarseness.
Sināpis, f.	mustard.
Cannabis, f.	bemp.
Cūcūmis, m.	a cucumber.
Sītis, f.	thirst.
Tussis, f.	the cough.
Vis, f.	strength.

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places; as, *Hispālis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Libya;—2. of rivers; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Bætis*, the Guadalquivir in Spain: So *Athēsis*, *Atrāris*, *Albis*, *Liris*, &c.—3. Of gods; as, *Anubis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Scorāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tiberim* or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2.	Several nouns in <i>is</i> have either <i>em</i> or <i>im</i> ; as,	
Clāvis, f.	a key.	Pelvis, f. a basin.
Cūtis, f.	the skin.	Puppis, f. the stern of a ship.
Febritis, f.	a fever.	Sēmentis, f. a sowing.
Nāvis, f.	a ship.	Strigilis, f. a horse-comb.
Rekis, f.	a rope.	Turris, f. a tower.

Thus *nāvem*, or *nāvim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously:

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as, *lampas*, *lampādis*, or *lampādos*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*: *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *āether*, the sky; *dolphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pāna*, *āthēra*, *dolphiña*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *o*: impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *īdēz*, as, *Pāris*, *Parīdis*; or *Parīdos*; *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Parīdem*, never *Parīde*.—So *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *īdēz*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elīdis* or *Elīdos*, *E!lēm* or *Elīdi*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlamys*, *ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *chlinyz*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *o*: pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *mōtāmorphōsis*, *-eos*, or *-ios*, *metamorphēsim* or *-in*, a change: *Tēbys*, *-eos*, or *-yis*, *Tēlym*, or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eius*, have the accusative in *as*: as, *Thēsus*, *Thesēz*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

EXCEPTIONS in the ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *a!*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sēdile*, *sedili*; *ānimal*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names; as, *Prænestē*, abl. *Prænestē*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

Far, farre, <i>corn</i> .	Nectar, -āre, <i>drink of the gods</i> .
Hépar, -āte, <i>the liver</i> .	Par, páre, <i>a match, a pair</i> .
Jubar, -āre, <i>a sunbeam</i> .	Sal, sálē, <i>salt</i> .

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*: but *canālis*, *Bætis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *reñis*, a rope; and *cūris*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *fīnis*, *supplex*, *occīs*; *pīgīl*, a champion; *mūgil* or *mugilis*; so, *rus*, *occīput*: Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *cīvis*, *clāssis*, *sōrs*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *pīfīs*, *fūfīs*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canālis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *afīati*, *cani*, *lapidi*, *ori*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bīpennīs*, *-i*, an halbert; *mōlāris*, *-i*, a millstone; *quadrūrēmis*, *-i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis*, *-i*; *Dēcember*; *-bri*, &c. But *rūdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *cīps*; or *us*; as,

Adōlescens, a young man.	Princeps, a prince.	Torrens, a brook.
Infans, an infant.	Sēnēx, an old man.	Vigil, a watchman.

Thus, *adōlescente*, *infante*, *sene*, &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *yī* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atye*, *Atye*, or *Ay*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermones*, *rūpes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *sis* or *is*, as, *puppes*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita*, *itinera*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia*, *calcaria*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vādium*; but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatum*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*: *parens*, *vātes*, *pānis*, *jūvēnis*, and *cānis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the ablative plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, carnis, f. flesh.	Lis, litis, f. strife.
Cohors, -tis, f. a company.	Mus, mūris, m. a mouse.
Cor, cordis, n. the heart.	Nix, nivis, f. snow.
Cos, cotis, f. a boar or wketstone.	Nox, noctis, f. the night.
Dos, dōtis, f. a dorsey.	Os, ossis, n. a bone.
Faux, faucis, f. the jaws.	Quīris, -ītis, a Roman.
Glis, glīris, m. a rat.	Samnis, -ītis, m. or f. a Samnite.
Lar, laris, m. a household-god.	Uter, utris, m. a bottle.
Linter, -tris, m. or f. a little beat.	

Thus *Sannitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *bessium*. *Bes*, an ox or cow, has *boum*, and in the dative, *bōbus* or *lūbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Mācedo*, a Macedonian; *Ārabs*, an Arabian; *Ēthiops*, an Ethiopian; *Mōnōceros*, an unicorn; *Lynx*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian: *Macedōnum*, *Arābum*; *Ēthiō-pum*, *Monocerōtum*, *Lyncum*, *Thrācum*. But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātum*, or *epigrammatōn*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-iūm*, or *-ēōn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus *mānes*, m. souls departed, *maniūm*; *calites*,

m. inhabitants of heaven, *calitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *celes*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliorum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalio*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as, *nōcentūm* for *nōcentium*: and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *cēlitūm* for *cēlītūm*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncope*; and the latter by *Epenthesis*.

EXCEPTIONS in the DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibūs*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poematis*, rather than *poēmatibūs*, from the old nominative *poēmatūm* of the second decl.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibūs*, from *Troas*, *Troādis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *as*, *eis*; or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc., *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*, *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *herōas*; *Aethiops*, *Aethiopias*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS through all the Cases.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampādis*, or -ādos; -ādi, ādem, or -āda; -as; -āde; Plur. -ādes; -ādum; -ādibus; -ādīs, or -ādas; -ādes, -adibus.)

Troas, f. *Troādis*, or -ādos; -i; em or a; as; e; Pl. *Troades*; -um; ibus, si or sin; es or as; es; ibus.

Tros, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or -a; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

Phillis, f. *Philidis* or -des, -di, -dem, or -da; i or is; de.

Paris, m. *Parīdis* or -dos; -di; -dem, *Parim* or in; i; de.

Chlamys, f. *Chlamydis* or -jdos, īli, īdem or īda, ys, īde, &c.

Cāpys, m. *Cāpyis*, or -yos; yi; ym or yn; y; ye or y.

Mētāmorphōsis, f. -is or -eos, i, em or in, i, i, &c.

Orpheus, m. -eos, ēi or ei, ea, eu, abl. eo of the second decl.

Dido, f. *Didās* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.
Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are; nom. sing. *us*; gen. *us*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. like the nom.; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

Fructus, fruit, <i>masc.</i>		Cornu, <i>a horn, neut.</i>
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.
<i>N.</i> fructus,	<i>N.</i> fructus,	<i>N.</i> cornu,
<i>G.</i> fructūs,	<i>G.</i> fructuum,	<i>G.</i> cornuum,
<i>D.</i> fructui,	<i>D.</i> fructib⁹s,	<i>D.</i> cornu⁹s,
<i>A.</i> fructum,	<i>A.</i> fructus,	<i>A.</i> cornu,
<i>V.</i> fructus,	<i>V.</i> fructus,	<i>V.</i> cornu,
<i>A.</i> fructu.	<i>A.</i> fructibus.)	<i>A.</i> cornu.
		Plur.
		<i>N.</i> cornua,
		<i>G.</i> cornuum,
		<i>D.</i> cornib⁹s,
		<i>A.</i> cornua,
		<i>V.</i> cornua,
		<i>A.</i> cornibus.)

In like manner decline,

Aditus, <i>an access.</i>	Hauſtus, <i>a draught.</i>	Rictus, <i>a grinning.</i>
Anfractus, <i>a winding.</i>	Ictus, <i>a stroke.</i>	Ritus, <i>a rite, a ceremony.</i>
Aditus, <i>the sense of bearing.</i> [song.]	Impetus, <i>an attack.</i>	Risus, <i>laughter.</i> [ry.]
Cantus, <i>a singing or Cāsus, <i>a fall, an accident or chance.</i></i>	Incessus, <i>a stately gate.</i>	Ructus, <i>a belching.</i>
Cantus, <i>a singing or</i>	Luctus, <i>grief.</i>	Saltus, <i>a leap, a forest.</i>
Cāsus, <i>a fall, an accident or chance.</i>	Luxus, <i>luxury, riot.</i>	Sēnātus, <i>the senate, the supreme council among the Romans.</i>
Cæſtus, <i>a gauntlet.</i>	Mētus, <i>fear.</i>	Sensus, <i>a sense, feeling, meaning.</i>
Cestus, <i>a marriage-girdle.</i>	Missus, <i>a throw; a turn or beat in races.</i>	Sexus, <i>a sex.</i>
Cœtus, <i>an assembly.</i>	Mōtus, <i>a motion.</i>	Sinus, <i>a bosom.</i>
Cultus, <i>worſhip, dress.</i>	Nexus, <i>servitude for debt.</i>	Singultus, <i>a sob, the bickup.</i>
Currus, <i>a chariot.</i>	Nūrus, <i>a daughter-in-</i>	Situs, <i>a situation.</i>
Cursus, <i>a race.</i>	Nūtus, <i>a nod.</i> [lāw.]	Stātus, <i>a posture.</i>
Dēcessus, <i>a departure.</i>	Obtūtus, <i>a loſk.</i>	Socrus, <i>a mother-in-law.</i>
Eventus, <i>an event.</i>	Odōrātus, <i>the sense of smelling.</i>	Spiritus, <i>a breathing, spirit.</i>
Exērcitus, <i>an army.</i>	Passus, <i>a pace.</i>	Successus, <i>success.</i>
Exitus, <i>an issue.</i>	Principātus, <i>pre-eminence.</i>	Sumptus, <i>expense.</i>
Fastus, <i>pride.</i>	Prōcessus, <i>a progress.</i>	Tactus, <i>the touch.</i>
Flātus, <i>a blaſt.</i>	Progressus, <i>an advancement.</i>	Tōnitru, <i>thunder.</i>
Flētus, <i>weeping.</i>	Prospectus, <i>a view.</i>	Transitus, <i>a passage.</i>
Fluctus, <i>a wave.</i>	Prōventus, <i>an increase, revenue.</i>	Tūmultus, <i>an uproar.</i>
Fœtus, <i>an offspring.</i>	Quæſtus, <i>grin.</i>	Vēnātus, <i>hunting.</i>
Gēlu, <i>ice.</i>	Questus, <i>a complaint.</i>	Vīsus, <i>the sight.</i>
Gēmītus, <i>a groan.</i>	Rēditus, <i>a return; an income.</i>	Victus, <i>food.</i>
Grādus, <i>a step, a degree.</i>		Vultus, <i>the countenance.</i>
Gustus, <i>the taste.</i>		Exc.
Habitus, <i>a habit, the state of mind or body.</i>		
Halitus, <i>breath.</i>		

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine:

<i>Ācus, a needle.</i>	<i>Fīcus, a fig.</i>	<i>Portīcus, a gallery.</i>
<i>Anus, an old woman.</i>	<i>Mānus, the hand.</i>	<i>Spēcus, a den.</i>
<i>Dōmus, a house.</i>	<i>Pēnus, a storehouse.</i>	<i>Trībus, a tribe.</i>

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus, penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimānus*, having one hand; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Domus* is but partly of the second declension, thus,

/ *Dōmus, a house, fem.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>domus,</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>domus,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>domūs, or -mi,</i>	<i>Gen.</i> <i>domorum, or -uum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>domui, or -mo,</i>	<i>Dat.</i> <i>domibus,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>domum,</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>domos, or -us,</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>domus,</i>	<i>Voc.</i> <i>domus,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>domo.</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>domibus.)</i>

Note. *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as, *memineris domi.* Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ibus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

<i>Ācus, a needle.</i>	<i>Lācus, a lake.</i>	<i>Spēcus, a den.</i>
<i>Arcus, a bow.</i>	<i>Partus, a birth.</i>	<i>Trībus, a tribe.</i>
<i>Artus, a joint.</i>	<i>Portus, a harbour.</i>	<i>Vēru, a spit.</i>
<i>Gēnu, the knee.</i>		

*Portus, gēnu, and vēru, have likewise *ibus* ; as, portībus or portūbus.*

Exc. 3. *Iesus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus, gruis*, a crane; thus *fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructuem, fructue*; *fructus, fructuum, fructibus, fructues, fructibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus anuis causū*, for *anūs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impetu*, for *impetui*. Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Effe usu sibi*, for *usu*, Ib. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currūm* for *curruum*.

/ FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender: as,

Sing.	Res, a thing, fem.	Terminations.
	Plur.	
<i>Nom.</i> res,	<i>Nom.</i> res,	<i>es</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i> rēi,	<i>Gen.</i> rērum,	ēi,
<i>Dat.</i> rēi,	<i>Dat.</i> rēbus,	ēi,
<i>Acc.</i> rem,	<i>Acc.</i> res,	em,
<i>Voc.</i> res,	<i>Voc.</i> res,	es,
<i>Abl.</i> re.	<i>Abl.</i> rēbus.	e.

In like manner decline,

Ācies, the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.	Inglūvies, gluttony.	Scābies, the scab, or itch.
Cāries, rottenness.	Mācies, leanness.	Sēries, an order.
Cæsāries, the hair.	Mātēries, matter.	Spēcies, an appearance.
Fācies, the face.	Pernīcies, destruction.	Sūperficies, the surface.
Glācies, ice.	Prōlūvies, a looseness.	Tempēries, temperateness:
	Rābies, madness.	
	Sūnies, gore.	

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *mērīdes*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing: and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *ābies*, a fir-tree; *āries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

/ IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

I. Masculine

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:

- | | | |
|---|-------|-----------------------------------|
| Avernus, a lake in Campania, | belt. | Mænælus, a hill in Arcadia. |
| Dindymus, a hill in Phrygia. | | Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace. |
| Ismarus, a hill in Thrace. | | Tænarus, a promontory in Laconia. |
| Mæsticus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines. | | Tartarus, hell. |
| | | Tæygetus, a hill in Laconia. |

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum*; *Dindyma*, -orum, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga* or *cacumina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.

- Jocus*, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural:

- Carbasus*, a sail, pl. *carbasa*; *Pergamus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural:

- Cælum*, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Elysium*, pl. *Elysi*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter:

- Rastrum*, a rake, pl. *rastræ* and *rastra*; *frenum*, a bridle, pl. *freni* and *frena*.

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural:

- Delicium*, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *Epulum*, a banquet, pl. *epulæ*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called heteroclites; as, *vas*, *vasis*, a vessel, plur. *vasa*, *vasorum*; *jugrum*, *jugeri*, an acre, plur. *jugera*, *jugerum*, *jugeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugeras* and *jugere* in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.)

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pound*, a pound, or pounds; *fas*, right; *nefas*, wrong; *sinapi*, mustard; *mâne*, the morning; as *clarum mânū*, Pers. *A mane ad vesperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cépe*, an onion; *gau-sápe*,

sæpe, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, *Pers.* *Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart.* *O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks; *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin, as *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. / Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *m̄nōptōta*: as, *inquieris*, I want of *test*, in the nominative singular; *dīcis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *dīcis gratiā*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *inficiās*, and *incīta* or *incītas*, in the acc. plur.; thus *ire inficiās*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait or non-plus; *ingrātiis*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctū*, in the night-time; *diū*, *interdiū*, in the day-time; *prōmptū*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussū*, without command or leave: *ergō* for the sake, as, *-ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *Compēde*, m. with a fetter; *Casse*, m. with a net; *vēprem*, m. a briar: Plur. *Ambāges*, *-ibūs*; *compedes*, *-ibūs*; *casses*, *-iūm*; *vēpres*, *-iūm*, &c.

3. / Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *dīptōta*; as, *nēcessē* or *-um*, necessity; *vōlūpe* or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astū*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. sing.; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespēre* or *vespēri*, the evening; *firemps*, the flame, all alike, abl. *sīrempsē*; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *verbērā*, *verberum*, *verbēribūs*, &c. *rēpetundarūm*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniūs*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppētiā*, nom. plur. *suppētias*, in the acc. help; *infēriā*, *infērias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. / Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēcī*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *pieces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Fēminis*, gen. from the obsolete *femīn*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the

nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dīca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantudem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neutrals, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs; *ēpos*, a heroic poem; *cūcōēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. [The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetraplōta*:] *vīcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *dīlōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire: *dīlōnis* wants it altogether: *vīcis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ōpis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. [Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaplōta*:] thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *sātius*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Sītus*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur..

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *justitia*, justice; *ambītus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *āpium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trīticum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *āvēna*, oats; *jūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

- Aēr, aēris, *the air.*
 Æther, -ēris, *the sky.*
 Fīmus, -i, *dung.*
 Hespērus, -i, *the evening star.*
 Līmus, -i, *lime..*
 Mēridies, -iēi, *mid-day.*
 Mūndus, -i, *woman's ornaments.*
 Muscus, -i, *moss..*

- Nēmo, -iñis, *no body.*
 Pēnus, -i, or -ūs, *all manner of provisions.*
 Pontus, -i, *the sea.*
 Pulvis, -ēris, *dust.*
 Sanguis, -iñis, *blood.*
 Sōpor, -ōris, *sleep.*
 Viscus, -i, *bird-lime.*

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

- Argilla, -æ, *potters earth.*
 Fāma, -æ, *fame.*
 Hūmus, -i, *the ground.*
 Lues, -is, *a plague.*
 Plebs, plēbis, *the common people..*
 Pūbes, -is, *the youth..*
 Quies, -ētis, *rest..*

- Sālus, -ūtis, *safety.*
 Sītis, -is, *thirst.*
 Sūpellex, -ētīlis, *household-furniture.*
 Tābes, -is, *a consumption.*
 Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.*
 Vesprēa, -æ, *the evening.*

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

- Album, -i, *a list of names.*
 Dilūcūlum, -i, *the dawnning of day.*
 Ebur, -ōris, *ivory.*
 Gēlu, *ind. frēst.*
 Hīlum, -i, *the black speck of a bear,*
 a trifle.
 Iūltitium, -i, *a vacation, the time*
 when courts do not sit.
 Lēthum, *death.*

- Lūtum, -i, *clay.*
 Nihil, nihilum, *or nil, nothing.*
 Pēlāgus, -i, *the sea.*
 Pēnum, -i, *and penus, -ōris ; all*
 kind of provisions..
 Sal, sālis, *salt.*
 Sēnium, -ii, *old age..*
 Ver, vēris, *the spring.*
 Vīrus, -i, *poison.*

5. Many nouns want the singular ; as the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; thus,

- Apollināres, -ium, *games in honour*
 of Apollo.
 Bacchānālia, -ium, &c. -iorum, *the*
 feasts of Bacchus.
 Būcōlica, -orum, *a book of past-*

- Olympia, -orum, *the Olympic games.*
 Syracūsæ, -arum, *Syracuse.*
 Hierosolyma, -orum, *Jerusalem ;*
 or. Hierosolyma, -æ, of the first
 declension.

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

- Cancelli, *lattices, or windows, made*
 with cross bars like a net ; a rail
 or balustrade round any place :
 bounds or limits.
 Cīni, *gray hairs.*
 Casles, -ium, *a buster's net.*

- Cēlēres, -um, *the light-borse.*
 Cōdīcilli, *writings.*
 Druīdes, -um, *the Druids, priests*
 of the ancient Britons and Gauls.
 Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods, car-*
 ried before the chief magistrates of
 Rome.

Fasti,

- Fasti, -orum, or fastus, -uum, calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.
- Fines, -ium, the borders of a country, or a country.
- Fōri, the gangways of a ship, seats in the Circus, or the cells of a beehive.
- Furfures, -um, scales in the bead.
- Inféri, the gods below.

- Lēmūres, -um, hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.
- Libéri, children.
- Majōres, -um, ancestors.
- Minōres, -um, successors.
- Nātāles, -ium, parentage.
- Postēri, posterity.
- Prōcēres, -um, the nobles.
- Pūgillāres, -ium, writing-tables.
- Sentes, -ium, thorns.
- Sūpēri, the gods above.
- Vepres, -ium, briars.

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

- Alpes, -ium, the Alps.
- Augustiæ, difficulties.
- Āpinæ, gerugatus.
- Argūtiæ, quirks, whimsisms.
- Bīgæ, a chariot drawn by two horses.
- Trīgæ, — by three.
- Quadrīgæ, — by four.
- Braccæ, breeches.
- Branchiæ, the gills of a fish.
- Charites, -um, the three graces.
- Cūnæ, a cradle.
- Dēcimæ, tibes.
- Dīræ, imprecations, the furies.
- Dīvitiæ, riches.
- Dryādes, -um, the nymphs of the woods.
- Excubitiæ, watches.
- Exs̄quiæ, funerals.
- Exuviae, spoils. [ings.
- Facētiæ, pleasant say-
- Facultatiæ, -ium, one's goods and chattels.

- Fēriæ, holidays.
- Gādes, -ium, Cadiz.
- Gerræ, trifles.
- Hyādes, -um, the seven stars.
- Indūciæ, a truce.
- Indūviæ, cloaths to put on.
- Ineptiæ, silly stories.
- Ins̄idiæ, snares.
- Kälendæ, Nōnæ, Īdus, -uum, names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.
- Lāpicidinæ, stone-quarries.
- Lit̄eræ, an epistle.
- Lactes, -ium, the small guts.
- Mānūbiæ, spoils taken in war.
- Mīnæ, threats.
- Minūtiæ, little niceties.
- Nūgæ, trifles.
- Nundinæ, a market.
- Nuptiæ, a marriage.
- Officiæ, cheats.
- Opēræ, workmen.
- Pāriētīnæ, ruinous walls.
- Partes, -ium, a party.
- Phālēræ, trapplings.
- Flāgæ, nets.
- Pleiādes, -um, the seven stars. [ments.
- Prestigiæ, enchant-
- Prīmitiæ, first fruits.
- Quisquiliæ, sweepings.
- Rēliquiae, a remainder.
- Sālebræ, rugged places.
- Sālinæ, salt-pits.
- Scālæ, a ladder.
- Scātebræ, a spring.
- Scōpæ, a besom.
- Tēnebræ, darkness.
- Thermæ, hot baths.
- Thermōpylæ, straits of mount Ceta.
- Trīcæ, toys.
- Valvæ, folding doors.
- Vergiliæ, the seven stars.
- Vindiciæ, a claim of liberty, a defence.

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

- Acta, public acts or records.
- Ast̄iva, sc. cāstra, summer quarters.
- Arma, arms.
- Bellaria, -orum, sweet meats.
- Eona, goods.
- Br̄via, -ium, shelves.

- Castra, a camp.
- Chāristia, -orum, a peace-feast.
- Cibāria, viuetials.
- Cōmītia, an assembly of the people, to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.
- Crēpundia,

Crēpundia, children's batwbles.	Pārāphierna, all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.
Cūnābūla, a cradle, an origin.	Pārentālia, -ium, solemnities at the funeral of parents.
Dīctēria, scoffs, witticisms.	Philtra, love potions.
Exta, the entrails.	Präcordia, the bowels.
Februa, -orum, purifying sacrifices.	Principia, the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.
Flabra, blass of wind.	P̄thia, games in honour of Apollo.
Frāga, strawberries.	Rostra, a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.
H̄yberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.	Scrūta, old cloths.
Illa, -ium, the entrails.	Sponsālia, -ium, espousals.
Incūnābūla, a cradle.	Stātīva, sc. castra, a standing camp.
Insecta, insects.	Suōvētaurīlia, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.
Justa, funeral rites.	Tālāria, -ium, winged faces.
Lamenta, lamentations.	Tesqua, rough places.
Lautia, provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.	Transtra, the seats where the rowers sit in ships.
Lustra, dars of wild beasts.	Utensīlia, -ium, utensils.
Māgālia, -ium, cottages.	
Mœnia, -ium, the walls of a city.	
Mūnia, -iorum, offices.	
Orgia, the sacred rites of Bacchus.	
Ovilia, -ium, an inclosure, where the people went to give their votes.	
Pāleāria, -iam, the deru-lap of a beast.	

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *litera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbor* and *arōr*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*; and *laurūs*, a laurel tree, *sēqueſter*, -tri; or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *māteria*, -æ, or, *materies*, -iei, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ei, or contracted, *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tōnitrus*, -ūs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pēnus*, -i, and -ūs, m. or f. or *penus*, -ōris, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *āether*, -ēris, masc. and *āethra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or *īlis*, a tyger: to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -æ; or *Fidēnæ*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -æ; and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -dis; and *cassida*, -de, a helmet.—So,

Acūnus,

Ācīnus, & -um, a grape-stone.	Hebdōmas, & -āda, a week.
Alveār, & -e, & -ium, a bee-hive.	Intrīta, & -um, fine mortar, mīced meat.
Āmārācūs, & -um, sweet marjoram.	Librārium, & -a, a book-case.
Ancīle, & -ium, an oval shield.	Mācēria, & -es, iēi, a wall.
Angīportus, -ūs, & -i, & -um, a narrow lane.	Milliāre, & -ium, a mile.
Aphractus, & -um, an open ship.	Mōnītūm, & -us, -ūs, an admīnition.
Aplūstre, & -um, the flag, colours.	Muria, & -es, -iēi, brine or pickle.
Bācūlus, & -um, a staff.	Nāfus, & -um, the nose.
Balteus, & -um, a belt.	Obsīdio, & -um, a siege.
Bātillus, & -um, a fire-shovel.	Oestrus, & -um, a gad bee.
Cāpūlus, & -um, a bilt.	Ostrea, & -um, an oyster.
Cāpus, & -o, a capon.	Feplus, & -um, a veil, a robe.
Cēpa, & -e, indec. an onion.	Pistrīna, & -um, a bake-house.
Clypeus, & -um, a shield.	Prætextus, -us, & -um, a pretext.
Collūvies, & -io, filth, dirt.	Rāpa, & -um, a turnip.
Compāges, & -go, a joining.	Rūma, & -men, the cud.
Conger, & -grus, a large eel.	Ruscus, & -um, a brush.
Crōcus, & -um, saffron.	Seps, & sēpes, f. an hedge.
Cūbitus, & -um, a cubit.	Segmen, & -mentum, a piece or puring.
Dilūvium, & -es, a deluge.	Sibīlus, & -um, a hissing.
Elēphantus, & Elephas, -antis, an elephant.	Sinus, & -um, a milk-pail.
Flēgus, & -ēia, an elegy.	Spurcītia, & -es, naſiness.
Fssēda, & -um, a chariot.	Strāmen, & -tum, straw.
Eventus, & -um, an event.	Suffīmen, & -tum, a perfume.
Fulgetra, & -um, lightning.	Tignus, & -um, a plank.
Gälērus, & -um, a hat.	Tōral, & -āle, a bed-covering.
Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -čris, or -ěri, a bunch, a swelling.	Torcūlar, & -are, a wine-press.
Glūtinum, & -en, glue.	Viscus, & -um, bird lime.
	Vēternus, and -um, a lethargy.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus *vāsu*, -orum, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pōpūlūs*, a people}; *exercītūs*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priāmīdes*, the son of Priamus; } *Æētias*, the daughter

daughter of *Æetes*; *Nērīnē*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus*; *Rōmūlīdæ*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

1. Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, *-dæ*, &c. pl. *-dæ*, *darum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *es*: *Tyndāris*, *-īdis* or *-īdos*; *Æētias*, *-ādis*, &c.)

3. 1 A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy;) *Troas*, *-ādis*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicūlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, *-īdis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Mācēdo*, *-ōnis*; *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Mācedonia*, *Arpīnum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood, as, *Romānus*, *Athēnēnsis*, &c.

4. 1 A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as *justitia*, justice; *bōnitas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness: from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. 1 A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartūla*, a little paper; *ōpusculum*, a little work; *cōrūlum*, a little heart; *rēticulum*, a small net; *scābelum*, a small form; *lōpillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pūgella*, a little

little page : from *tiber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rēte*, *scamnum*, *lāpis*, *cultus*, *pāgīna*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive ; as, from *puer*, *puerūlus*, *puellūlus*, *puellūlus* ; from *cista*, *cistūla*, *cistella*, *cistellūla* ; from *hōmo*, *hōmuncio*, *hōmunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum* ; and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *as*, *Cāpito*, *-ōnis*, having a large head : So, *nāso*, *lābeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal noun*; as, *āmor*, love ; *doctrīna*, learning : from *āmo*, and *doceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura* ; as, *lectio*, a lesson ; *āmātor*, a lover ; *luctus*, grief, *creatūra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

| An adjective is a word added to a substantive, to express its quality ; as, *hard*, *soft*. |

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive : If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense ; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense : thus we can say, "a good thing ;" but we cannot say, "a book thing."

Adjectives in English admit of no variation, except that of the degrees of comparison.

LATIN ADJECTIVES.

| Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents. |

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases ; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

| Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension. |

| All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only. |

| Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension ; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third. |

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension.

Acer, <i>sharp.</i>	Cēleber, <i>famous.</i>	Pēdester, <i>on foot.</i>
Ālacer, <i>cheerful.</i>	Cēler, <i>swift.</i> [horse.]	Sälüber, <i>wholesome.</i>
Campester, <i>belonging to a plain.</i>	Ēquester, <i>belonging to a plain.</i>	Sylvester, <i>wandy.</i>
	Pāluster, <i>marshy.</i>	Vōlūcer, <i>swift.</i>

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

(Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bōnus*, for the masc. *bōna*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good: thus,)

Sing.	Plur.
N. bōn-us, -a, -um,	N. bon-i, -æ, -a,
G. bon-i, -æ, -i,	G. bon-orum, -arum, -orum,
D. bon-o, -æ, -o,	D. bon-is, -is, -is,
A. bon-um, -am, -um,	A. bon-os, -as, -a,
V. bon-e, -a, -um,	V. bon-i, -æ, -a,
A. bon-o, -â, -o.	A. bon-is, -is, -is. /

In like manner decline,

Acerbus, <i>unripe, bitter.</i>	Arctus, <i>strait.</i>	Cæcus, <i>blind.</i>
Ācidus, <i>sour, tart.</i>	Arduus, <i>lofty.</i>	Callidus, <i>cunning.</i>
Ācūtus, <i>sharp.</i>	Argūtus, <i>quick, shrill.</i>	Calvus, <i>bald.</i>
Ādultērīnus, <i>counterfeit.</i>	Affus, <i>roasted, hot, pure.</i>	Cāmūrus, <i>crooked.</i>
Āegrōtus, <i>sick.</i>	Astūtus, <i>cunning.</i>	Candidus, <i>fair, sincere.</i>
Āemūlus, <i>vying with.</i>	Āvarus, <i>covetous.</i>	Cānus, <i>hoary.</i>
Āequus, <i>equal, just.</i>	Āvidus, <i>greedy.</i>	Cārus, <i>dear.</i>
Ahēnus, <i>of brass.</i>	Augustus, <i>venerable.</i>	Cassus, <i>void.</i>
Albus, <i>white.</i>	Austērus, <i>harsh, rough.</i>	Castus, <i>chaste.</i>
Altus, <i>high.</i>	Balbus, <i>stammering.</i>	Cautus, <i>wary.</i>
Āmārus, <i>bitter.</i>	Barbārus, <i>savage.</i>	Cāvus, <i>hollow.</i>
Āmœnus, <i>pleasant.</i>	Bardus, <i>dull, slow.</i>	Celsus, <i>high, lofty.</i>
Ambīguus, <i>doubtful.</i>	Beātus, <i>blessed.</i>	Cernuus, <i>stooping.</i>
Āmīcus, <i>friendly.</i>	Bellus, <i>pretty.</i>	Certus, <i>certain, sure.</i>
Amplus, <i>large.</i>	Bēnignus, <i>kind.</i>	Clārus, <i>famous.</i>
Annuus, <i>yearly.</i>	Bīmus, <i>two years old.</i>	Claudus, <i>lame.</i>
Angustus, <i>narrow.</i>	Blæsus, <i>lisping.</i>	Cœrūlus, <i>or -ēus, azure, sky coloured.</i>
Antīquus, <i>ancient.</i>	Blandus, <i>flattering.</i>	Cominōdus, <i>convenient.</i>
Aprīcus, <i>sunny.</i>	Brūtus, <i>brutish, senseless.</i>	Concinnus, <i>fine, neat.</i>
Aptus, <i>fit.</i>	Cādūcus, <i>fading.</i>	Cōruscus, <i>glittering.</i>
Arcānus, <i>secret.</i>		Crassus, <i>thick.</i>

Crēpērus, doubtful.	Frētus, trusting.	Lārgus, large.
Crispus, curled.	Frīvōlus, trifling.	Lascīvus, wanton.
Crūdus, raw.	Fulvus, yellow.	Lassus, weary.
Cunctus, all.	Furvus, swarthy.	Lātus, broad.
Curtus, short.	Fuscus, brown.	Laxus, loose, slack.
Curvus, crooked.	Garrūlus, prattling.	Lentus, slow, pliant.
Cýnicus, churlish.	Gēlidus, cold as ice.	Lēpidus, pretty, witty.
Dædālus, poet. curiously made.	Gēminus, double.	Limpidus, clear, pure.
Dēcōrus, graceful.	Germānus, of the same slack, real.	Limus, squinting.
Vensus, thick.	Gibbus, convex.	Lippus, blear-eyed.
Dignus, worthy.	Gilvus, flesh-coloured.	Longinquus, far off.
Dīrus, direful.	Glaucus, grey.	Longus, long.
Dīsertus, eloquent.	Gnārus, skilful.	Lubricus, slippery.
Dīturnus, lasting.	Gnāvus, active.	Lūcidus, bright.
Doctus, learned.	Grātus, thankful.	Lūridus, pale, gashly.
Dūbius, doubtful.	Hirsūtus, hirtus, rough.	Luscus, blind of one eye.
Dūrus, hard.	Hispīdus, rugged.	Mācilentus, lean.
Ebrius, drunk.	Hēnestus, honourable, honest.	Mālignus, spiteful.
Effētus, past having young.	Hornus, of this year.	Mancus, maimed, lame.
Fēnēus, poor.	Hūmānus, human, longing to a man : humane, polite.	Mānifestus, evident.
Egrēgius, remarkable.	Hūmīdus, moist.	Marcīdus, rotten.
Felix, boileo.	Idōneus, fit.	Mēdius, mid or middle.
Exīguus small.	Jejūnus, fasting.	Mendīcus, beggar-like.
Exīmius, excellent.	Ignārus, ignorant.	Nienstruuſ, monthly.
Exōtīcus, from a foreign country.	Ignāvus, foolish.	Mērāucus, without mixture.
Externus, outward.	Imprōbus, wicked.	Mērus, pure.
Fācētus, witty.	Incestus, unchaste.	Mīrus, wonderful.
Fācundus, eloquent.	Inclītus, renowned.	Mōdestus, modest.
Falsus, false, lying.	Indigus, needy.	Mōestus, sad.
Fāmēlicus, famished.	Industrius, diligent.	Mōlestus, troublesome.
Fātuus, foolis.	Ineptus, unfit.	Mōrōsus, surly.
Faustus, lucky.	Infidus, unfaithful.	Mōrus, foolish.
Fērus, wild, savage.	Ingēnuus, free-born.	Mūcīdus, mushy.
Fessus, weary.	Inimīcīus, unfriendly.	Mundus, neat.
Festīnus, hastening.	Inīquus, unever, injus.	Mūtilus, maimed, without horns.
Festus, festival.	Intentus, intense, strait.	Mūtūs, dumb.
Fīdus, faithful.	Invidus, envious.	Mūtuus, mutual, lent or borrowed.
Fīnitīmus, neighbour-ing.	Invītus, untiring.	Nīmīus, too much.
Firmus, firm, steady.	Irācundus, passionate.	Noxius, hurtful.
Flaccus, flap-eared.	Irātus, angry.	Nūdus, naked.
Flāvus, yellow.	Irrītus, fruitless, vain.	Nuntiūs, bringing news.
Fēdus, ugly.	Jūcundus, pleasant.	Obēsus, fat, dull.
Fētus, big with young.	Lāetus, joyful.	Oblīquus, crooked.
Formōsus, fair.	Lætus, on the left hand.	Obscēnus, obscene, omi-

Obscūrus

Obscurus, dark, mean.	Prōfundus, deep.	Sentus, rough.
Obscētus, old, out of use.	Prōmisculus, confused.	Sérēnus, clear.
Obstipus, stiff, wry.	Promptus, ready.	Sérius, earnest.
Obtūsus, blunt.	Prōnus, with the face downward.	Sérus, late.
Odiōsus, hateful.	Prōpētus, hasty.	Sevērus, severe, harsh.
Opācus, dark, shady.	Prōpinquis, near.	Siccus, dry.
Opīmus, rich, fat.	Proprius, proper.	Sīmus, flat-nosed.
Opipārus, costly, dainty.	Prōtervus, saucy.	Sincērus, sincere, pure.
Opportūnus, seasonable.	Pūblicus, public.	Situs, situate, placed.
Opūlentus, v.-ens, rich.	Pūdīcus, chaste.	Sobrius, sober, temperate.
Orbus, destitute.	Pullus, blackish.	Sōcius, in alliance, a companion.
Otiōsus, at leisure.	Pūrus, pure, clean.	Sōlidus, solid.
Pætus, pink-eyed.	Pūtus, without mixture.	Sordidus, dirty.
Pallidus, pale.	Quantus, how great.	Spīnōsus, prickly.
Parcus, sparing.	Quadrīmus, four years old.	Spissus, thick.
Patrīmus, <i>{</i> having si-ther and mother <i>}</i>	Quotidiānus, daily.	Splendidus, bright.
	Rābīdus, mad.	Spūrius, base-born, not genuine.
Patūlus, wide, spreading.	Rancīdus, rank, stale.	Squālidus, nasty.
Paulus, little.	Rārus, rare, thin.	Stōlidus, foolish.
Pauci, -cæ, -ca, few.	Raucus, hoarse.	Strēnuus, active, stout.
Pēritus, skilful.	Rectus, right, straight.	Strīgōsus, lean, lank.
Perfidus, treacherous.	Reus, impeached.	Stultus, foolish.
Perpētuus, continual.	Rīgidus, cold, stiff, severe.	Stūpidus, stupid, dull.
Perspicuus, evident.	Rīguus, moist, well watered.	Sūbitus, sudden.
Pius, pious.	Rōbustus, strong.	Subsecīvus, cut off, or taken from other business.
Plānus, plain.	Roscīdus, dewy.	Sūdus, fair, without clouds.
Plēnus, full.	Rōtundus, round.	Sūperbus, proud.
Plērique, -æque, -āque, the most part : sing. fem. plerāque.	Rūbicundus, blushing.	Sūpinus, lying on the back.
Posticus, on the back part of a house.	Rūfus, reddish.	Surdus, deaf.
Præditus, endued with.	Russus, of a carnation colour.	Tacītus, silent.
Prāvus, wicked.	Rūtīlus, fiery, red.	Tantus, so great.
Prēcārius, at another's pleasure.	Sævus, cruel.	Tardus, slow.
Priscus, old, out of use.	Sāgus, knowing.	Tēmērārius, rash.
Pristinus, ancient.	Salsus, salted, smart.	Tempestīvus, seasonable.
Prīvātus, private, retired.	Salvus, safe.	Tēmīlentus, drunken.
Prīvus, single, peculiar.	Sanctus, holy.	Tēpidus, lukewarm.
Prōbus, good, honest.	Sānus, sound.	Tímīdus, fearful.
Prōcērus, high, tall.	Saucius, wounded.	Torvus, stern.
Prōfānus, profane, unholy.	Scævus, left.	Tranquillus, calm.
	Scambus, bow-legged.	Trēpidus, trembling for fear.
	Scaurus, club-footed.	
	Sēcūrus, secure; out of danger.	
	Sēdūlus, careful.	Trūcūlentus,

Trūcūlentus, cruel.	Vācuus, empty, void.	Verbosus, talkative.
Truncus, maimed, wanting.	Vāgus, wandering.	Vērēcundus, bashful.
Tūniūdus, swollen.	Valgus, bow-legged.	Vernācūlus, born in ore's house.
Turbidus, muddy.	Vālidus, strong.	Vērus, true.
Tūtus, safe.	Vānus, vain, empty.	Vescus, fit for eating.
Ūdus, wet.	Vārius, various, different.	Vicinus, neighbouring.
Uncus, crooked.	Vārus, bandy-legged.	Vīduus, deprived.
Ūnicus, only.	Vastus, huge.	Viētus, withered.
Urbānus, courteous.	Vēgētus, vigorous.	Vīvidus, lively.
Vācīvus, at leisure.	Venuſlus, comely.	Vivus, alive.

Tēner, tenēra, tenērum, tender.

Sing.	Plur.
N. tēn-er, -ēra, -ērum,	N. ten-ēri, -ēræ, -ēra,
G. ten-ēri, -ēræ, -ēri,	G. ten-ēroum, -erarum, -erorum,
D. ten-ero, -eræ, -ero,	D. ten-eris, . -eris, -eris,
A. ten-erum, -eram, -erum,	A. ten-eros, -eras, -era,
V. ten-er, -era, -erum,	V. ten-eri, -eræ, -era,
A. ten-ero, -erâ, -ero.	A. ten-eris, -eris, -eris.)

In like manner decline,

Asper, rough.	Läcer, torn.	Miser, wretched.
Ceter, (hardly used) the rest.	Liber, free.	Prosper, prosperous.
Gibber, crook-backed.		

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *lāniger*, bearing wool; *ōpifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sātūr*, *satūra*, *satūrum*, full; But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *āter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black: gen, *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; dat, *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c.—So,

Æger, sick.	Mäcer, lean.	Sacer, sacred.
Crēber, frequent.	Nīger, black.	Scäber, rough.
Gläber, smooth.	Pīger, slow.	Tēter, ugly.
Intēger, entire.	Pulcher, fair.	Väfer, crafty.
Lüdicer, ludicrous.	Rūber, red.	

Dexter, right, has -tra, trum, or -tēra, -tērum.

Obs. I. (The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *iūs*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, one.)	Alter, altērius, one of two, the other.
Alius, -iūs, one of many, another.	Neuter, -trius, neither.
Nullus, nullius, none.	Üter, utrius, whether of the two.
Sōlus, -iūs, alone.	Üterque, utriusque, both.
Tōtus, -iūs, whole.	Üterlibet, -triuslibet, { which of the two
Ullus, -iūs, any.	Ütervis, -triusvis, { you please.
	Alterater,

Alterūter, the one or the other, alterutrius, alterutri, and sometimes alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus* a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as *felix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i> fel-ix, -ix, -ix,	<i>N.</i> fel-ices, -ices, -icia,
<i>G.</i> fel-īcis, -īcis, -īcis,	<i>G.</i> fel-icium, -icium, -icium,
<i>D.</i> fel-ici, -ici, -ici,	<i>D.</i> fel-icibus, -icibus, -icibus,
<i>A.</i> fel-icem, -icem, -ix,	<i>A.</i> fel-ices, -ices, -icia,
<i>V.</i> fel-ix, -ix, -ix,	<i>V.</i> fel-ices, -ices, -icia,
<i>A.</i> fel-ice, or -ici, &c.	<i>A.</i> fel-icibus, -icibus, -icibus.)

In like manner decline,

<i>Āmens, -tis, mad.</i>	<i>Fallax, deceitful.</i>	<i>Prūdens, prudent.</i>
<i>Atorx, -ōcis, cruel.</i>	<i>Fērāx, fertile.</i>	<i>Rēcens, fresh.</i>
<i>Audax, -ātis, & -ens, -tis, bold.</i>	<i>Fērox, fierce.</i>	<i>Rēpens, sudden.</i>
<i>Bīlix, -īcis, woven with a double thread.</i>	<i>Frequens, frequent.</i>	<i>Sāgax, -ācis, sagacious.</i>
<i>Cāpax, capacious.</i>	<i>Ingens, huge.</i>	<i>Sālax, -acis, lustful.</i>
<i>Cīcur, -ūris, tame.</i>	<i>Iners, -tis, sluggish.</i>	<i>Sāpiens, wise.</i>
<i>Clēmens, -tis, merciful.</i>	<i>Infons, guiltless.</i>	<i>Sēlers, shrewd.</i>
<i>Contūmax, stubborn.</i>	<i>Mendax, lying. [cal.</i>	<i>Sons, guilty.</i>
<i>Dēmens, mad.</i>	<i>Mordax, biting, satiri-</i>	<i>Tēnax, tenacious.</i>
<i>Fēdax, gluttonous.</i>	<i>Pernix, -īcis, swift.</i>	<i>Trux, -ūcis, cruel.</i>
<i>Fēficax, effectual.</i>	<i>Pervīcax, wilful.</i>	<i>Über, -ēris, fertile.</i>
<i>Fēgans, handsome.</i>	<i>Fētūlans, forwards, saucy.</i>	<i>Vehemens, vehement.</i>
	<i>Prægnans, with child.</i>	<i>Vēlox, -ōcis, swift.</i>
		<i>Vōrax, devouring.</i>

2. / Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mītis*, for the masc. and fem. *mite*, for the neut. meek; so, *mītiōr*, *mītior*, *mītius*, meeker } thus,

	Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i> mītis,	mitis, mite,	<i>N.</i> mītes,
<i>G.</i> mītis,	mitis, mitis,	<i>G.</i> mitium,
<i>D.</i> miti,	miti, miti,	<i>D.</i> mitibus,
<i>A.</i> mitem,	mitem, mite,	<i>A.</i> mites,
<i>V.</i> mītis,	mitis, mite,	<i>V.</i> mites,
<i>A.</i> mīti,	miti, miti.	<i>A.</i> mitibus,

mites, mitia, mitium, mitibus, mites, mitia, mites, mitia, mitibus.)

In like manner decline,

Āgilis, active.	Ignōbilis, of mean pā-rentage.	Rūdis, raw.
Āmābilis, lovely.		Sagax, shrewd.
Biennis, of two years.	Immānis, huge, cruel.	Segnis, slow.
Brēvis, short.	Inānis, empty.	Sōlennis, annual, jā-lenn.
Cīvīlis, courteous.	Incōlūmis, safe.	Stērīlis, barren.
Cēlestis, heavenly.	Infāmis, infamous.	Suāvis, sweet.
Cōmis, mild, affable.	Insignis, remarkable.	Sublīmis, lofty.
Crūdēlis, cruel.	Jūgis, perpetual.	Suhtīlis, subtile, fine.
Debīlis, weak.	Lævis, smooth.	Tālis, such.
Dēformis, ugly.	Lēnis, gentle.	Tēnūis, small.
Dōcīlis, teachable.	Lēvis, light.	Terrestris, earthly.
Dulcis, sweet in taste.	Mēdiocris, middling.	Terribīlis, dreadful.
Exīlis, slender.	Mirābilis, wonderful.	Tristis, sad.
Exsanguis, bloodless.	Mollis, soft.	Turpis, base.
Fortis, brave.	Omnis, all.	Ūtilis, useful.
Frāgilis, brittle.	Pernix, swift, fleet.	Vīlis, worthless.
Grandis, great.	Putris, rotten.	Vīridis, green.
Grāvis, heavy.	Pinguis, fat.	Vītilis, pliant.
Hilāris, cheerful.	Quālis, of what kind.	Plur.

	Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i> mīti-or,	-or, -us,	<i>N.</i> mīti-ōres,
<i>G.</i> mīti-ōriis,	-ōris, -ōris,	<i>G.</i> mīti-orūm,
<i>D.</i> mīti-ori,	-ori, -ori,	<i>D.</i> mīti-oribūs,
<i>A.</i> mīti-orem,	-orem, -us,	<i>A.</i> mīti-ores,
<i>V.</i> mīti-or,	-or, -us,	<i>V.</i> mīti-ores,
<i>A.</i> mīti-ore, or-ori,	etc.	<i>A.</i> mīti-oribūs,

-ores, -ōria, -orūm, -oribūs, -ores, -ora, -ores, -ora, -ores, -oribūs, -oribūs.)

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, ācer, or acris, for the masc. acris, for the fem. acre, for the neut. sharp; thus,

	Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i> ā-cer or ācris,	acris, acre,	<i>N.</i> a-cres,
<i>G.</i> a-cris,	-cris, -cris,	<i>G.</i> a-crium,
<i>D.</i> a-cri,	-cri, -cri,	<i>D.</i> a-cribus,
<i>A.</i> a-crem,	-crem, -cre,	<i>A.</i> a-cres,
<i>V.</i> a-cer, or acris,	-cris, -cre,	<i>V.</i> a-cres,
<i>A.</i> a-cri,	-cri, -cri.	<i>A.</i> a-cribus,

-cres, -cria, -crium, -cribus, -cres, -cria, -cres, -cria, -cres, -cribus.)

In like manner *alacer* or *alacris*, *celer* or *celeris*, *céléber* or *celebris*, *sälüber* or *salubris*, *volucer* or *volucris*, &c.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.
2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hōspes*, *sospes*, *sūperstes*, *jūvēnis*, *sēnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plur. *Compos*, -*ōtis*, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, -*ōtis*, unable; *inops*, -*ōpis*, poor; *supplex*, -*īcis*, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -*ēris*, fertile; *confors*, -*tis*, sharing, a partner; *dēgēner*, -*ēris*, degenerate, or degenerating; *vīgil*, watchful; *pūber*, -*ēris*, of age, marriageable; and *celer*: Also compounds in *ceps*, *fax*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, -*īcis*, cunning, an artist; *bīpes*, -*pēdis*, two-footed.; *bīcorpor*, -*ōris*, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mēmor*, mindful, which has *mēmori*, and *mēmōrum*: also *dēfēs*, *rēfēs*, *bēhes*, *perpes*, *prāfēs*, *tēres*, *consōlor*, *versicōler*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as *compāre*, or *-ri*. *Vētus*, old, has *vēterā*, and *vētērum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*: and in the plural, *plūres*, *plura*, or *plurīz*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, -*e*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regante*, not *reganti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victōri ferro*, not *victōri ce*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc. *victōrix*, for the fem. *Victōrix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victōrices*, *victōricia*: *īn ultō*; and *ultōx*, revengeful. *Victōrix* is also neut. in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jugum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declivus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbēcillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half-asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say *magnānimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrēnus*, *levisomnus*, not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanimis*, *injūgis*, *illīmis*, *infemnis*, *exfemnis*; not *pusillanimus*, &c. So *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublīmis*, *accēbris*, *declivis*, *præclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as *cordatus*, *mōrātus*, *cœlestis*, *cadamantinus*, *corpōrīus*, *agrestis*, *estīvus*, &c. from *cor*, *mōrā*, *cœlum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *misellus*, *parvulus*, *dūriuscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *ofus* or *entus*; as, *vīnōsus*, *vīnōlentus*, given to much wine; *Opērōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *literatus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive adjective*; as, *Scoticus*, *paternus*, *herīlis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable: from *amo*, *capiō*, *doceō*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *seupens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, sc. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *saturn*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c..

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

I NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.)

I. / The Cardinal or Principal numbers are :

<i>Unus</i> ,	<i>one.</i>	<i>Septem</i> ,	<i>seven.</i>
<i>Duo</i> ,	<i>two.</i>	<i>Octo</i> ,	<i>eight.</i>
<i>Tres</i> ,	<i>three.</i>	<i>Nōvem</i> ,	<i>nine.</i>
<i>Quātuor</i> ,	<i>four.</i>	<i>Décem</i> ,	<i>ten.</i>
<i>Quinq̄ue</i> ,	<i>five.</i>	<i>Undecim</i> ,	<i>eleven.</i>
<i>Six</i> ,	<i>six.</i>	<i>Duōdēcim</i> ,	<i>twelve.</i>
			<i>Trēdecim</i> ,

Tredēcim,	thirteen.	Nōnaginta,,	ninety.
Quatuordecim,	fourteen.	Centum,,	a hundred.
Quindēcim,	fifteen..	Dūcenti,,	two hundred.
Sexdēcim;	sixteen.	Trecenti,,	three hundred.
Septendēcim,	seventeen.	Quadringenti,,	four hundred.
Octōdēcim,	eighteen.	Quīngenti,,	five hundred.
Nōvēmdecim,,	nineteen.	Sexcenti,,	six hundred.
Vīginti,,	twenty..	Septingenti,,	seven hundred.
Viginty unus; or	twenty-one..	Octingenti,,	eight hundred.
Unus & viginti,,		Nongenti,,	nine hundred.
Viginti. duo, or	twenty-two..	Mille,,	a thousand.
Duo & viginti,,		Duo millia, or	two thousand.
Trīginta,,	thirty.	bis mille,	
Quadrāginta,,	forty.	Dūcem millia, or	ten thousand.
Quinquāginta,,	fifty.	dēcies mille,	
Sexāginta,,	sixty.	Viginti millia, or	twenty thousand.
Sepiuāginta,,	seventy..	vīcies mille,	
Ostōginta,,	eighty..		

The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis aedibus*, in one house, Terent. *Eun.* ii. 3. 75. *Uae nuptie*, Id. And. iv. 1. 51. *In una mœnia convenere*, Sallust; Cat. 6. or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of cloaths, Cic. *Flacc.* 29.

/ Duo and tres are thus declined : / .

Plur..

N. duo,,	duæ; duo,.
G. duōrum,,	duārum, duōrum,
D. duōbus,,	duābus, duōbus,
A. duos or duo, duas,	duo,.
V. duo,,	duæ, duo,.
A. duobus,,	duabuss, duobus,.

Plur.

N. tres,,	tres,.
G. trium, trium,	trium,
D. tribus, tribus,	tribus,
A. tres, - tres,	tria,
V. tres, tres,	tria,
A. tribus, tribus,	tribus..

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both..

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, -tæ, -tu; *ducentorum*, -tarum, -torum, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *million*, *milibus*, &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say *mille hominum*, a thousand men: *duo millia hominum*, *tria milia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum* or *centena millia hominum*; *Decies centena millia*, a million; *Vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. { The Ordinal numbers are, *prīmus*, first; *sēcundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.}

3. { The distributive are, *singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.}

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

	<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1	<i>Prīmus</i> , a, um.	<i>Singūli</i> , æ, a.	<i>Semel</i> , once.
2	<i>sēcundus</i> .	<i>bīni</i> .	<i>bis</i> , twice.
3	<i>tertius</i> .	<i>terni</i> .	<i>ter</i> , thrice.
4	<i>quartus</i> .	<i>quatermī</i> .	<i>quater</i> , four times.
5	<i>quintus</i> .	<i>quīni</i> .	<i>quinquies</i> , &c.
6	<i>sextus</i> .	<i>seni</i> .	<i>sexies</i> .
7	<i>septīmus</i> .	<i>septēni</i> .	<i>septies</i> .
8	<i>octāvus</i> .	<i>octōni</i> .	<i>octies</i> .
9	<i>nōnus</i> .	<i>nōvēni</i> .	<i>novies</i> .
10	<i>dēcimūs</i> .	<i>dēni</i> .	<i>dēcies</i> .
11	<i>undēcimūs</i> .	<i>undēni</i> .	<i>undecies</i> .
12	<i>duodecimūs</i> .	<i>duodēni</i> .	<i>duodecies</i> .
13	<i>decimus tertius</i> .	<i>tri dēni</i> , <i>terni deni</i> .	<i>tredecies</i> .
14	<i>decimus quartus</i> .	<i>quaterni deni</i> .	<i>quatuordecies</i> .
15	<i>decimus quintus</i> .	<i>quindenī</i> .	<i>quindecies</i> .
16	<i>decimus sextus</i> .	<i>seni deni</i> .	<i>sexdecies</i> .
17	<i>decimus septimus</i> .	<i>septeni deni</i> .	<i>decies ac septies</i> .
18	<i>decimus octavus</i> .	<i>octōni deni</i> .	<i>decies ac octies</i> .
19	<i>decimus nonus</i> .	<i>nōveni deni</i> .	<i>decies et novies</i> .
20	<i>vīgesimus</i> , <i>vīcesimus</i> .	<i>vīcēni</i> .	<i>vīcīes</i> .
21	<i>vīgesimus prīmus</i> .	<i>vīcēni singuli</i> .	<i>vīcīes semel</i> .
30	<i>trigesimus</i> , <i>tricesimus</i> .	<i>triceni</i> .	<i>trīcīes</i> .
40	<i>quadragēsimūs</i> .	<i>quadrāgēni</i> .	<i>quadrāgīes</i> .
50	<i>quinquagesimus</i> .	<i>quinquāgenī</i> .	<i>quinquagīes</i> .
60	<i>sexagesimus</i> .	<i>sexāgenī</i> .	<i>sexagīes</i> .
70	<i>septuagesimus</i> .	<i>septuāgenī</i> .	<i>septuagīes</i> .
80	<i>octogēsimūs</i> .	<i>octōgenī</i> .	<i>octōgīes</i> .
90	<i>nonagesimus</i> .	<i>nonagenī</i> .	<i>nonagīes</i> .
100	<i>centesimus</i> .	<i>centeni</i> .	<i>centīes</i> .
200	<i>dīcentesimus</i> .	<i>dūcēni</i> .	<i>dūcentīes</i> .
300	<i>trēcentesimus</i> .	<i>trēcenteni</i> .	<i>trēcentīes</i> .
400	<i>quadringētesimus</i> .	<i>quāter centeni</i> .	<i>quadringētīes</i> .
500	<i>quingētesimus</i> .	<i>quinquies centeni</i> .	<i>quingētīes</i> .
600	<i>sexcentesimus</i> .	<i>sexles centeni</i> .	<i>sexcentīes</i> .
700	<i>septingētesimus</i> .	<i>septies centeni</i> .	<i>septingētīes</i> .
800	<i>oētingētesimus</i> .	<i>oēties centeni</i> .	<i>oētingētīes</i> .
900	<i>nongētesimus</i> .	<i>nōvīes centeni</i> .	<i>nōningētīes</i> .
1000	<i>millesimus</i> .	<i>millēni</i> .	<i>millīes</i> .
2000	<i>bis millesimus</i> .	<i>bis millēni</i> .	<i>bis millīes</i> .

4. The multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplices*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, -*cis*, &c.

The interrogative words, to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōtēs*, and *quōtūplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *Tot*, so many; *tōtidem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quotcurque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, &c. *bimus*, *trimus*; &c. *biennis*, *triennis*, &c. *bimētris*, *trimestris*, &c. *bilibris*, *trilibris*, &c. *bīnārius*, *ternarius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēnārius nūnnus*, a coin of ten asies; *otogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality: as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *r* or *er*; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*; as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most*, put before the adjective, have the same effect; as *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*; and polysyllables by *more* and *most*; as, *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *mest*; as, *undermest*, *uttermest*, or *utmost*, *uppermost*, *nethermost*, *foremost*.

Comparison

Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter: The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssimus*; as, *Altus*, high, genit. *alti*: Comparative *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut. higher; Superlative, *altissimus*, -a, -um, highest. So *mītus*, meek; dat. *miti*: *mitior*, -or, -us, meeker: *mitissimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the Superlative is formed by adding *rīmus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrīmus*, poorest.)

The comparative is always of the third declension: The superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; gen. *alti*, *altioris*, *altissimi*, &c.)

Irregular and defective Comparison.

1. Bonus,	mēlior,	optīmus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	pēsīmus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maxīmus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	mīnīmus,	small,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plūrīmus,	much,	more,	most.

Fem. *Multa*, plurima; neut. *multum*, plus, plurimum; plur. multi, plures, plurimi; multæ, plures, plurimæ, &c.)

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse: in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *most*, for *mor̄est*; *least*, for *leſſest*; *worst*, for *worſeſt*.

2. These five have their superlative in *īmus*;
Fācilis, *facilior*, *facillīmus*, *easy*. *Imbēcillis*, *imbecillior*, *imbecillīmus*, *weak*.
Grācīlis, *gracilior*, *gracillīmus*, *lean*. *līmus*, *weak*.
Hūmīlis, *humilior*, *humillīmus*, *low*. *Sīmīlis*, *similior*, *simillīmus*, *like*.

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently;

Cīter, cīterior, cītimus, <i>near</i> .	Mātūrus, -iōr, mātūrīmus, or Dexter, dexterior, dextērus, <i>right</i> .	Mātūrīmus, or mātūrissīmus, <i>ripe</i> .
Sinister, sīnīterior, sīnistīmus, <i>left</i> .	Postērus, posterior, postēremus,	
Exter, -ērior, extīmus, or extrē- mus, <i>outward</i> .	behind.	
Infērus, -iōr, infīmus or imus, <i>below</i> .	Sūpērus, -iōr, suprēmus, or summus, <i>high</i> .	
Intērus, intērior, intīmus, <i>inward</i> .	Vētus, vētērior, vēterrīmus, old.	

4. Compounds

4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lēguis*, *fīcūs*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *mālēdīcus*, railing, *mālēdicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So *magnīlōguis*, one that boasteth; *bēnēfīcus*, beneficent; *mālēvōlus*, malevolent; *mīrīfīcus*, wonderful; *-entior*, *-entissimus*, or *mirīficissimus*. *Nēquam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive: *Dēterior*, *worse*, *deterrius*. *Prōpior*, *nearer*, *proxīmus*; *nearest* or *next*. *Ōcior*, *swifter*, *ocīssimus*. *Prior*, *former*, *prīmus*. *Ultērior*, *farther*, *ultīmus*.

2. The following want the comparative: *Inclītus*, *inclitissimus*, *renovated*. *Nūpērus*, *nuperrīnius*, *late*. *Mēritus*, *meritissimus*, *deserving*. *Par*, *pārīssimus*, *equal*. *Nōvus*, *novissimus*, *new*. *Sācer*, *sacerrimus*, *sacred*.

3. The following want the superlative: *Adōlescens*, *adolescentior*, *young*. *Prōnus*, *pronior*, *inclined downwards*. *Diūturnus*, *diuturnior*, *lasting*. *Sātur*, *satūrīcīus*, *full*. *Ingens*, *ingentior*, *huge*. *Sēnēx*, *senior*, *old*. *Jūvēnis*, *junior*, *young*. *Opīmus*, *opīmīor*, *rich*.

To supply the superlative of *jūvēnis* or *adōlescens*, we say, *minimūs natu*, the youngest; and of *senēx*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *īlis*, *ālis*, and *bīlis*, also want the superlative; as *cīvīlis*, *civilior*, *civil*; *rēgālīs*, *regalior*, *regal*; *fēbīlis*, *-iōr*, *lamentable*. So, *juvenīlis*, *youthful*; *exīlis*, *small*, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus*, *-iōr*, *secret*; *declīvis*, *-iōr*, *bending downwards*; *longīguis*, *-iōr*, *far off*; *prōpīnguis*, *-iōr*, *near*.

Antērior, *former*; *sēquīor*, *worse*; *sātīor*, *better*; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicolōr*, of diverse colours; *peſiſer*, *poisonous*: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *īvus*, *īnus*, *ōrus*, or *īmus*, and diminutives; as, *dūbius*, doubtful; *vācuus*, empty; *fūgītīvus*, that flieth away; *mātūlinus*, early; *cānōrus*, shrill; *lēgitīmus*, lawful; *tēnelīlus*, somewhat tender; *majuscūlus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *prācox*, *-ōcis*, soon or early ripe; *mīrus*, *ēgēnus*, *lācer*, *mēmor*, *sōspes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for

for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy; *magis egēnus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egēnus*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

(A Pronoun is a word which stands instead of a Noun.)

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*.

The first is used, when one speaks of himself; as, *I love*: the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse; as, *thou lovest*: and the last three, in speaking of any other person or thing; as, *he*, *she*, or *it falls*.

I is said to be of the first person; *thou*, of the second; and *he*, *she*, or *it*, together with all other words, of the third: and so in the plural number, *we*, *ye*, *they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known. But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders; thus, *he*, *she*, *it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative case*, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.

Singular.			Plural.		
Persons.			Persons.		
Cases.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.
Nom.	<i>I</i> ,	<i>thou</i> ,	<i>he</i> ,	<i>she</i> ,	<i>it</i> ;
Gen.	<i>mine</i> ,	<i>thine</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>hers</i> ,	<i>its</i> ;
Acc.	<i>me</i> ,	<i>thee</i> ,	<i>him</i> ,	<i>her</i> ,	<i>it</i> ;
				<i>us</i> ,	<i>you</i> ,
					<i>them</i> .

All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *that man, &c.*

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their.* *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this, these; that, these.* To these add the adjectives *other, one,* which, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *others, ones;* as, *many others, great ones;* in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

Who, which, that, are called RELATIVES, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the ANTECEDENT. *Who* is varied by cases, thus, *who, whom, whose.* *His* and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me*, &c.

Who, which, what, whether, are called INTERROGATIVES, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called INDEFINITES.

Owen, and self, in the plural selves, are joined to the possessives, my, our, thy, your, his, her, their; as, my, or mine own hand, myself, yourselves. Self is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun it, as itself. Himself, themselves, seem to be used by corruption for himself, themselves.

LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

(Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.)

Ego, I.

Sing.

Nom.	<i>ego, I,</i>
Gen.	<i>mei, of me.</i>
Dat.	<i>mihi, to me,</i>
Acc.	<i>me, me,</i>
Voc.	<hr/>
Abl.	<i>me, with me.</i>

Plur.

Nom.	<i>nos, we,</i>
Gen.	<i>nostrum or nostri, of us,</i>
Dat.	<i>nobis, to us,</i>
Acc.	<i>nos, us,</i>
Voc.	<hr/>
Abl.	<i>nobis, with us.</i>

Tu,

Tu, thou.

/ Sing.

N. tu, thou,
G. tui, of thee,
D. tibi, to thee,
A. te, thee,
V. tu, O thou,
A. te, with thee,

} or you.

Plur.

N. vos, ye or you,
G. vestrum or vestri, of you,
D. vobis, to you,
A. vos, you,
V. vos, O ye or you,
A. vobis, with you.)

/ Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.)

/ Sing.

N. _____

G. sui, of himself, of herself, of itself,
D. sibi, to himself, to herself, &c.
A. se, himself, &c.

V. _____

A. se, with himself, &c.

Plur.

N. _____

G. sui, of themselves,
D. sibi, to themselves,
A. se, themselves,

V. _____

A. se, with themselves.)

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus, we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obs. 2. *Mibi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *me*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nosirarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *estrum* and *estrum*.

We commonly use *estrum* and *estrum* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostr*i** and *vestri* after other words.

/ The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *ipse*, *hic*, or *is*; } as,

Ille, for the masc. *Illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that; or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

Sing.

N. ille, illa, illud,
G. illius, illius, illius,
D. illi, illi, illi,
A. illum, illam, illud,
V. ille, illa, illud,
A. illo, illâ, illo.

Plur.

N. illi, illæ, illa,
G. illorum, illarum, illorum,
D. illis, illis, illis,
A. illos, illas, illa,
V. illi, illæ, illa,
A. illis, illis, illis.)

Ipse,

/ Ipse, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.)

/ Ipse is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.)

Hic, hæc, hoc, this.

	Sing.		Plur.
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	A. his,

/ Is, ea, id ; he, she, it ; or that.)

	Sing.		Plur.
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eorum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis or eis, &c.
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,
V. _____			V. _____
A. eo,	eâ,	eo,	A. iis or eis, &c.)

/ Quis, quæ, quod, or quid? which, what? Or Quis? who? or what man? quæ? who? or what woman? quod? or quid? what? which thing? or what thing? thus,

	Sing.		Plur.
N. quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,	N. qui,
G. cuius,	cuius,	cuius,	G. quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis or quibus, &c.
A. quem,	quam,	quod or quid,	A. quos,
V. _____			V. _____
A. quo,	qua,	quo;	A. queis or quibus,) &c.

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; Or vir qui, the man who or that; fœmina quæ, the woman who or that; negotium quod, the thing which or that: genit. vir cuius, the man whose or of whom; mulier cuius, the woman whose or of whom; negotium cuius, the thing of which, seldom -self, &c. thus,

Sing.

Plur.

<i>N.</i> qui,	quæ,	quod,	<i>N.</i> qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>G.</i> cuius,	cuius,	cuius,	<i>G.</i> quorum,	quaruni,	quorum,
<i>D.</i> cui,	cui,	cui,	<i>D.</i> queis or	qui ^b bus,	&c.
<i>A.</i> quem,	quam,	quod,	<i>A.</i> quos,	quas,	quæ,
<i>V.</i> —	—	—	<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>A.</i> quo,	qua,	quo.	<i>A.</i> queis or	qui ^b bus,	&c.)

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostratis*, dat. *nostrati*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things, which cannot be addressed, or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.)

The relative *qui* has frequently *qui* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present: *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *ille*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.

3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.

4. *Patritials, or Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis?* *cujas?* When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui*, and *suus*.

COMPOUND LATIN PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *ille* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.)

2. With some other parts of speech; as *bujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *mecum*, *tēcum*, *sūcum*, *nōbiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quiccum* or *quiccum* and *qui^bsum*;

sunt: *eccum*, *eccam*; *eccos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecca*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. X So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. X With some syllable added: as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *eḡmet*, *tūtēmet*, *suīmet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimēt*, *tuīmet*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tutēmet*: *biccine*, *baccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *C*; of *bic* and *cine*: *Mēpte*, *tuāpte*, *suāpte*, *nōstrāpte*, *vēstrāpte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *mēpte*, *tuōpte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte*: *bicce*, *bacce*, *bocce*; *hujuscē*, *hīce*, *bīce*, *hōce*: of *bic* and *ce*: whence *bujuscēmōdī*, *ejuscēmōdī*, *cujuscēmōdī*. So *IDEM*, the same; compounded of *is* and *dēm*, which is thus declined:

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i> īdēm; eādēm, īdēm;	<i>N.</i> īlēm; eādēm, īdēm,
<i>G.</i> ejusdem, ejusdem, ejusdem,	<i>G.</i> corundem, earundēm, corundem,
<i>D.</i> eīdēm; eīdēm; eīdēm;	<i>D.</i> eīdēm or iīdēm, &c.
<i>A.</i> eundem, eandēm, idēm;	<i>A.</i> eosdem, easdem, īdēm,
<i>V.</i> idēm, eadēm, īdēm;	<i>V.</i> īdēm, eadēm, īdēm,
<i>A.</i> eōdēm, eādēm; eōdēm;	<i>A.</i> eīdēm or iīdēm, &c.

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded; are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded: but *qui* is always the first.

1. X The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, who-fover; which are thus declined. X

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Quisnam</i> , quānam, quodnam or quidnam; <i>cujusnam</i> , cuinam,		
<i>Quispiam</i> , quāpiam, quodpiam or quidpiam; <i>cujuspiam</i> , cuiptam,		
<i>Quisquam</i> , quāquam, quodquam or quidquam; <i>cujusquam</i> , cuiquam,		
<i>Quisque</i> , quāque, quodque or quidque; <i>cujusque</i> , cuique.		
<i>Quisquis</i> , — quidquid or quicquid; <i>cujuscujus</i> , cuicui,		

And so in the other cases; according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. X The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative sing. fēm. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some; *equis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; also *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined. X

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Aliquis</i> , aliqua, aliquod or aliquid,	<i>alicujus</i> ,	<i>alicui</i> ,
<i>Equis</i> , ecqua or etquæ, ecquod or ecquid,	<i>eccujus</i> ,	<i>eccui</i> ,
<i>Si quis</i> , si qua, si quod or si quid,	<i>si cujus</i> ,	<i>si cui</i> ,
<i>Ne quis</i> , ne qua, ne quod or ne quid,	<i>ne cujus</i> ,	<i>ne cui</i> ,
<i>Num quis</i> , num qua, num quod or num quid,	<i>num cujus</i> ,	<i>num cui</i> ,

3. The

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *exquisitam*, who? *inquisquisque*, gen. *uniuersus quisque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined.

Nom.

Gen.

Dat.

<i>Quicunque</i> , <i>quæcunque</i> , <i>quodcunque</i> ,	<i>cujuscunque</i> , <i>cuiuscunque</i> ,
<i>Quidam</i> , <i>quædam</i> , <i>quoddam</i> or <i>quiddam</i> , <i>cujusdam</i> , <i>cuidam</i> ,	
<i>Quilibet</i> , <i>quælibet</i> , <i>quodlibet</i> or <i>quidlibet</i> , <i>cujuslibet</i> , <i>cilibet</i> ,	
<i>Quivis</i> , <i>quævis</i> , <i>quodvis</i> or <i>quidvis</i> , <i>cujusvis</i> , <i>quivis</i> .	

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quondam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason they are by some reckoned substantives.

V E R B.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy reads.) The sun shines. The man loves.

(Or, A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.)

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all: thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, *-aris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs,

(Veros, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest,) &c.

1. / An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amare*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.)

2. / A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amari*, to be loved; *tu amaris a me*, thou art loved by me.)

3. / A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.)

/ The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *ferior litteras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *fisiere*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.)

/ Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive verbs*; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.)

/ When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*: as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.)

/ A verb is varied or declined by *Voice*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.)

/ There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.)
The

/ The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*. /

/ The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*. /

/ The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, *Third*.)

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *anāto*, I shall love; or asks a question; as, *an tu omis?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *sime obsecret, redibō*, if he entreat me, I will return. Ter.

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amare*, to love.

3. *Tenses*, or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [then] be writing; *scripsero*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

ENGLISH VERBS.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *'d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as, *about to love*.

An English Verb is thus varied;

To LOVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Time,

Past Time.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

Person	1. I love,	We love,	1. I loved,	We loved,
	2. Thou lovest,	Ye or you love,	2. Thou lovedst,	Ye or you loved,
	3. He loveth or loves;	They love.	3. He loved;	They loved.

Subjunctive Mode,

Imperative Mode.

Present Time.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

1. I love,	We love,	2. Love thou, Love ye, or love you,	
2. Thou love,	Ye or you love,		Infinitive Mode.
3. He love;	They love.		Present, To love.

Participle Present, Loving; Perfect, Loved.

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied,

To HAVE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Time.

Past Time.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

Person	1. I have,	We have,	1. I had,	We had,
	2. Thou hast,	Ye have,	2. Thou hadst,	Ye had,
	3. He hath, or has;	They have.	3. He had,	They had.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mode.

Present.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I have,	We have,
2. Thou have,	Ye have,
3. He have;	They have.

Participle Present, Having; Perfect, Had.

Imperative Mode.

Present.

Sing.	Plur.
2. Have thou;	Have ye.
	Infinitive Mode,
	Present, To have.

To BE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Time.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I am,	We are,
2. Thou art,	Ye are,
3. He is;	They are.

Past Time.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I was,	We were,
2. Thou wast,	Ye were,
3. He was;	They were.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I be,	We be,
2. Thou be,	Ye be,
3. He be;	They be.

Past Time.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I were,	We were,
2. Thou wert,	Ye were,
3. He were;	They were.

Imperative Mode.

Sing.	Plur.
2. Be thou;	Be ye.

Infinitive Mode.

Present, To be.

SHALL.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall,	We shall,
2. Thou shalt,	Ye shall,
3. He shall;	They shall.

Participle.

Perfect, Been.

WILL.

Sing.	Plur.
1. I will,	We will,
2. Thou wilt,	Ye will,
3. He will;	They will.

The terminations of these auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them however are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *bast* is contracted for *havest*; *bath*, for *haveth*; *has*, for *haves*; and *wilt* for *willest*; which last is likewise used from the regular verb, *to will*; thus, *I will*, *thou willest*, *be willeth*, or *wills*, &c.

The tenses of the subjunctive mode are expressed by *may* or *can*; *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, together with the other auxiliary verbs.

Would, *wouldst*, comes from *will*; and *should*, *shouldst*, from *shall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the indicative Mode, we use the auxiliary verb *do*; as, *I do love*; *I did love*. And so in the Imperative, *do thou love*, *do ye love*. In the third person of the Imperative, we always use *let*, which being an active verb, has always an accusative after it; as, *let him love*; *let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form;

form; as, *I love, I loved*: but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary; as, *I am loving* just now; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the Indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse; as, *he bath, he doth, &c.*

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle perfect; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c.; The house is building, was building, &c.*

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

Shall and *will* are always employed to express future time. *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretels: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question: thus, “*I shall go;*” “*you will go;*” express event only; but “*will you go?*” imports intention: and “*shall I go?*” refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen.*

IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved, lovedest*, we say, *lov'd, wedst*. Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t*; as *snatcht, checkt, ript, mixt, dwelt, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* for *snatched, checked, ripped, mixed, dwelt, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not therefore commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus*, are likewise used in the regular form.

I. Irregulars by contraction.

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation: *beat, burst, cast, cost, cut, bit, bunt, knit, let, lift, light*, put, fit*, read, rent, rid, set, sed, shred, sbut, slit, split, spriad, thrush, et**; all of which are contracted for *beated, burȝt, cȝt, eyȝd, &c.*

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead, led*; *sweat, sweat**; *meet, met*; *breed, bred*; *feed, fed*; *speed, sped*; *bend, bent**; *lend, lent*; *rend, rent*; *send, sent*; *spend, spent*; *build, built**; *geld, gelt**; *gild, gilt**; *gird, girt**; *lose, lost*.

*Sold, told, had, made, fled, stood, clad**; from *sell, tell, have, make, flee, shoe, clothe*; are contracted for *selled, telled, &c.* *Stand has stood; smell, smelt; dare, durst*, in the participle *dared*.

2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as, *bring, brought*; *buy, bought*; *catch, caught*; *fight, fought*; *teach, taught*; *think, thought*; *seek, sought*; *work, wrought*.

3. Irregulars in en.

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle perfect in *en*, and form the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the Present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

Present.	Past.	Participle.	Present.	Past.	Participle.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Creep,	(crope*),	crept*.
Awake;	awoke*,	(awaked).	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Forfave,	forsook,	forsaken.	Seethe,	sod,	sodden.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	See,	saw,	seen.
Take,	took,	taken.	Bite,	bit,	bitten.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Chide,	chid,	chidden.
Slay,	flew,	slain.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.
Get,	gat or got,	gotten.	Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Help,	(helped)	holpen*.	Abide,	abode,	(climbed).
Melt,	melted,	molten*.	Climb,	clomb,	driven.
Swell,	swelled,	swollen*.	Drive,	drove,	ridden.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Ride,	rode,	risen.
Bear,	bare, or bore,	born.	Rise,	rose,	shined.
Break,	brake, or broke,	broken.	Shine,	shone*,	striven*.
Cleave,	clave, or clove*,	cloven.	Strive,	stroved,	smitten.
Speak,	spake, or spoke,	spoken.	Smite,	smote,	stridden.
Swear,	sware, or swore,	sworn.	Stride,	strode,	shrive.
Tear,	tare or tore,	torn.	Shrive,	shrove,	thriven.
Wear,	ware, or wore,	worn.	Thrive,	throve,	written.
Heave,	hove*,	hoven*.	Write,	wrote,	stricken or strucken.
Shear,	shore,	shorn.	Strike,	struck,	bidden.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.	Bid,	bade,	given.
Tread,	tred,	trodden.	Give,	gave,	sitten.
Weave,	wove,	woven.	Sit,	sat,	spitten.
			Spit,	spat,	digged.
			Dig,	dug*,	lain or lien.
			Lie,	lay,	chosen.
			Chuse,	chose,	holden.
			Hold,	held,	Do,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Do,	did,	done.	Rive,	(rived),	riven.
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Saw,	(sawed),	fawn*.
Crow,	crew,	(crowed).	Shave,	(shaved),	shaven*.
Grow,	grew,	grown.	Shew,	(shewed),	shewn*.
Know,	knew,	known.	Show,	(showed),	shown.
Throw,	threw,	thrown.	Sow,	(sowed),	sowen*.
Fly,	flew,	flown.	Straw,	(strawed,	
Bake,	(baked),	baken *.	strew, or	&c.)	strown*.
Grave,	(graved),	graven *.	strow,		
Hew,	(hewed),	hewen or hewn.	Wash,	(washed),	washen*.
Lade,	(laded),	laden.	Wax,	(waxed),	waxen*.
Load,	(loaded),	loaden *.	Wreath,	(wreathed),	wreathen*.
Mow,	(mowed),	mown*.	Writhe,	(writhed),	written.

Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the Participle ; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Begin,	began,	begun.	Stink,	stank or	stunk.
Cling,	clang or clung,	clung.	String,	strung,	strung.
Drink,	drank,	drunk or drunken.	Swim,	swam or	swum.
Fling,	flung,	flung.	Swing,	swung,	swung.
Ring,	rang or rung,	rung.	Wring,	wrung,	wrung.
Shrink,	shrank or shrunk,	shrunk.	Bind,	bound,	bound or bounden.
Sing,	sang or sung,	sung.	Find,	found,	found.
Sink,	sank or sunk,	sunk.	Grind,	ground,	ground.
Sling,	slang or slung,	slung.	Wind,	wound,	wound.
Slink,	slunk,	slunk.	Hang,	hung*,	hung*.
Spin,	span or spun,	spun.	Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Spring,	sprang or sprung,	sprung.	Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Sting,	stung,	stung.	Come,	came,	come.
			Run,	ran,	run.
			Win,	won,	won.

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time ; thus it is said, *he begun*, for *he began*; *he run*, for *he ran*; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time : and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle ; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written*; *it was wrote*, for *it was written*; so *bore* for *borne*; *chose* for *chosen*; *bid*, for *bidden*; *drove*, for *driven*; *broke*, for *broken*; *rode*, for *ridden*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification ; as, *go*, *went*, *gone*, *weet*, *weit* or *wot*, *wot*; *twis*, *twift*; *aught*, *quoth*, *myf*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs.

LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dāre*, to give, which has *ă* short, and also its compounds; thus, *Circundāre*, to surround; *circundāmus*, *-dātis*, *-dābam*, *-dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :)

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Persons.

1. 2.

3.

1.

Plural.

Persons.

2.

3.

Conjugation	1. -o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ānt.
	2. -eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-int.
	4. -io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1. -ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus.	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1. -ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2. -ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3. -am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4. -iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -em,	-es,	-et;	-ēnius,	-ētis,	-ent.
2. -ēām,	-ēas,	-eat;	-ēāmus,	-ēātis,	-eant.
3. -am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4. -iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

1. -ārem, -āres,	-āret ;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2. -ērem, -ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3. -ērem, -ēres,	-ēret ;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
4. -īrem, -īres,	-īret ;	-īrēmus,	-īrētis,	-īrent.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -a or -āto,	-āto ;	-āte or -ātōte,	-ānto.
2. -e or -ēto,	-ēto ;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ēnto.
3. -e or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-ūnto.
4. -i or -īto,	-īto ;	-īte or -ītōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -or, -āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
2. -eor, -ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
3. -or, -ēris or -ēre,	-ītur ;	-īmr,	-īmīni,	-untur.
4. -ior, -īris or -īre,	-ītur ;	-īmur,	-īmīni,	-iuntur,

Imperfect.

1. -ābar, -ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur ;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmīni,	-ābāntur.
2. -ēbar, -ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbāntur.
3. -ēbar, -ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbāntur.
4. -iēbar, -iēbāris or -iēbāre,	-iēbātur ;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmīni,	-iēbāntur.

Future.

1. -ābor, -ābēris or -abēre,	-ābītur ;	-ābīmur,	-ābīmīni,	-ābūntur.
2. -ēbor, -ēbēris or -ēbēre,	-ēbītur ;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīmīni,	-ēbūntur.
3. -ar, -ēris or -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmīur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
4. -iar, -iēris or -iēre,	-iētur ;	-iēmīur,	-iēmīni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -er, -ēris or -ēre,	-ē ur ;	-ēmīur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
2. -ear, -ēaris or -eāre,	-eātur ;	-eāmīur,	-eāmīni,	-eantur.
3. -ar, -āris or -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmīur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
4. -iar, -iāris or -iāre,	-iātur ;	-iāmīur,	-iāmīni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1. -ārer, -ārēris or -ārēre,	-ārētur ;	-ārēmīur,	-ārēmīni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer, -ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur ;	-ērēmīur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
3. -ērer, -ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur ;	-ērēmīur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
4. -īrer, -īrēris or -īrēre,	-īrētur ;	-īrēmīur,	-īrēmīni,	-īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

2.

1. -āre or -ātor,
2. -ēre or -ētor,
3. -ēre or -ītor,
4. -īre or -ītor,

3.

- ātor ;
-ētor ;
-ītor ;
-ītor ;

2.

- āmīni,
-ēmīni,
-īmīni,
-īmīni,

3.

- āntor.
-ēntor.
-ūntor.
-iuntor.

Observe, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

I.

2.

3.

I.

2.

3.

- Perf.* -i, -isti, -it; -īmus, -īstis, -ērunt or -ēre.
Plu. -ēram, -ēras, -ērat.; -ērāmus, -ērātis, -ērant.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf. -ērim, -ēris, -ērit; -ērīmus, -ērītis, -ērint.

Plu. -issēm, -issēs, -issēt; -issēmus, -issētis, -issēnt.

Fut. -ēro, -ēris, -ērit; -ērīmus, -ērītis, -ērint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

Principal Parts.

Pres. Indic. *Perf. Indic.* *Pres. Infin.*

Sum, fui, esse, (*To be.*)

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. am.

Sing.

Plur.

- Person 1. Sum, *I am*, Sūmus, *We are*,
2. Es, *Thou art*, or *you are*, Estis, *Ye or you are*,
3. Est, *He is*; Sunt, *They are.*)

Imperfect.

E

Imperfect. was.

1. Erāram, *I was,* Erāmus, *We were,*
 2. Erāras, *Thou w̄st, or you were,* Erātis, *Ye were,*
 3. Erāt, *He was;* Erant, *They were.* }

Perfect. have been or was.

1. Fui, *I have been,* Fuīmus, *We have been,*
 2. Fuīsti, *Thou hast been,* Fuīstis, *Ye have been,*
 3. Fuīt, *He hath been;* Fuērunt, or -ēre, *They have been.* }

Plu-perfect. had been.

1. Fuēram, *I had been,* Fuērāmus, *We had been,*
 2. Fueras, *Thou hadſt been,* Fueratis, *Ye had been,*
 3. Fuerat, *He had been;* Fuerant, *They had been.* }

Future. shall or will.

1. Ero, *I shall be,* Erīmus, *We shall be,*
 2. Eris, *Thou shalt be,* Erītis, *Ye shall be,*
 3. Erit, *He shall be;* Erunt, *They shall be.* }

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. may or can.

1. Sim, *I may be,* Sīmus, *We may be,*
 2. Sis, *Thou mayest be,* Sītis, *Ye may be,*
 3. Sit, *He may be;* Sint, *They may be.* }

Imperfect. might. could, would, or should.

1. Essem, *I might be,* Essemus, *We might be,*
 2. Esseſ, *Thou mightest be,* Essetis, *Ye might be,*
 3. Esſet, *He might be;* Esſent, *They might be.* }

Perfect. may have.

1. Fuērim, *I may have been,* Fuērimus, *We may have been,*
 2. Fueris, *Thou mayest have been,* Fueritis, *Ye may have been,*
 3. Fuerit, *He may have been;* Fuerint, *They may have been.* }

Plu-perfect. might, could, would, or should have; or had.

1. Fuissēm, *I might have been,* Fuissēmus, *We might have been,*
 2. Fuisses, *Thou mightest have been,* Fuissetis, *Ye might have been,* }
 been,
 3. Fuisset, *He might have been;* Fuissent, *They might have been.*

Future. shall have.

1. Fuero, *I shall have been,* Fuērimus, *We shall have been,*
 2. Fueris, *Thou shalt have been,* Fueritis, *Ye shall have been,*
 3. Fuerit, *He shall have been;* Fuerint, *They shall have been.* }

Imperative:

Imperative Mode.

2. *Es vel esto, Be thou,* *Este vel estōte, Be ye,*
 3. *Esto, Let him be;* *Sunto, Let them be.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Esse, To be.

Perf. Fuisse, To have been.

Fut. Esse futurus, -a, -um, To be about to be.

Fuisse futurus, -a, -um, To have been about to be.)

Participle.

(Future. Fūtūrus, -a, -um, About to be.)

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner however at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum, I am;* *tu es, thou art, or you are;* *ille est, he is;* *nos sumus, we are, &c.* So *ego amo, I love;* *tu amas, thou lovest, or you love;* *ille amat, he loveth or loves;* *nos amamus, we love, &c.*

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es, thou art, or much oftener, you are;* *tu eras, thou wast, or you were;* *tu sis, thou mayest be, or you may be, &c.* So *tu amas, thou lovest, or you love;* *tu amabas, thou lovedst, or you loved,* &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

) FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------------|
| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Perfet.</i> | <i>Supine.</i> | <i>Pres. Infinit.</i> |
| <i>Amo,</i> | <i>āmāvi,</i> | <i>āmātum,</i> | <i>āmāre, To love.</i> |

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. love, do love, or am loving.)

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing. 1. A M-o,</i> | <i>I love,</i> |
| <i>2. Am-as,</i> | <i>Thou lovest, or you love;</i> |
| <i>3. Am-at,</i> | <i>He loveth, or he loves;</i> |
| <i>Plur. 1. Am-āmus,</i> | <i>We love,</i> |
| <i>2. Am-atis,</i> | <i>Ye or you love,</i> |
| <i>3. Am-ant,</i> | <i>They love.</i> |

Imperfect.

Imperfect. loved, did love, or was loving.

Sing.	1. Am-ābam,	I loved,
	2. Am-abas,	Thou lovedst,
	3. Am-abat,	He loved;
Plur.	1. Am-abamus,	We loved,
	2. Am-abatis,	Ye or you loved,
	3. Am-abant,	They loved.

Perfect. loved, have loved, or did love.

Sing.	1. Am-āvi,	I have loved,
	2. Am-avisti,	Thou hast loved,
	3. Am-avit,	He hath loved;
Plur.	1. Am-āvimus,	We have loved,
	2. Am-avistis,	Ye have loved,
	3. Am-avērunt, v.-avēre,	They have loved.

Plu-perfect. had.

Sing.	1. Am-āvēram,	I had loved,
	2. Am-averas,	Thou hadst loved,
	3. Am-averat,	He had loved;
Plur.	1. Am-averamus,	We had loved,
	2. Am-averatis,	Ye had loved,
	3. Am-averant,	They had loved.

Future. shall or will.

Sing.	1. Am-ābo,	I shall love,
	2. Am-abis,	Thou shalt love,
	3. Am-abit,	He shall love;
Plur.	1. Am-abimus,	We shall love,
	2. Am-abitis,	Ye shall love,
	3. Am-abunt,	They shall love.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. may or can.

Sing.	1. Am-em,	I may love,
	2. Am-es,	Thou mayest love,
	3. Am-et,	He may love;
Plur.	1. Am-ēmus,	We may love,
	2. Am-etis,	Ye may love,
	3. Am-ent,	They may love.

Imperfect.

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- | | | |
|-------|---------------|---------------------|
| Sing. | 1. Am-ārem, | I might love, |
| | 2. Am-ares, | Thou mightest love, |
| | 3. Am-aret, | He might love; |
| Plur. | 1. Am-arēmus, | We might love, |
| | 2. Am-aretis, | Ye might love, |
| | 3. Am-arent, | They might love. |

Perfect.

- | | | |
|-------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. | 1. Am-āverim, | I may have loved, |
| | 2. Am-averis, | Thou mayest have loved, |
| | 3. Am-averit, | He may have loved; |
| Plur. | 1. Am-averīmus, | We may have loved, |
| | 2. Am-averitis, | Ye may have loved, |
| | 3. Am-averint, | They may have loved. |

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

- | | | |
|-------|------------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. | 1. Am-avissem, | I might have loved, |
| | 2. Am-avisses, | Thou mightest have loved, |
| | 3. Am-avisset, | He might have loved; |
| Plur. | 1. Am-avissemus, | We might have loved, |
| | 2. Am-avissetis, | Ye might have loved, |
| | 3. Am-avissent, | They might have loved. |

Future. *shall have.*

- | | | |
|-------|-----------------|------------------------|
| Sing. | 1. Am-āvērō, | I shall have loved, |
| | 2. Am-averis, | Thou shalt have loved, |
| | 3. Am-averit, | He shall have loved; |
| Plur. | 1. Am-averīmus, | We shall have loved, |
| | 2. Am-averitis, | Ye shall have loved, |
| | 3. Am-averint, | They shall have loved. |

Imperative Mode.

- | | | |
|-------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. | 2. Am-a, vel am-āto, | Love thou, or do thou love, |
| | 3. Am-ato, | Let him love; |
| Plur. | 2. Am-āte, vel amatōte, | Love ye, or do ye love, |
| | 3. Am-anto, | Let them love. |

Infinitive Mode.

- | | | |
|-------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Pres. | Am-āre, | To love. |
| Perf. | Am-avisse, | To have loved. |
| Fut. | Esse amaturus, -a, -um, | To be about to love. |
| | Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um, | To have been about to love. |

Participle.

Participle.

Present, Am-ans, Loving.
 Future, Am-aturus, -a, -um, About to love.

Gerunds.

Nom. Am-andum, Loving,
 Gen. Am-andi, Of loving,
 Dat. Am-ando, To loving,
 Acc. Am-andum, Loving,
 Abl. Am-ando, With loving.

Supine.

Former. Am-ātum, To love,
 Latter. Am-atu, To love, or to be loved.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Indicative. Perfect Participle. Infinitive.
 Amor, amātus, amāri, to be loved.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. am.

Sing.	1. Am-or,	I am loved,
	2. Am-āris, vel -āre,	Thou art loved,
	3. Am-atur,	He is loved ;
Plur.	1. Am-amur,	We are loved,
	2. Am-amīni,	Ye or you are loved,
	3. Am-antur,	They are loved.

Imperfect. was.

Sing.	1. Am-ābar,	I was loved,
	2. Am-abāris vel -abāre,	Thou wast loved,
	3. Am-abatur,	He was loved ;
Plur.	1. Am-abamur,	We were loved,
	2. Am-abamīni,	Ye were loved,
	3. Am-abantur,	They were loved.

Perfect. am; have been, or was.

Sing.	1. Amatus sum, vel fui,	I have been loved,
	2. Amatus es, v. fuisti,	Thou hast been loved,
	3. Amatus est, v. fuit,	He hath been loved ;
Plur.	1. Amati sumus, v. suimus,	We have been loved,
	2. Amati estis, v. suistis,	Ye have been loved,
	3. Amatis sunt, suērunt, v. suēre,	They have been loved.

Plu-perf.

Plu-perfet. had been, or was.

- Sing.* 1. Amatus eram *vel* fueram, I had been loved,
 2. Amatus eras *v.* fueras, Thou hadst been loved,
 3. Amatus erat *v.* fuerat, He had been loved;
Plur. 1. Amati eramus *v.* fueramus, We had been loved,
 2. Amati eratis *v.* fueratis, Ye had been loved,
 3. Amati erant *v.* fuerant, They had been loved.

Future. shall, or will be.

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābor, I shall be loved,
 2. Am-abēris *vel* -abēre, Thou shalt be loved,
 3. Am-abitur, He shall be loved;
Plur. 1. Am-ābūmur, We shall be loved,
 2. Am-abimini, Ye shall be loved,
 3. Am-abuntur, They shall be loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. may or can be.

- Sing.* 1. Am-er, I may be loved,
 2. Am-ēris *vel* -ēre, Thou mayest be loved,
 3. Am-etur, He may be loved;
Plur. 1. Am-ēmur, We may be loved,
 2. Am-emini, Ye may be loved,
 3. Am-entur, They may be loved.

Imperfect. might, could, would, or should be.

- Sing.* 1. Am-ārer, I might be loved,
 2. Am-ārēris *vel* -ārēre, Thou mightest be loved,
 3. Am-aretur, He might be loved;
Plur. 1. Am-ārēmur, We might be loved,
 2. Am-aremini, Ye might be loved,
 3. Am-arentur, They might be loved.

Perfect. may have been.

- Sing.* 1. Amatus sim *vel* fuerim, I may have been loved,
 2. Amatus sis *v.* fueris, Thou mayest have been loved,
 3. Amatus sit *v.* fuerit, He may have been loved;
Plur. 1. Amati sumus *v.* fuerimus, We may have been loved,
 2. Amati sitis *v.* fueritis, Ye may have been loved,
 3. Amati sint *v.* fuerint, They may have been loved.

Plu-perfet. might, could, would, or should have been; or
had been.

- Sing.* 1. Amatus essem *vel* fuisset, I might have been loved,
 2. Amatus ess *v.* fuisses, Thou mightest have been loved,
 3. Amatus esset *v.* fuisset, He might have been loved;

Plur.

<i>Plur.</i>	1. Amati essemus <i>v.</i> fuissetemus,	<i>We might have been loved,</i>
2.	Amati essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have been loved,</i>
3.	Amati essent <i>v.</i> fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

Future. shall have been.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Amatus fuero,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
2.	Amatus fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been loved,</i>
3.	Amatus fuerit,	<i>He shall have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Amati fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
2.	Amati fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been loved,</i>
3.	Amati fuerint,	<i>They shall have been loved.</i>

Imperative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Am-āre vel am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
3.	Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Am-amīni,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
3.	Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

Infinitive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i>	Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse <i>v.</i> fuisse amatus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Am-ātum iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

Participle.

<i>Perf.</i>	Am-atus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Dōceo, dōcui, doctum, dōcēre, To teach.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.				Plur.		
<i>Pres.</i> D	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Oc-eo, -es, -et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.			
<i>Imp.</i> Doc-ēbam, -ebas, -ebat;	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.			
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-ui, -uisti, -uit;	-uīmus,	-uītis,	-uērunt,			
<i>Plu.</i> Doc-uēram, -ueras, -uerat;	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.			
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-ēbo, -ebis, -ebit;	-ebīmus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.			

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eam, -eas, -eat;	-eāmus,	-eatis,	-eant.
<i>Imp.</i> Doc-ērem, -eres, -eret;	-erēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uērim, -ueris, -uerit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> Doc-uissēm, -uissēs, -uissēt;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissēnt.
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-uēro, -ueris, -uerit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

K

Imperative

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres. Doc-e vel -ēto,'	-ēto ;	-ēte vel -etotē,	-ento.

Infinitive. *Participles.* *Gerunds.* *Supines.*

Pres. Doc-ēre.	Pr. Doc-ens,	Doc-endūm,	1. Doc-tūm,
Perf. Doc-uissē.	Fut. Doc-tūrus.	Doc-endī,	2. Doc-tū.
Fut. Esse-docturus, -a, -um.		Doc-endo, &c.	
Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Dōceor, doctus, dōcēri, *To be taught.*

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

Pres. Doc-eor,	-ēris, vel -ēre,	-etur;	-emur,	-emīni,	-entur.
----------------	---------------------	--------	--------	---------	---------

Imp. Doc-ēbar,	-ebāris, vel -ehare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
----------------	-------------------------	----------	----------	-----------	-----------

Perf. Doctus sum vel fui, doctus es vel fuisti, &c.

Plu. Doctus eram v. fueram, doctus eras v. fueras, &c.

Fut. Doc-ebor,	-ēbēris, vel -ebere,	-ebītur;	-ebīmur,	-ebimini,	-ebuntur.
----------------	-------------------------	----------	----------	-----------	-----------

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Doc-ear,	-ēaris, vel -eare,	-eatur;	-eamur,	-eāmīni,	-eāntur.
----------------	-----------------------	---------	---------	----------	----------

Imp. Doc-erer,	-erēris, vel -erēre,	-erētūr;	-erēmūr,	-erēmīni,	-erēntūr.
----------------	-------------------------	----------	----------	-----------	-----------

Perf. Doctus sim vel fuerim, doctus sis vel fueris, &c.

Plu. Doctus essem v. fuissē, doctus esse v. fuisses, &c.

Fut. Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres. Doc-ēre vel -ētor,	-etor;	-emīni,	-entor.

Infinitive. *Participles.*

Pres. Doc-eri,		Perf. Doc-tus, -a, -um,
Perf. Esse vel fuisse doctus, -a, -um,		Fut. Doc-ēndus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doctum iri.		

THIRD

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lěgo, lěgi, lětum, lěgěre, To read.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Sing. Plur.

1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
----	----	----	----	----	----

Pres. Lěg-o, -is, -it; -imus, -itis, -unt.

Imp. Leg-ěbam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

Perf. Lěg-i, -isti, -it; -imus, -istis, -erunt, -ere.

Plu. Lěg-ěram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Fut. Lěg-ām, -ēs, -et; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Pres. Lěg-am, -as, -at; -amus, -atis, -ant.

Imp. Lěg-ěrem, -eres, -cret; -ěrēmus, -eretis, -erent.

Perf. Lěg-ěim, -eris, -erit; -erīmus, -eritis, -erint.

Plu. Lěg-ěsem, -es, -est; -issimus, -isstis, -issent.

ut. Lěg-ěro, -eris, -erit; -ěrīmus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2.	3.
----	----

Lěg-e, vel -ito, -ito; -ite, vel -itōte, -unto.

infinitive. Participles. Gerunds. Supines.

Lěg-ěre, Pr. Leg-ens. Lěg-endum. 1. Lec-tum.

f. Lěg-isse, Fat. Lec-turus. Leg-endi. 2. Lec-tu.

t. Esse lecturus, -a, -um, Leg-endo, &c.

Fuisse lecturus, -a, -um.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lěgor, lectus, lěgi, To be read.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Sing. Plur.

Pres. Leg-or, -ēris, -itur; -imur, -imini, -ūntur.

Imp. Leg-ěbar, -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamūr, -ebamini, -ebantur.

Perf. Lectus sum vel fui, lectus es vel fuisti, &c.

Plu. Lectus eram vel fuerām, lectus eras vel fueras, &c.

Fut. Leg-ar, -ēris, -etur; -ēmur, -emini, -entur.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Subjunctive Mode.

- Pres. Lēg-ar, -āris,
vel āre, -atur; -amūr, -amini, -antur.
Imp. Lēg-ērer, -erēris,
vel -erēre, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
Perf. Lectus sim vel fuerim, lectus sis vel fueris, &c.
Plu. Lectus essem v. fuisset, lectus esses v. fuisses, &c.
Fut. Lectus fvero, lectus fueris, lectus fuerit, &c.

Imperative Mode.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------|---------|---------|
| 2. | 3. | 2. | 3. |
| Pres. Leg-ēre, vel -itor, | -itor; | -imīni, | -untor. |

Infinitive.

Participles:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Pres. Lēg-i. | Perf. Lec-tus, -a, -um. |
| Perf. Esse v. fuisse lectus, -a, -um. | Fut. Leg-endus, -a, -um. |
| Fut. Lectum iri. | |

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, To hear.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Pr. A ud-io, -is, -it; | 3. | I. | 2. | 3. |
| -īmus, -ītis, | -iunt. | -īmus, -ītis, | -iunt. | -ītis, -iunt. |
| Imp. Aud-iēbam, -iebas, -iebat; | -iebamus, -iebatis, -iebant. | -iebamus, -iebatis, -iebant. | -iebamus, -iebatis, -iebant. | -iebamus, -iebatis, -iebant. |
| Per. Aud-īvi, -ivisti, -ivit; | -ivīmus, -ivītis, | -ivīmus, -ivītis, | -ivērunt, | -ivērunt, |
| -ivērunt, | vel -ivēre. | vel -ivēre. | vel -ivēre. | vel -ivēre. |
| Plu. Aud-ivēram, -iveras, -iverat; | -iveramus, -iveratis, -iverant. | -iveramus, -iveratis, -iverant. | -iveramus, -iveratis, -iverant. | -iveramus, -iveratis, -iverant. |
| Fut. Aud-iam, -ies, -iet; | -iēmus, -ietis, | -iēmus, -ietis, | -ient. | -iēmus, -ietis, |

Subjunctive Mode.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| Pr. Aud-iam, -ias, -iat; | -iamus, -iatis, | -iant. |
| Imp. Aud-īrem, -ires, -iret; | -irēmus, -iretis, | -irent. |
| Per. Aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit; | -iverīmus, -iveritis, | -iverint. |
| Plu. Aud-ivissem, -ivesces, -ivesset; | -ivissemus, -ivisletis, | -ivissent. |
| Fut. Aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit; | -iverimus, -iveritis, | -iverint. |

Imperative Mode.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------|-------------------|---------|
| 2. | 3. | 2. | 3. |
| Pr. Aud-i, vel -ito; | -ito; | -ite, vel -itōte, | -iunto. |

Infinitive:

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-īre.	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.	1. Auditum.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-ivisse.	<i>Fu.</i> Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.	2. Auditu.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse auditūrus, -a, -um;		Aud-iendo, &c.	
Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, Audītus, Audīri; To be heard.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

Pres. Aud-ior, -īris,
 vel -īre, -ītur; -īmur, -īmīni, -īuntur.

Imp. Aud-ībar, -ībaris,
 vel -ībare, -ībatur; -ībamur, -ībamini, -ībantur.

Perf. Auditus sum, *vel* fui, Auditus es v. fuisti, &c.

Plu. Auditus eram v. fueram, Auditus eras v. fueras, &c.

Fut. Aud-īar, *it* -īeris,
 vel -īrē, -īetur; -īemur, -īemini, -īentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Aud-īar, -īaris,
 vel -īare, -īatur; -īamur, -īamini, -īantur.

Imp. Aud-īter, -īriteris;
 vel -īrere, -īrētur; -īreniur, -īremini, -īrentur.

Perf. Auditus sim *vel* fuerim, Auditus sis v. fueris, &c.

Plu. Auditus esseim v. fuissim, Auditus esies v. fuisses, &c.

Fut. Auditus fuerō, Auditus fueris, &c.

Imperative Mode.

2.

3.

2.

3.

Pres. Aud-īre, *vel* -ītor, -ītor; -īmīni, -īunctor.

Infinitive.

Participles.

Pr. Aud-īri, Per. Audi-tus, -a, -um.

Per. Esse vel fuisse aud-itus, -a, -um; *Fut.* Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

Fut. Aud-ītum iri.

FORMATION of VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

- X 1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
 2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.
 3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
 4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; X as,

AM-o, *em*; *AM-avi*, *-eram*, *-erim*, *-issem*, *-ero*, *-iffe*; *AMAT-um*, *-u*, *-urus*, *-us*; *AM-are*, *-abam*, *-abo*, *-arem*, *-a*, *-ans*, *andum*, *di*, *do*; *-andus*.

DOC-EO, *-eam*; *DOC-U*, *-ueram*, &c.; *DOCT-UM*, *-u*, *-urus*, *-us*; *DOC-ERE*, *-ebam*, *-ebo*, *-erem*, *-e*, *-ens*, *-endum*, *di*, *do*, *-endus*.

LEG-O, *-am*; *LEG-I*, *-eram*, &c.; *LECT-UM*, *-u*, *-urus*, *-us*; *LEG-ERE*, *-ebam*, *-erem*, *-e*, *-ens*, *-endum*, &c.

AUD-IO, *-iam*; *AUD-IVI*, *-iveram*, &c.; *AUDIT-UM*, *-u*, *-urus*, *-us*; *AUD-IRE*, *-iebam*, *-irem*, *-i*, *-iens*, *-iendum*, *di*, *do*, *-iendus*.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, *CAP-IO*, *-iam*; *CER-I*, *-eram*, &c.; *CAPT-UM*, *-u*, &c.; *CAP-ERE*, *-iebam*, *-erem*, *-e*, *-iens*, *-iendum*, *di*, *do*, *-iendus*.

The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

¶ But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine thus,

AM-o, *-ābam*, *-ābo*, *-em*, *-ārem*, *-a* or *-āto*, *-āre*, *-ans*, *-andum*, *di*, *do*, &c. *-andus*:

AMAV-I, *-ērami*, *-ērim*, *-issem*, *-ēro*, *-iffe*; *AMĀT-UM*, *-us*, *-ūrus*.

So *DOC-EO*, *-ēbam*, *-ēbo*, *-eam*, *-ērem*, *-e* or *-ēto*, *ēre*, *-ens*, *-endum*, *di*, &c. *-endus*; *DOCU-I*, *ērami*, *-ērim*, *-issem*, *-ēro*, *-iffe*; *DOCT-UM*, *-us*, *-ūrus*.

LEG-O, *-ēbam*, *-am*, *es*, *et*, &c. *-am*, *as*, *at*, &c. *-ērem*, *-e* or *-ēto*, *-ēre*, *-ens*, *-endum*, &c. *-endus*:

LECT-UM, *-us*, *-urus*:

CAP-IO, *-ēbam*, *-iam*, *ies*, *iet*, &c. *-iam*, *ias*, &c. *-ērem*, *-e* or *-ēto*, *-ēre*, *-iens*, *-iendum*, *-iendus*: *CER-I*, *-ēram*, &c. *CAPT-UM*, *-us*, *-ūrus*.

AUD-IO, *-ēbam*, &c. *AUDIV-I*, *-ēram*, &c.

{ A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

{ The first person of the Present of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am* in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus* in *am-abamus*.

All

All the letters which come before *-are*, *-ēre*, *-ērē*, or *ire*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

SIGNIFICATION of the TENSES in the various Modes.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love; or was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, or have loved, that is, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.

Amatus fui, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved.

Amatus fuerim, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

Amatus fuisset, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

Amatus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amatus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amatis sunt*, they were loved, when applied

applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has; when put for *amavi*: so *amor*, and *amatus sum*; I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*; &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligent, qualis sit*; As if they understood, what kind of person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurasse putas*, You would think, &c, Ov. *Eloquar an fileam*? Shall I speak out; or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim*; Teucri; for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te frigerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantam sperore dolorem*; *Et preferre, soror, petero*: for *potuissim* and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam*? Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Praediceres mihi*; You should have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauserit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, lugere refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuisset*, Id. *Invidiae dilapsa erat*, for *fuisset*, Sall. *Quandiu in portum venis*? for *venisti*, Plaut. *Quam mox navelo Eubesum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. *Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Cæstico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet, or fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis*, *meque amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them: thus,

- Dicit me scribere; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.
 Dixit me scribere; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.
 Dicit me scriptisse; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.
 Dixit me scriptisse; he said that I had written.
 Dicit me scripturum esse; he says that I will write.
 Dixit nos scripturos esse; he said that we would write.
 Dicit nos scripturos fuisse; he says that we would have written.
 Dicit literos scribi; he says that letters are written, writing, a-writing, or in writing.
 Dixit literas scribi; he said that letters were writing, or written.
 Dicit literas scriptas esse; he says that letters are or were written.
 Dicit literas scriptas fuisse; he says that letters have been written.
 Dixit literas scriptas fuisse; he said that letters had been written.
 Dicit literas scriptum iri; he says that letters will be written.
 Dixit literas scriptum iri; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*; — *ut literæ scribantur*, I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*, — *ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse*, *ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

Scribendum est mihi, puer, nobis, &c. literas; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.

Scribendum fuit mihi, puer, nobis, &c. I must have written, &c.

Scribendum erit mihi; I shall be obliged to write.

Scis scribendum esse mihi literas; I know that I must write letters.

— *Scribendum fuisse mihi*; — that I must have written.

Dixit scribendum fore mihi; He said that I would be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus*,

Literæ sunt scribendæ mihi, puer, hominibus, &c. or a me, puer, &c. Letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. *So literæ scribendæ erant, fuerunt, erunt, &c.* *Si literæ scribendæ sint, essent, furent, &c.* *Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *amans*, for *amo*, I am loving; *eram amans*, for *amabam*, &c. *Fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut sis sciens*, for *ut scias*, Ter. Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression however does not often occur.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

Vōso, vōtāvi, vōcātūm, to call : *so rēvōco, revōcāvi, revōcātūm*, to recall.

Exc. 1.] When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pēpūlī*, to beat } *rēpello, rēpūlī*, never *repēpūlī*, to beat back. But the compounds of *dō, sto, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus, *ēdisco, ēdīdīci*, to get by heart; *dēposco, dēpōposci*, to demand. So, *præcurro, præcūcurri*; *rēpungo, rēpūpūgi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *u* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *fācio, fēci, factūm*, to make; *perfīcio, perfēci, perfectūm*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *habeo, placeo, sāpio, sālio*, and *stātuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvi* in the preterite, and *ātūm* in the supine; as,

Creo, creāvi, creātūm, to create; *pāro, pārāvi, pārātūm*, to prepare.—*So, Abundo, to abound.* *Ariēto, to push like a ram.* *Būlūlo, to hoot like an Accūso, to charge with.* *Apto, to fit.*

a crime.

Ādumbro, to shade, to delineate. *Ascio, to cut or hew.* *Cāeo, to go to stool.*

Ēdīfico, to build. *Assēvēro, to affirm.* *Cāeco, to blind or dazzle.*

Ēstimo, to value. *Ausculto, to listen.* *Cāelo, to carve.*

Ambūlo, to walk. *Auētōro, to engage for service.* *Cālēeo, to put on shoes, to shoe.*

Āmplio, to enlarge, to put off a cause. *Autūmo, to suppose.* *Cālcitro, to kick.*

Ānīmo, to encourage. *Āverrunco, to avert.* *Calcō, to tread.*

Antīcipō, to anticipate. *Bajūlo, to carry.* *Cālīgo, to be dark, or dim-sighted.*

Antīquo, i. e. antiqua probō, to reject a law. *Bālo, to bleat.* *Carīmino, to card wool.*

Appellō, to call. *Bāsūo, to kiss.* *Castīgo, to chastise.*

Appropinquō, to approach. *Bello, to war.* *Castro, to cut off.*

Boo, to bellow. *Bēo, to bless.* *Cēlebro, to make famous.*

Blätēro, to babble. *Cēlo, to conceal.*

Centūrio, & concen-

tūrid,

tūrio, to divide into companies.	Dēdīco, to dedicate.	Flo, to blow.
Certo, to strive; to fight.	Dēlecto, to delight.	Fōcillo, rēfōcillo, to cberish, to warm.
Cesso, to cease.	Dēlibero, to deliberate.	Fōdīco, to pierce or pīsa.
Clāmo, to cry.	Dēlineo, to trace; to chalk out.	Fōro, to bore.
Clāudīco, to limp.	Dēlīto, to drat, to rave.	Fortūno, to prosper.
Coāgūlo, to curdle.	Dēlumbō, to weaken.	Fragrō, to smell sweetly.
Cōgīto, to think.	Dēsīdēro, to desire.	Fraudo, to defraud.
Collīneō, to aim at, to hit the mark.	Dēsōlo, to lay waste.	Friō, to crumble.
Cōlo, to strain.	Destīnō, to design.	Frustro, & -or, to dis- appoint.
Commūnīco, to impart.	Dīco, to dedicate.	Fūco, to colour, to paint.
Compārō, to compare.	Discepto; dispūto, to debate.	Fūgo, to put to flight.
Compenso, to make a mends.	Dissipō, to scatter.	Fundo, to found.
Compērendīno, to put off a cause to the day after to-morrow.	Dōlo, to kēw or cut.	Gēnēro, to beget.
Compilō, to pile up, to pillage.	Dōno, to present.	Grāvo, to weigh down.
Conciliō, to gain; to reconcile.	Duplicō, to double.	Gūberno, to govern.
Concordō, to agree.	Edūco, to bring up.	Gusto, to taste.
Confūto, rēfūtō, to dis- provē.	Ejūlo, to wail, to weep.	Hābito, to dwell.
Congēlo, to freeze.	Emancipo, to free a son from the power of his father.	Hāsito, to doubt.
Considērō, to consider.	Emendo, to amend.	Hālo, to breathe.
Contāmīndō, to pollute.	Enucleo, to take out the kernel, to explain.	Hio, to gape.
Cōpūlō, to couple.	Enōdo, to unknit, to explain.	Hōnōro, to honour.
Corrūgo, to wrinkle.	Equīto, to ride.	Jacōto, to boast, to brag.
Cōrrusco, to brandish.	Errō, to wander.	Jento, to breakfast.
Crēmo, to burn.	Examīno, to examine, to try.	Ignōro, to be ignorant.
Crēo, to create.	Exantlo, to empty, to endure.	Immōlo, to sacrifice.
Cribro, to sift.	Exārō, to plough up, to scratch, to write fusi.	Impērō, to command.
Crispo, to curl.	Exentēro, to take out the guts.	Impetro, to obtain.
Crūcio, to torment.	Existīmō, to think.	Inauro, to gild.
Cūro, to care.	Explōro, to search.	Inchōo, to begin.
Damno, to condemn.	Extrīco, to disentangle.	Inclīno, to incline.
Dēcīme, to take the tenth part, or punish every tenth man.	Fabrīco, to frame.	Indāgo, to trace out.
Declāro, to declare.	Fascīnō, to bewitch.	Indīco, to scry.
Dēcollo, to loose a thing from off the neck, to behead.	Fatīgo, to weary.	Inquīno, to pollute.
Dēcōrō, to adorn.	Fermento, to leaven with dough, to ferment.	Inspīco, to sharpen at the end.
Dēcūrio, to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.	Festīno, to hasten.	Instauro, to renew.
	Flāgīto, to dun.	Instīgo, to push on.
	Flagro, to be on fire.	Intēlo, to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.
		Invīto, to invite.
		Irrādio, to shine upon.
		Irrīto, to provoke.
		Itēro, to do again.
		Jūbilo, to shout for joy.
		Jurgo,

Jurgo, & -or, to chide or scold.	Narro, to tell.	Prōbo, to approve.
Jūro, to swear.	Nauseo, to be sea-sick.	Procrastīno, to delay.
Lābōro, to labour.	Nāvigo, to sail.	Profīgo, to rout.
Lācēro, to tear.	Nāvo, to act vigorously.	Prōmulgo, to publish.
Lachrȳmo, & -or, to weep.	Nēgo, to deny.	Propāgo, to propagate.
Lævīgo, to smooth or polish.	Nicto, to wink.	Prōpēro, to hasten.
Lallo, to sing as a nurse to a child.	No, to swim.	Propīno, to drink to.
Lānio, to tear.	Nōdo, to knot, rar. act.	Prōtēlo, to chose away.
Lattro, to bark.	Nōmino, to name.	Publīco, to publish, to confiscate.
Laxo, to loose.	Nōto, to mark.	Pugno, to fight.
Lēgo, to send as an am- bassador, to bequeath.	Nōvo, to renew.	Pullīlo, to bud.
Lēvo, to lighten.	Nūdo, to make bare.	Purgo, to cleanse.
Lībo, to taste.	Nūmēro, to count.	Pūto, to think.
Lībēro, to free.	Nuncūpo, to call.	Quadro, to square.
Līgo, to bind.	Nuntio, to tell.	Rēcūpēro, to recover.
Līquo, to melt.	Nūto, to nod.	Rēcūlo, to refuse.
Lītīgo, to quarrel.	Obsecro, to beseech.	Refrīgēro, to cool.
Lito, to appease by sa- crifice.	Obsēro, to look.	Rēgēlo, to throw.
Lūcubro, to sit up late, to study.	Obtempēro, to obey.	Rēpāro, to repair.
Lūstro, to survey.	Obtrunco, to kill.	Rēprāfento, to resem- ble, to shew; to pay money in advance.
Luxo, to put out of joint.	Obtūro, to stop up.	Rēsēro, to unlock.
Macto, to slay, to sa- crifice.	Occo, to harrow.	Rīgo, to water.
Mando, to command, to commit.	Ōdōre, to perfume.	Rōgo, to gsk.
Māno, to stow.	Ōnēro, to load.	Rōto, to wheel about.
Mātūro, to hasten.	Opto, to wish.	Ructo, & -or, to belch.
Mēdīco, & -or, to cure.	Orbo, to deprive.	Rūmīno, to chew the
Mēmōro, to tell.	Ordīno, to put in order.	Runcō, to weed. [sud.
Meo, to go or pass.	Orno, to deck, to adorn.	Sacro, to consecrate.
Mērīdio, & -or, to sleep at noon.	Ōro, to beg.	Sāgīno, to fatten.
Migro, to remove.	Oscīto, & -or, to yawn, to be listless.	Sālīvo, to spit or s̄ay.
Mīlīto, to be a soldier.	Pāco, to subdue.	Salto, to dance.
Mīnistro, to serve.	Palpīto, to beat or throb.	Sālūto, to salute.
Mītīgo, to pacify.	Palpo, to stroke, to gain by flattery.	Sāno, to heal.
Monstro, to shew or tell.	Pārento, to perform fu- neral rites, to revenge.	Sātīo, to satisfy.
Mulco, to beat.	Pāro, to prepare.	Sātūro, to fill, to glut.
Multo, & -to, to fine.	Patro, to perform.	Scārifīco, to lance or open.
Musīo, & -ito, to mutter.	Pecco, to sin.	Serco, to hawk or retch in spitting.
Mūtīlo, to main.	Pēnetro, to pierce.	Sēcundo, to prosper.
Mūto, to change.	Persēvēro, to continue constant.	Sēdo, to alay.
	Pio, to expiate.	Sēpāto, to sever.
	Plāeo, to appraise.	Servo, to keep.
	Plōro, to bewail.	Sibīlo, to hiss.
	Porto, to carry.	Sicco, to dry.
	Postūlo, to demand.	Signo, to mark out.
	Prīvo, to deprive.	Significō,

Siguīſico, to mean, to give notice.	Sulco, to furrow.	Vasto, to lay waste.
Simūlo, to pretend.	Sūpēro, to overcome.	Vellīco, to pluck, trivitch or pinch; to taunt or rail at.
Sōcio, to match, to join.	Suppēdīto, to afford.	Vēlo, to cover.
Sōlīcīto, to stir up, to disquiet.	Sūfurro, to whisper.	Ventīlo, to fan.
Somnīo, to dream.	Tardo, to stop.	Verbēro, to whip.
Spectō, to behold.	Taxo, to rate, to reprove.	Vestīgo, to search for.
Spēro, to hope.	Témēro, to defile.	Vibro, to brandish, to shake.
Spīro, to breathe.	Tempēro, to temper.	Vīduo, to deprive.
Spōlio, to rob.	Tēnuo, to make small.	Vigilo, to watch.
Spūmo, to foam.	Tērebro, to bere.	Vindīco, to claim, to revenge.
Stagno, to stand as water.	Termīno, to bound.	Viōlo, to violate.
Stillo, to drop.	Tītillō, to tickle.	Vítio, to spoil.
Stimūlo, to goad, to vex.	Tītūbo, to stagger.	Vīto, to sin.
Stīpo, to stuff, to guard.	Tolēro, to bear.	Vítūpēro, to blame.
Strangūlo, to stifle.	Trāno, to swim over.	Vōco, to call.
Strīgo, to breathe, or rest in work, as oxen, or horses do.	Trīpūdio, to caper.	Včlo, to fly.
Sūdo, to sweat.	Triumpho, to triumph.	Vōro, to devour.
Suffōco, to strangle.	Trūcīdo, to kill.	Vulgo, to spread abroad.
Suffōco, to burn incense.	Turbo, to disturb.	Vulnero, to wound.
Sugillo, to taunt or jeer.	Ulūlo, to howl.	
	Umbro, to shade.	
	Vácillo, to waver.	
	Váco, to want, to be at leisure.	

Exc. 1. *Do, dědi, dätum, däre, to give : so, venundo, to sell ; circundo, to surround ; pessundo, to overthrow ; satisdo, to give surety ; venundědi, venundätum, venundäre, &c.* The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, stěti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stěti*, *stītum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *prästo*, *prästěti*, *prästītum*, or *prästātum*, to excel, to perform. So *ad-*, *ante-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lävo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lävātum, to wash.*

Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum, or pōtātum, to drink.

Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help ; fut. part. juvaturus. So *adjūvo*.

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbitum, to ly.* So, *ac-*, *ex-*, *oc-*, *rē-cūbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Děmo, dōmui, dōmitum, to subdue. So *ē-*, *per-dōmo*.

Sōno, sōnui, sōnitum, to sound. So *af-*, *circum-*, *confi-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-sōno*.

Tōno, tōnui, tōnitum, to thunder. So *at-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *uperin-*, *rē-tōno*. Horace has *intōnatus*.

Vēto, vētui, vētitum, to forbid.

Crēpo, crēpui, crēpitum, to make a noise. So *con-, in-, per-, rē-crēpo*: *discrēpo* has rather *dīscrēpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Frico, fricui, fridūm, to rub.* So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frico*. But some of these have also *atum*.

Sēco, sēcui, sectum, to cut. So *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, rē-, sub-sēco*.

Nēco, nēcui, or nēcavi, nēcātum, to kill. So *inter-, ē-nēco*: but these have often *ectum*; *eneclum, interneclum*.

Mīco, mīcui, — to glitter, to shine. So *inter-, prō-mīco*. *Emīco, has ēmīcui, ēmīcātum: dīmīco, dimīcāvi, dimīcātum, rarely, dimīcui, to fight.*

Exc. 5. These three want both pret. and sup. *lābo, to fall or faint*; *nexo, to bind*; and *plico, to fold*.

*Plico, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re*, *sub*, has āvi, ātum; as, duplīcū, duplīcāvi, duplīcatum, to double.* So *multi-, sup-, re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *ītum*; as *applico, applicui, applicitum, or -āvi, ātum, to apply.* So *im-, com-plico*. *Explīco, to unfold, has commonly explicui, explicitum; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, explicāvi, explicātum*.

Second Conjugation.

{ Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *ītum*; as *hābeo, habui, habitum, to have.* — So,

Ādhībeo, to admit, to use.

Cohībeo, īnhībeo, to restrain.

Exhibeo, to shew, to give.

Pērhībeo, to say, to give out.

Prohibeo, to hinder.

Posthabeo, to value less.

Prāheo, to afford.

Rēdhībeo, to return or take back a thing that was sold for some fault.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine; as, *āreo, ārui, to be dry*: So,

Āceo, ī-sco, to besour.

Albeo, to be white.

Candeo, to be white.

Calleo, to be hard.

Cāneo, to be hoary.

Clāreo, to b: bright.

Egeo, indīgeo, to want.

Emīneo, to stand above

others.

Flacceo, to wither.

Flōtreo, to flourish.

Fœteo, to stink.

Dēbeo, to owe.

Mēreo, to deserve: Com-, de-, e-, per-, pro-mēreo, or mereor.

Mōneo, to admonish: Ad-, com-, prae-mōneo.

Terreo, to terrify: Abs-, con-, de-, ex-, per-terreo.

Dīrībeo, to count over, to distribute.

Frendeo, to gnash the teeth.

Frondeo, to bear leaves.

Horreo, to be rough.

Hūmeo, to be wet.

Ipmīneo, to hang over.

Langueo,

Langueo, to languish.	Páteo, to be open.	Stüdeo, to favour.
Liqueo, licui, to melt, to be clear.	Fúteo, to stink.	Stüpeo, to be amazed.
Máceo, to be lean.	Putreo, to rot.	Splendeo, to shine.
Mädeo, to be wet.	Ranceo, to be mouldy.	Tépeo, to be warm.
Marceo, to wither.	Rígeo, to be stiff.	Torpeo, to be benumbed.
Muceo, to be mouldy.	Rübeo, to be red.	Tümeo, to swell.
Niteo, to shine.	Squaleo, to be foul.	Vígeo, to be strong.
Palleo, to be pale.	Sordeo; to be nasty.	Vireo; to be green.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Váleo*, to be in health; and *æqui-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-váleo*: *Pláceo*, to please; and *com-*, *per-placeo*: *dis-*
pliceo, to displease: *Cáreо*, to want: *Páreо*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-*, *com-páreо*: *Jáceo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-jáceo*: *Calco*, to be warm; and *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-cáleо*: *Noceo*, to hurt; *Dóleo*, to be grieved; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-dóleo*: *Coaleo*, to grow together: *Liceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued; and, what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Láteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delíteo*, *inter-*, *sub-láteo*: as likewise do those of *Táceo*, -*cui*, -*cítum*, to be silent, -*cui*, -*cítum*, *rē-táceo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Timeo*, -*ui*, to fear; *Sileo*, -*ui*, to conceal; -*cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; -*cui*, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercitum*, to exercise. So *co-arceo*, to restrain.

Ex. i. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Jübeo, *jussi*, *jussum*, to order. So *fidē-jübeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

Sorbeo, *sorbui*, *sorptum*; to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ix*, *rē-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi*, *exsorpsi*: *Exsorptum*, *rēsorptum*, are not in use.

Dōceo, *dōcui*, *doctum*, to teach. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *sub-dōceo*.

Misceo, *mis cui*, *mixtum*, or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-*, *com-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *rē-misceo*.

Mulceo, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, to stroak, to soothe. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *per-*, *rē-mulceo*.

Luceo; *luxi*, — to shine. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *di-*, *ē-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *per-*, or *pel-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-luceo*.

Exe.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

Prandeo, *prandi*, *pransum*, to dine.

Video, *vīdi*, *vīsum*, to see. So *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*
rē-video.

Sedeo, *sēdi*, *sessum*, to sit. So *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*,
ob-, *per-*, *pos-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sub-sēdeo*: *Circumsēdeo*, or *circum-*
sēdeo, *supersēdeo*. But *dē-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sub-sēdeo*,
seem to want the supine.

Strideo, *strīdi*, —— to make a noise.

Pendeo, *pēpendi*, *pensum*, to hang. So *de-*, *im-*, *pro-*,
super-pendeo.

Mordeo, *mōmordi*, *morsum*, to bite. So *ad-*, *com-*, *de-*,
ob-, *præ-*, *re-mordeo*.

Spondeo, *spōpōndi*, *sponsum*, to promise. So *de-*, *re-spondeo*.

Tondeo, *tō:ondi*, *tonsum*, to clip. So *at-*, *circum-*, *de-tondeo*.
But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first
syllable; thus, *dependi*, *remordi*, *respondi*, *attondi*, &c.

Rideo, *rīsi*, *rīsum*, to laugh. So *ar-*, *de-*, *ir-*, *sub-rīdeo*.

Suādeo, *suāsi*, *suāsum*, to advise. So *dis-*, *per-suādeo*.

Ardeo, *arsi*, *arsum*, to burn. So *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO*:

Augeo, *auxi*, *auētum*, to increase. So *ad-*, *ex-augeo*.

Lugeo, *luxi*, —— to mourn. So *e-*, *pro-*, *sub-lugeo*.

Frīgeo, *frixi*, —— to be cold. So *per-*, *re-frīgeo*.

Tergeo, *tersi*, *tersum*, to wipe. So *abs-*, *circum-*, *de-*,
ex-, *per-tergeo*.

Mulgeo, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, or *mulētum*, to milk. So *e-*, *im-mulgeo*.

Indulgeo, *indulsi*, *indultum*, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, *ursi*, —— to press. So *ad-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *sub-*,
super-urgeo.

Fulgeo, *fulsi*, —— to shine. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*,
inter-, *præ-*, *re-*, *super-fulgeo*.

Turgeo, *turſi*, —— to swell. *Algeo*, *alſi*, —— to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO*:

Vieo, *viēvi*, *viētum*, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cieo, (*cīvi*) *cītum*, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-*, *con-*, *ex-*,
in-, *per-cieo*. *Cīvi* comes from *cīs* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, *flēvi*, *fletum*, to weep. So *af-*, *de-fleo*.

Compleo, *complēvi*, *complētum*, to fill. So the other com-
pounds of *pleo*; *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *adim-*, *op-*, *re-*, *sup-pleo*.

Dēleo,

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

ōleo, to smell, has ūlui, ūlitum. So likewise its compounds which have a similar signification; ob-, per-, red-, sub-ōleo. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make ēvi and ētum; thus exōleo, exōlēvi, ex-ōlētum, to fade. So īnōleo, -ēvi, -ētum, or -itum, to grow into use; obsōleo, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow out of use. Abōleo, to abolish, has abōlēvi, abōlitum; and adōleo, to grow up, to burn, adōlēvi, adultum.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO, and SEO,*

Māneo, mansi, mansum, to stay. So per-, rē-māneo.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to spin. So per-neo.

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, to hold. So con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tīneo. But atīneo, pertīneo, are not used in the supine; and seldom alstīneo.

Torqueo, torfi, torium, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo.

Hāereo, hāsi, hāsum, to stick. Thus, ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hāereo.

Torreо, torrui, tostum, to roast. So extorreo.

Censeo, censui, censem, to judge. So ac-, per-, re-censeo, to review; succenseo, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have vi, tum; as, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, to move; fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, to cherish. So con-, rē-foveo. So vōveo, to vow, or wish, and dēvōveo.

Fāveo, to favour; has fāvi, fautum; and cāveo, to beware of; cāvi, cautum. So præ-cāveo.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, pāveo, pāvi, to be afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes ferbui. So de-, ef-, in-, per-, rē-ferveo.

Connīveo, to wink, has connīvi and connīxi.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo, to suck milk, līveo, to be black and blue; scāteo, to abound; renīdeo, to shine; māereo, to be sorrowful; āveo, to desire; polleo, to be able; flāveo, to be yellow; denseo, to grow thick; glabreо, to be smooth or bare. To these add calveo, to be bald; cēveo, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; hēbeo, to be dull; ūveo, to be moist; and some others.*

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present. }

10.

1. *Fācio, fēci, fācūm*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrī-, magnī-, ārē-, cālē-, mādē-, tēpē-, bēnē-, mālē-*, *sātis-fācio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *eclum*; as, *affīcio, affēci, affēclum*. So, *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, prā-, pro-, re-, suf-*
fīcio. Note; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifīco, sacrificō, terrifīco, magnifīco*; *gratifīcor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *lūdificor*, to mock.

Fācio, jēci, jaēclum, to throw. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jīcio*; in the supine *-ēclum*.

The compounds of *spēcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *eclum*; as, *aspīcio, aspexi, a-spēclum*, to behold. So *circum-, con-, de-, dif-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, re-, retro-, su-spīcio*.

Allīcio, alleēxi, alleēclum, to allure. So *il-, pel-līcio*; but *ēlīcio*, to draw out, has *elīciui, elīcītum*.

2. *Fōdio, fōdi, fossūm*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-, con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, prā-, re-, suf-, trans-fōdio*.

Fūgio, fūgi, fūgitūm, to fly. So *au-*, (for *ab-*), *con-, de-, dif-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, trans-fūgio*.

3. *Cāpio, cēpi, captūm*, to take. So *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, prā-, re-, sus-cīpio*, (in the supine *-ceptūm*); and *ante-cāpio*.

Rāpio, rāpui, raptūm, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, prā-, pro-, sur-rīpio-, -rīpui, -reptūm*.

Sāpio, sūpui, — to favour, to be wise. So *consīpio*, to be well in one's wits; *desīpio*, to be foolish; *resīpio*, to come to one's wits.

Cūpio, cupīvi, cupītūm, to desire. So *con-, dif-, per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio, pēpēri, parītūm*, or *pārium*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quālio,

Quātio, quāssi, quassum, to shake; but *quāssi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cūssi, cūssum, as, concūtio, con-*
cūssi concūssum. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, reper-,*
sūc-cūtio.

UO has *ui, ūtum; as,*

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to shew, to prove, or argue,
to reprove. So *co-, red-arguo,* to confute.—So,

Acuo, Exācao, tō skarpen.

Batuo, vel battuo, to beat, to fight,
to fence with foils.

Induo, to put on cloaths:

Exuo, to put off cloaths.

Imbuo, to wet or imbrue, to season
or *instrucē.*

Minuo, to lessen: Com-, de-, di-,
im-minuo.

Spuo, to spit: Con-, de-, ex-, in-spue.

Stātuo, to set or place, to ordain.

Con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-,
sūb-stītuo.

Sternuo, to sneeze.

Suo, to sew or stitch, to tack together: Af-, circum-, con-, dis-,
in-, præ-, rē-, suo.

Tribuo, to give, to divide: At-,
con-, dis-, re-tribuo.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, flaxi, fluxum,* to flow. So af-, circum-,
con-, de-, dis-, es-, in-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-,
subter-, super-, trans-fluo.

Struo, struxi, strūctum, to put in order, to build. So
ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-
struo.

Exc. 2. *Luō, lūi, lūitum,* to pay, to wash away, to
suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum;* as, *abluo,*
-ui, -ūtum, to wash away, to purify. So ad-, circum-,
col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo.

Ruo, rui, ruītum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have
ūtum; as *diruo, dirui, dirūtum,* to overthrow. So ē-,
ob-, prō-, sub-ruo. *Corruo,* and *irruo,* want the supine;
as likewise do *mētuo,* to fear; *pluo,* to rain; *ingruo,* to af-
fail; *congruo,* to agree; *respuo,* to reject, to slight; *annuo,*
to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb.
nuo; *abnuo,* to refuse; *innuo,* to nod or beckon with the
head; *rēnuo,* to deny: all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bītum; as,*

Bībo, bībi, bibītum, to drink. So ad-, com-, e-, im-,
per-, præ-bībo.

Exc. 1. *Scrībo, scripti, scriptum,* to write. So ad-,
circum-, con-, ds-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, prō-,
re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scrībo.

Nūbo, nūpsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nubo.* Instead of *nūpsi*, we often find *nupta sum.*

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbitum, to recline at table.* So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cūbui, -cubitum.*

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi, to scratch; lambo, lambi, to lick.* So *ad-, circum-, dē-, pre-lambo.*

Glūbo and *deglūbo, to strip, to flay, want both pret. & sup.*
CO:

1. *Dico, dixi, dictum, to say.* So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dico.*

Dūco, duxi, ductum, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-, or trans-dūco.*

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum, to overcome.* So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-vinco.*

Parco, pēpercī, parsūm, seldom parsi, parsūtum, to spare. So *comparco, or compērco, which is seldom used.*

Ico, īci, icūm, to strike.

SCO has *vī, tum; as,*

Nōscō, nōvī, nōtum, to know; fut. part. nosciturus.. So *Dignoico, to distinguish; ignosco, to pardon; also inter-, per-, præ-nosco.* *Quiesco, -ēvī, -ētum, to rest.* Ac-, con-, inter-, rē-quiesco.

Cresco, -ēvī, -ētum, to grow: Con-de-, ex-, re-, and without the supine, ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suc-, super-cresco.

Scisco, -īvī, -ītum, to ordain; ad-, or ascisco, to take, to associate; concisco, to vote, to commit; also præ-, re-cisco; descisco, to revolt. Suesco, to be accustomed: Af-, con-de-, in-suesco, -ēvī, -ētum.

Exc. 1. *Agnoscō, agnōvī, agnōtum, to own; cognoscō, cognōvī, cognōtum, to know.* So *rēcognoscō, to review.*

Pasco, pāvī, pastum, to feed. So *com-, dē-pasco.*

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine.

Disco, didīci, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, præ-disco, dīdīci.*

Posco, pōposci, to demand. So *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco.*

Compescō, compescui, to stop, to restrain. So *dispesco, dispescui, to separate.*

Exc. 3. *Glisco, to grow; fatisco, to be weary; and likewise*

likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine; as *aresco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow their preterite and supines from their primitives; as *ardesco*, to grow hot, *arsi*, *arsum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di*, *sum*; *as*,

Scando; *scandi*; *scansum*; to climb; *ēdō*, *ēdi*, *ēfuni*; to eat. So,

Ascendo, to mount. *Cūdo*, to forge; to stamp. *Mando*, to bethow. *Prae-*,

Descendo, to go down: or coin: *Ex-*, in-, re-mando:

Con-, *e-*, *ex-*, *in-*, per-, pro-, re-cūdo. *Prehendo*, to take hold! transcendo. *Defendo*, to defend. of: *Ap-*, com-, de-

Accendo, to kindle: *Offendo*, to strike at. *prehendo*:

In-, suc-cendo: *gn̄si*, to offend, to find.

Exc. 1. *Divido*, *divisi*, *divisum*, to divide.

Rādo, *rāsi*, *rāsum*, to shave. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *dē-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *sub-rādo*.

Clāudo, *clāsi*, *clāsum*; to close. So *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *se-clādo*.

Plāudo, *plāsi*, *plāsum*; to clap hands for joy. So *ap-*, *circum-plāudo*: also *com-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *sup-plādo*, *plāsi*, *plāsum*.

Lūdo, *lūsi*, *lūsum*, to play. So *ab-*, *at-*, *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-lūdo*.

Trūdo, *trūsi*, *trūsum*, to thrust. So *abs-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *re-trūdo*.

Lādo, *lāsi*, *lāsum*, to hurt. So *al-*, *col-*, *e-*, *il-lūdo*, *-lāsi*, *-lāsum*.

Rōdo, *rōsi*, *rōsum*, to gnaw. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-rōdo*.

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine: but its compounds have *si*, *sum*; as *invādo*, *invāsi*, *invāsum*; to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-*, *ē-*, *super-vādo*.

Cēdo, *cessi*, *cessum*, to yield. So *abs-*, *ac-*, *antē-*, *con-*, *de-*, *lis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *se-*, *suc-cēdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pāndo*, *pāndi*, *pāsum*, and sometimes *pāsum*, to open, to spread. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *op-*, *præ-*, *re-pāndo*.

Cōmēdo, *comēdi*, *comēsum*, or *comēstum*, to eat. But *do* itself and the rest of its compounds have always *ēsum*; *s*, *ad-*, *amb-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *sub-*; *super-ēdo*, *-ēdi*, *-ēsum*.

Fundō, *fūdi*, *fūsum*, to pour forth. So *af-*, *circum-*, *on-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *uper-*, *superin-*, *trans-fundo*.

Scindo,

Scindō, scīdi, scissum, to cut. So *af-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-scindo.*

Findō, fidī, fissum, to cleave. So *con-, dif-, in-findo.*

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi; tunsum;* and sometimes *tūsum,* to beat.. The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum;* as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum, to bruise..* So *ex-, ob-, per-, retundo..*

Cādō, cēcīdi, cāsum, to fall.. The compounds want the supine ; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-*
cīdo, -cīdi, — : except, incīdo, incīdi, incāsum, to fall in ;
recīdo, recīdi, recāsum, to fall back ; and occīdo, occīdi, occāsum, to fall down..

Cēdo, cēcīdi, cāsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long ; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum, to cut about..* So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc-cīdo..*

Tendo, tētēndi, tensum, or tentum, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dif-, ex-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo, -tendi, -tensum or -tentum.* But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo, to shew ;* which has commonly *ostensum.*

Pēdo, pēpēdi, peditum, to break wind backwards. So *ap-*
~~pē~~*-pēcīdo.*

Pēndo, pēpendi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dif-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensum.*

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi, and dītum ;* as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītum, to hide..* So *ad-, con-, dē-, dī-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, trado : also decon-, recon-do : and coad-, supperad-do ; and deper-, disper-do.* To these add *crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītum, to believe ; vendō, vendīdi, vendītum, to sell.. Abscondō, to hide, has abscon-*
di, abscondītum, rarely abscondīdi.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine : *strīdo, strīdi, to creak ; rūdo, rūdi, to bray like an ass ; and sīdo, sīdi, to sink down.* The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo ;* as, *consīdo, consēdi, confessum, to sit down..* So *af-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sīdo.*

Note, Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished ; as, *concīdo, concēdo, concīdo ; consīdo and consīdeo ; consīndo, consēndo, &c.*

GO, GUO, has *xi*, *dum*; *æ*,

Rēgo, *rexī*, *rectūm*, to rule, to govern; *dīrīgo*, *-exī*, *rectūm*, to direct; *arrīgo*, & *ērīgo*, *-exī*, *rectūm*, to raise up: *corrīgo*, to correct; *parrīgo*, to stretch out; *subrīgo*, to raise up. So

Cingo, *cinxī*, *cinctūm*, to gird, to surround: *Ac-*, *dis-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suc-ingo*.

Fligo, to dash or beat upon: *Af-*, *con-*, *in-fligo*: also *profligo*, to rout, of the first conj.

Jungo, to join; *abjungo*, to separate: *Ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *se-*, *sub-jungo*.

Lingo, to lick: *de-*, *ē-lingo*; & *pollingo*, to anoint a dead body.

Mungo, to wipe or clean the nose.

Emungo, to wipe, to cheat.

Plango, to beat, to lament.

Stingo, or *Stinguo*, to dash out, to extinguish: *Di-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-stinguo*.

Tēgo, to cover: *Circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-tēgo*.

Tingo, or *Tinguo*, to dip or dye: *Con-*, *in-tingo*.

Ungo, or *Unguo*, to anoint: *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *super-ungo*.

Exc. 1. *Surgo*, to rise, has *surrexī*, *surrectūm*. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-surgo*.

Pergo, *perrexī*, *perrectūm*, to go forward.

Stringo, *strinxi*, *stridūm*, to bind, to strain, to lop. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-stringo*.

Fingo, *finxi*, *fictūm*, to feign. So *af-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *re-fingo*.

Pingo, *pinxi*, *pictūm*, to paint. So *ap-*, *de-pingo*.

Exc. 2. *Frango*, *frēgi*, *fractūm*, to break. So *con-*, *de-*, *dif-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-fringo*, *-frēgi*, *-fractūm*.

Āgo, *ēgi*, *actūm*, to do, to drive. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *ex-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *trans-*, *transad-īgo*; and *circum-*, *per-āgo*: *cōgo*, for *coāgo*, *coēgi*, *coactūm*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine: *sātāgo*, *satēgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prōdīgo*, *prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo*, for *deāgo*; *dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambīgo*, to doubt, to dispute, also wants the preterite.

Lēgo, *lēgi*, *lectūm*, to gather, to read. So *al-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-lēgo*: also *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *recol-*, *se-līgo*, which change *e* into *i*.

Dīlīgo, to love, has *dilexi*, *dilectūm*. So *neglīgo*, to neglect; and *intellīgo*, to understand; but, *neglīgo* has sometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango*, *tērīgi*, *tactūm*, to touch. So *at-*, *con-*, *ob-*, *per-tingo*; thus, *attingo*, *attīgi*, *attactūm*, &c.

Pungo,

Pungo, *pūpūgi*, *punctum*, to prick or sting. The compounds have *punxi*; as, *compungo*, *compunxi*, *compundum*. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *inter-pungo*: but *repungo* has *repunxi*, or *repūpūgi*.

Pango, *panxi*, *pactum*, to fix, to drive in, to compose: or *pēpīgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pāgo*, to bargain, for which we use *pacisco*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pēgi*; as, *compingo*, *compēgi*, *compactum*, to put together. So *im-*, *ob-*, *sup pingō*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo*, *sparsi*, *sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *di-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-spérgo*.

Mergo, *mersi*, *mersum*, to dip, or plunge. So *de-*, *en-*, *im-*, *sub-mergo*.

Tergo, *tersi*, *tersum*, to wipe, or clean. So *abs-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-tergo*.

Figo, *fixi*, *fixum*, to fix or fasten. So *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *of-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *transfigo*.

Frigo, *frixi*, *frixum*, or *fridum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango*, *clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo*, or *ninguo*, *ninxi*, to snow; *anga*, *anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline, or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-*, *de-*, *in-vergo*.

HO, JO.

1. *Trāho*, *traxi*, *traētum*, to draw. So *alſ-*, *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-trāho*.

Veho, *vexi*, *večtum*, to carry. So *a-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *di-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *trans-věho*.

2. *Mejo*, or *mingo*, *minxi*, *mīčtum*, to make water. So *immejo*.

LO.

1. *Cōlo*, *cōlui*, *cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-*, *circum-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-cōlo*: and likewise *occōlo*, *occului*, *occultum*, to hide.

Consōlo, *consului*, *consultum*, to advise or consult.

Alo, *älui*, *älitum*, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

Mōlo, *molui*, *molitum*, to grind. So *com-*, *e-*, *per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-*, *ex-*, *præ-cello*, *-cellui*, to excel. *Per-cello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli*, *percūsum*.

Pello,

Pello, *pēpūli*, *pūlsum*, to thrust. So *ap-*, *as-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-pello*; *appūli*, *appūlsum*, &c.

Fallo, *fēfelli*, *falsum*, to deceive. But *rēfello*, *refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello*, *velli*, or *wulfi*, *wulsum*, to pull or pinch. So *a-*, *cō-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *prā-*, *re-vello*. But *de-*, *di-*, *per-vello*, have rather *velli*.

Sallo, *salli*, *salsum*, to salt. *Psallo*, *psalli*, — to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *suſūli*, and *sublatum*; *Extollo*, *extūli*, *elātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui*, *itum*; *as*,
Gēmo, *gēmūi*, *gēnitum*, to groan. So *ad-*, or *ag-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *re-gēmo*.

Frēmo, *fremui*, *fremitum*, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *per-frēmo*.

Vōmo, *evōmo*, -*ui*, -*itum*, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo*, *dempfi*, *demptum*, to take away.

Prōmo, *prōmīsi*, *prōmptum*, to bring out. So *de-*, *ex-prōmo*.

Sūmo, *sumpsī*, *sumptum*, to take. So *ab-*, *as-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *prā-*, *re-*, *tran-sūmo*.

Cōmo, *compsi*, *comptum*, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p.*; as *dēmfī*, *dēmtum*; *sumsī*, *sumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Emo*, *ēmi*, *emptum*, or *emtum* to buy. So *ad-*, *dir-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *red-ēmo* and *co-ēmo*, -*emīi*, -*emptum* or -*emtum*.

Prēmo, *prēssi*, *pressum*, to press. So *ap-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *ōp-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sup-prēmo*.

Trēmo, *trēmīi*, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So *at-*, *circuñi-*, *con-*, *in-trēmo*.

NO.

1. *Pōno*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*, to put or place. So *ap-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *post-*, *prā-*, *tro-*, *re-*, *se-*, *sup-*, *super-*, *superim-*, *trans-pōno*.

Gigno, *gēnīi*, *gēnitum*, to beget. So *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-gigno*.

Cāno, *cēcīni*, *cantum*, to sing. But the compounds have *inui* and *centum*; *as*, *accīno*, -*accīnīi*, *accentum*, to sing in

in concert. So *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *suc-cīno*; *ec-cīno*, and *oc-cāno*: *re-sīno* and *re-cāno*. But *oceanui*, *recanui*, are not in use.

Tēmno, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *Contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contemp̄si*, *contemptum*; or without the *p*, *contem̄si*, *contemptum*.

2. *Sperno*, *sprēvi*, *sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperro*.

Sterno, *strāvi*, *strātum*, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sub-sierno*.

Sīno, *sīvi*, or *sīi*, *sītum* to permit. So *desīno*, *desīvi*, *ostener desīi*, *desītum*, to leave off.

Līno, *līvi*, or *lēvi*, *lītum*, to anoint or daub. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *dē-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *superil-līno*.

Cerno, *crēvi*, seldom *crētum*; to see; to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *scērerno*.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo*, *carpsi*, *carp̄tum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame.—So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *præ-cep̄po*, *-cerpsi*, *-cerptum*.

Clēpo, *-psi*, *-ptum*, to steal. *Scalpo*, to scratch or engrave. So *Rēpo*, to creep: Ad-, v. *ar-*, *cor-*, *circum-*, *ex-scalpō*.

de-, *di-*, *e-*, *ir-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *Sculpo*, to grave or engrave. So *ex-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-rēpo*, *-psi*, *-ptum*. *Serpo*, to creep as a serpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo*; *strēpūi*, *strēpitum*, to make a noise. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-strēpo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*; to break. So *ab-*, *cor-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ir-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*; viz.

Cōquo, *cōxi*, *cōtum*, to boil! So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*; *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-cōquo*.

Linquo, *līqui*, —, to leave. The compounds have *lītum*; as, *relinquo*; *relīqui*, *relītum*; to forsake. So *de-*, and *dērē-linguo*.

RO.

1. *Quero* makes *quēsīvi*, *quēsītum*, to seek. So *ac-*, *en-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-quīro*, *-quisīvi*, *-quisītum*.

Tēro, *trūvi*, *trītum*, to wear, to bruise. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-tēro*.

Verro, *verri*, *versum*, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-son-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *præ-*, *re-verro*.

Cro, ussi, ussum, to bind. So *ād-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, pēr-, sub-ūro.*

Gero, gessi, gestum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, dī-, in-, prō-, rē-, fug-gēro.*

2. *Curro, cūcurri, cursum, to run.* So *ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, bē-, per-, præ-, prō-curro,* which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accūrri, or accūrri, &c.* - *Circum-, rē-, fuc-, trans-curro,* hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sēro, rēvis, sātūm, to sow.* The compounds which signify planting or sowing, have *sēvi, sūtum;* as, *consēro, consēvi, consitum, to plant together.* So *af-, circum-, dē-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, rē-, sub-, tran-sēro.*

*Sēro, — to knit, had anciently *sēui, sertum,* which its compounds still retain; as, *assēro, asserti, assertum, to claim.* So *con-, circum-, dē-, dis-, ēdis-, ex-, in-, inter-sēro.**

4. *Fūro, to be mad, wants both the preterite and supine.*

So *has sīvi, sītum; as,*

arcessō, arcessīvī, arcessitum, to call or send for. So *cā-pessō, to take; facesso, to do; tō go away; lācesso, to provoke.*

Exc. 1. *Vīso, vīsi, — to go to see, to visit.* So *in-, rē vīso.* *Incessō, incessīvī, — to attack, to seize.*

Exc. 2. *Depso, depsi, depstum, to knead.* So *con-, per-depsō.*

Pinsō, pinsīvī, or pinsī, pinsūm, pistum, or pincitum, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flectō, has flexi, flexum, to bow.* So *circum-, de-, in-, rē-, ritrō-flectō.*

Plectō, plexi, and plexui, plexum, to plait. So *implectō.*

Nectō, nesi, and nexui, nemum, to tie or knit. So *ad-, vel ani-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-nectō.*

Pectō, pexi, and pexui, pexum, to dress or comb. So *de-, ex-, re-pectō.*

2. *Mēto, messi, messum, to reap, mow, or cut down.* So *de-, e-, præ-mēto.*

3. *Pēto, pētīvī, pētitum, to seek, to pursue.* So *af-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, sup-pēto.*

Mitto, misi, missum, to send. So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, dē-,*

dē-, dī-, ē-, im-, inter-, intro-, ō-, per-, præ-, præter-, prō-, rē-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto.

Verto, verti, versum, to turn. So a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, re-, sub-, trans-vertō.

Sterto, stertui, — to snore. So de-sterto.

4. *Sisto, an active verb, to stop; has stīti, statum: but sisto, a neuter verb, to stand still, has stēti, statum, like sto. The compounds have stīti, and stītūm: as, assisto, astīti, astītūm, to stand by. So ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sista. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.*

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in vo, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum, to live. So ad-, circ., per-, pro-, re-, super-vivo.*

. *Solvo, solvi, solutum, to loose. So absolvo, to acquit, dis-, ex-, per-, re-solvo.*

Volvo, volvi, volutum, to roll. So ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, ē-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, sub-volvo.

2. *Texo, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in xo), has texui, textum. So at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-texo.*

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in i, and the supine in itum; as,

Mūnio, mūnivi, mūnitum, to fortify. So,

<i>Balbūtio, to stammer, to lisp, to flutter.</i>	<i>Glūtio, to swallow.</i>	<i>Mūgio, to belch.</i>
<i>Bullio, to boil or bubble.</i>	<i>Grunnio, to grunt.</i>	<i>Mūtio, to mutter.</i>
<i>Condio, to season.</i>	<i>Hinnio, to neigh.</i>	<i>Nutrio, to nourish.</i>
<i>Crōcio, to croak.</i>	<i>Impēdio, to entangle, to binder.</i>	<i>Obēdio, to obey.</i>
<i>Custōdio, to keep.</i>	<i>Insāno, to be mad.</i>	<i>Pāvio, to beat.</i>
<i>Dormio, to sleep.</i>	<i>Irrētio, to ensnare.</i>	<i>Pipio, to peep like a chicken.</i>
<i>Effūtio, to babble or blab out.</i>	<i>Lascīvio, to be wanton.</i>	<i>Pōlio, to polish.</i>
<i>Erūtio, to infest.</i>	<i>Lēnio, to ease or mitigate.</i>	<i>Prūrio, to itch, to tickle.</i>
<i>Expēdio, to disentangle, to free.</i>	<i>Līgūrio, to eat deliciously, to shatter up.</i>	<i>Pūnio, to punish.</i>
<i>Gannio, to yelp, or whine.</i>	<i>Lippio, to be dim-sighted.</i>	<i>Rēdimio, to bind.</i>
<i>Garrío, to prate.</i>	<i>Mollie, to soften.</i>	<i>Rūgio, to roar like a lion.</i>
		<i>Szvio, to rage.</i>
		<i>Sāgio.</i>

Sāgio, p̄r̄sāgio, to guess, to foresee.	Servio, to serve.	Tinnio, to tinkle,
Sārio, to weed, to rake.	Sitio, to thirst.	Tussio, to cough.
Scio, to know.	Sōpio, to lull asleep.	Vāgio, to cry or squeal.
Nescio; not to know.	Stibilio, to establish.	as à child.
Scātūrio, to gush out.	Superbio, to be proud.	Vestio, to clothe.
	Suffio, to perfume.	

Exc. 1. Singultio, singultīvi, singulum, to sob.

Sēpēlio, sēpēlivī, sepultum, to bury.

Vēnio, vēni, ventum, to come. So ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, post-, pre-, re-, sub-, super-vēnīo.

Vēneo, vēnīi, —— to be sold.

Sālio, sālūi, and sālii, saltum, to leap. The compounds have commonly sīlui, sometimes silii, or sīlīvi, and sul-tum; as, transīlio, transīlui, transīlii, and transīlīvi, trans-fultum, to leap over. So ab-, af-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, re-, sub-, super-silīo.

Exc. 2. Amicio, has amicui, amicum, seldom amixi, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, vinxi, vincum, to tie. So circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio.

Sancio, sanxi, sanctum; and sanctivi, sanctum, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. Cambio, campsi, campsum, to change money.

Sēpio, sepsi, septum, to hedge or inclose. So circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, p̄r̄-sēpīo.

Haurio, hausi, haustum, rarely hausum, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So de-, ex-haurio.

Sentio, sensi, sensum, to feel, to perceive, to think. So af-, con-, dis-, per-, p̄r̄-, sub-sentio.

Raucio, rausi, rausum, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. Sarcio, sarcī, sartum, to mend or repair. So ex-, re-sarcio.

Farcio, farsi, fartum, to cram. So con-farcio, ef-farcio, or ef-farcio; in-farcio, or in-farcio; re-farcio.

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, to prop or uphold. So cen-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio.

Exc. 5. The compounds of pārio, have pērui, pertum; as, àpērio, apērui, àpertum, to open. So òpērio, to shut, to cover. But compērio, has compēri, compertum, to know a thing for certain. Rēpērio, repēri, repertum, to find.

Exe. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cæcūtio, cæcūtīvi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestīvi*, to shew one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio, glōcīvi*, to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio, dementīvi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptīvi*, to play the fool. *Prōsilio, prosiliū*, to leap forth. *Fērōcio, ferūcīvi*, to be fierce.

Fērio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. *Se rēfērio*, to strike again.

(DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS.

| A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die. }

| A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crīmīnor*, I accuse; or I am accused. }

| Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense. }

| Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lētor, lētātus, lētāri*, to rejoice; *vēreor, vēritus, vērēri*, to fear; *funger, fundūs, fungi*, to discharge an office; *pōtior, pōtītus, pōtīri*, to enjoy, to be master of.)

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *lētor*, of the first conjugation, like *amor*:

Indicative Mode.

Pres. *Lētor*, I rejoice; *lētāris*, vel -āre, thou rejoicest, &c.

Imp. *Lētaber*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *lētabaris*, &c.

Perf. *Lētatus sum* vel *fui*,* I have rejoiced, &c.

Plū-perf. *Lētatus eram* vel *fueram*, I had rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lētabor*, I shall or will rejoice; *lētabēris*, or -abēre, &c.

Lētaturus sum, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

Subjunctive.

Pres. *Lēter*, I may rejoice; *lētēris*, or -ēre, &c.

Imp. *Lētarer*, I might rejoice; *lētārēris*, or -rēre, &c.

Perf. *Lētatus sim* vel *fuerim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.

Plū-perf. *Lētatus essem* vel *fuisse*, I might have rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lētatus fuero*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

Imperative.

* *Fui, fueram, &c.* are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs as *sum, eram, &c.*

Imperative.

Pres. *Lætare*, *vel -ātor*, rejoice thou; *lætator*, let him rejoice, &c.
Infinitive.

Pres. *Lætari*, to rejoice.

Perf. *Lætatus esse* *vel fuisse*, to have rejoiced.

Fut. *Lætaturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.

Lætaturus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

Pres. *Lætans*, rejoicing.

Perf. *Lætatus*, having rejoiced.

Fut. *Lætaturus*, about to rejoice.

Lætandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

Abominor, to abhor.

Adulor, to flatter.

Amulor, to vie with; to envy.

Altercor, to dispute, to make a repartee.

Apricor, to base in the sun.

Arbitror, to think.

Aspernor, to despise.

Averior, to dislike.

Auctiōnor, to sell by auction.

Aucūpor, & -o, to hant after.

Augūror, & -o, to forebode, or presage by augury.

Auspīcor, to take an omen, to begin.

Auxilior, to assist.

Bacchor, to rage, to revel, to riot.

Caluminior, to accuse falsely.

Cavillor, to scoff.

Caupōnor, to buckster, to retail.

Causor, to plead in excuse, to blame.

Circūlor, to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk.

Comessor, to revel.

Comitor, to accompany.

Commentor, to meditate on, or write

what one is to say.

Conciōnor, to bārange.

Conflictor, to struggle.

Cōnor, to endeavour.

Conspīcor, to spy, to see.

Contemplor, to view.

Convīvor, to feast.

Cornīcor, to chatter like a crow.

Crīminor, to blame.

Cunētor, to delay.

Dētestor, to abhor.

Dōmīnor, to rule.

Fpūlor, to feast.

Exsecrōr, to curse.

Fāmīlor, to serve.

Fērior, to keep holy-day.

Frustror, to disappoint.

Fūrōr, to steal.

Glōrīor, to boast.

Grātūlor, to rejoice, to wish one joy.

Grāvor, to grudge.

Hāriōlor, to conjecture.

Helluo, to guttle or gormandize, to waste.

Hortor, to encourage.

Hallūcīnor, to speak at random, to err.

Imāgīnor, to conceive.

Imītor, to imitate.

Indignor, to disdain.

Infīcīor, to deny.

Infectōr, to pursue, to inveigh against.

Insidīor, to lie in-wait.

Intérprētor, to explain.

Jāculōr, to dart.

Jōcor, to jest.

Lāmentōr, to bewail.

Lucrōr, to gain.

Luctōr, to wrestle.

Māchīnor, to contrive.

Mēdīcor, to cure.

Mēdītor, to muse or ponder.

Mercōr, to purchase.

Mētōr, to measure.

Mīnor, to threaten.

Mīrōr, to wonder.

Mīsērōr, to pity.

Mōdērōr, to rule.

Mōdūlor, to play at une.

Mōrigērōr, to humour.

Mōrōr, to delay.

Mūnērōr, to present.

Mūtuor, to borrow.

Nūgor, to trifle.

Obtestōr, to beseech.

Ödōrōr, to smell.

Öpērōr, to work.

Öpinōr, to think.

Öpitūlor, to help.

Oscūlor, to kiss.

Ötōr, to be at leisure.

Pālor, to stroll or fraggle.

Palpor,

Palpor, or -o, to stroke
or scratch.
Patroclor, to patronise.
Percontor, to inquire.
Peregrinor, to go about.
Periclitor, to be in danger.
Pignor, to pledge.
Piscor, to fish.
Populor, &c -o, to lay waste.
Prædor, to plunder.
Prælior, to fight.
Præstolor, to wait for.
Prævaricor, to go acrossed, to scuffle or pervert.

Præcor, to pray.
Depräcor, to entreat, to pray against.
Præcor, to ask, to woo.
Ræcordor, to remember.
Refrägor, to be against.
Riñor, to search.
Rixor, to scold or brawl.
Rusticor, to dwell in the country.
Scrutor, to search.
Sôlor, to comfort.
Spætior, to walk abroad.
Spæcûlor, to view, to spy.
Stipulor, to stipulate or agree.

Stomachor, to be angry.
Suâvior, to kiss.
Suffrâgor, to vote for one, to favour.
Suspicor, to suspect.
Tergiversor, to boggle, to put off.
Testor, to witness.
Tutor, to defend.
Vadot, to give bail, to forte to give bail.
Vagor, to wander.
Vaticinor, to prophesy.
Vélitor, to skirmish.
Vénor, to worship.
Venor, to hunt.
Versor, to be employed.
Vociferoz, to bawl.

In the Second Conjugation,

Mereor, meritus, to deserve. Pollicëor, pollicitus, to promise.
Tutor, tultus, or tatus, to defend. Liceor, licitus, to bid at an auction.

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplexor, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.
Reverteror, reversus, to return.

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, to flatter, to fatter. Partior, to divide.
Mentior, to lie. Sortior, to draw or cestriis.
Mölior, to attempt something difficult. Largior, to give liberally.

Part. perf. blanditus, mentitus, molitus, partitus, sortitus, largitus.

There are no exceptions in the First Conjugation.

EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

Ror, ratus, to think.

Misereor, misertus, or not contracted miseritus, to pity.

Fateor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of fateor have fessus; as, profiteor, professus, to profess. So confiteor, to confess, to own or acknowledge.

EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

Labor, lapsus, to slide. So al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-labor.

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Titor, usus, to use. So ab-, de-utor.

Löquor,

Löquor, loquūtus, or locūtus, to speak. So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, pr.e-, pro-*, *lōquor.*

Sēquor, sēquutus, or sērūtus, to follow. So *ās-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-*, *sēquor.*

Quērer, quēstus, to complain. So *con-, inter-, p̄rē-quērēr.*

Nitor, nīsus, or nīxus, to endeavour, to lean upon. So *ad- vel an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-*, *nītor:* but the compounds have oftener *nīsus.*

Pāciscor, pāctus, to bargain. So *de-pēciscor.*

Grādior, grāffus, to go. So *ug-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, p̄ie-, frater-, pro-, re-, retro-, fug-, super-, trans-gredior.*

Prōfīciscor, profēctus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nāctus, to get.

Pātior, passus, to suffer. So *per-pētior.*

Apis̄cor, aptus, to get. So *adipiscor, adeptus,* and *in-dipiscor, indeptus.*

Commīniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, frūitus, or fructus, to enjoy. So *per-fruor.*

Oblīviscor, oblītus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Mōrīor, mortuus, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, p̄rē-mōrīor.*

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-*, *nascor.*

ōrīor, ortus, ōrīri, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-*, *ōrīor.*

The three last form the future participle in *ītūrus;* thus *mōritūrus, nascitūrus, ōritūrus.*

EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

Mētior, mensus, to measure. So *ad-, com-, di-, e-, p̄rē-, re-*, *mētior.*

Ordīor, orsus, to begin. So *ex-, red-ordīors.*

Expērīor, expertus, to try.

Oppērīor, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

Vēscor, vēsci, to feed. Mēdeōr, mēderi, to beat.

*Liquor, liqui, to melt or be dis-
solved.* Rēmīscor, reminisci, to remember.

Iras̄cor, irasci, to be angry.

Ringer,

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog.

*Praevertor, praeverti, to get before,
to outrun.*

Diffitecor, diffiteri, to deny.

*Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to
take lodging.*

*Dēfētiscor, defētisci, to be weary,
or faint.*

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

1. IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum, eo, quic, volo, nōlo, mālo, fero, and fīs,* with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nōlo and mālo* being compounds of *volo*.

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, pre-, ob-, sub-, super-* *sum,* and *insum,* which wants the preterite; thus, *adsum, adfui, adesse,* &c.

PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as, Ind. Pr. *Prō-sum,* *pīōd-eū,* prod est; *pro-sūmūs,* &c.

Im. *Prōd ēram,* prod-eras, prod-erat; prod-eramus, &c.

Sub. Im. *Prod-essēm,* prod-essēs, prod-esset; prod-essēmus, &c.

Imperat. *Prōd-estō,* prod-est. Infinit. Pres. *Prōd-esse.*

In the other parts it is like *sum*: *Pro-sum, -sis, &c.* *Pro-fai, -sueram, &c.*

POSSUM is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Pōssum, pōtui, posse; To be able.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. *Pōssum,* pōtes, pōtest; possūmūs, pōtestis, possunt.

Im. *Pot-ēram,* -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Per. *Pot-uī,* -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.

Plu. *Pot-uēram,* -ueras, -uerat; -uerāmūs, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. *Pot-ēro,* -eris, -erit; -ērimūs, -eritis, -erunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. *Pōf-sum,* -ſis, -ſit; -ſīmūs, -ſītis, -ſint.

Im. *Pof-fem,* -ſes, -ſet; -ſēmūs, -ſetis, -ſent.

Per. *Pot-uētim,* -ueris, -uerit; -uerimūs, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. *Pot-uissem,* -uiffes, -uiffet; -uissēmūs, -uiffetis, -uissent.

Fut. *Pot-uēro,* -ueris, -uerit; -uerimūs, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. *Pōſſe.*

Per. *Pōtūſſe.*

The resp. wanting.

EO, īvi, ītum, īre, To go.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Eo, is, it; īmus, ītis, eunt.

Imp. Ibam, ības, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.

Per. Ibi, . . . ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, iverē.

Plu. Iveram, īveras, īverat; iveramus, īveratis, īverant.

Fut. Ibo, ibis, ibit; ībimus, ībitis, ībunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant.

Im. Irem, īres, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.

Per. Iverim, iveris, iverit; īverimus, īveritis, īverint.

Plu. Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.

Fut. Ivero, īveris, iverit; īverimus, īveritis, īverint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Pres. { I, īto; Site, īto; Pres. Ire.

{ Itō, īto; ītote, eunto. Perf. Ivisse.

Fut. Esse īturus, a; um.

Fuisse īturus.

Participles.

Gerunds.

Supines.

Pr. Iens, Gen. euntis. Eundum. 1. Itum.

Fut. Iturus, -a, -um. Eundi. 2. Itu.

Eurdo, &c. /

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ād-*, *āb-*, *ex-*, *āb-*, *rēd-*, *sūb-*, *pēr-*, *cō-*, *īn-*, *prā-*, *ante-*, *prōl-eo*: only in the perfect and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo*, *adū*, seldom *adīvi*, *adītum*, *adire*, to go to; perf. *Adū*, *adīsti* or *adīstī*, &c. *adīerāmī*, *adīerīmī*, &c. So likewise *VENEO*, *venī*, — to be sold, (compounded of *vēnum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO*, *īvi*, *ītum*, *īre*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form: thus, *it*, he is going; *īvit*, he is gone; *īverat*, he was gone; *īverit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *vēnit*, he is coming; *vēni*, he is come; *vēneret*, he was come; &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *ītū ab illo*, he is going; *vēnītū ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally: as, *periula adēntur*, are undergone. Cic. *Libri sibyllini adīti sunt*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedibus transīri potī*. Ques. *Inimicitia subeartur*. Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO,

VOLO, völui, velle, To will, or to be willing.

Indicative Mode.

- Pr. Völ-o, vis; vult; volūmus, vultis, volunt.
 Im. Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
 Per. Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.
 Pl. Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
 Fu. Vol-am, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

- Pr. Velim, velis, velit; velīmus, velītis, velint.
 Im. Velle, velles, vellet; vellēmus, vellestis, vellent.
 Per. Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
 Plu. Vol-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uissent.
 Fut. Vol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Velle.

Perf. Voluisse.

Participle.

Pres. Volens.

The rest not used.

NOLO, nolui, nolle, To be unwilling.

Indicative Mode.

- Pr. Nōlo, non-vis, non-vult; nolūmus, non-vultis, nolunt.
 Im. Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
 Per. Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.
 Plu. Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
 Fut. Nol-am, noles, nōlet; nōlemus, noletis, nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

- Pr. Nolim, nolis, nōlit; nolīmus, nōlītis, nolint.
 Im. Nollem, nolles, nōllet; nollemus, nōlletis, nollett.
 Per. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
 Plu. Nol-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uissent.
 Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Participle.

2. Sing. 2. Plur.

- Pr. { Noli, vel { nolite, vel Pr. Nolle. Pr. Nolens.
 Fu. { Nolito; { nolitote. Per. Noluisse. The rest wanting.

MALO, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

- Pr.** Māl-o, mavis, mavult; malūmus, mavultis, malunt.
Im. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.
Plu. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Mal-am, -es, -et: &c. *This is scarcely in use.*

Subjunctive Mode.

- Pr.** Malim, malis, malit; malīmus, malitis, malint.
Im. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Per. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu. Mal-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

- Pres.** Malle. **Perf.** Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, tūli, lātum, ferre, *To carry, to bring or suffer.*

A C T I V E V O I C E.

Indicative Mode.

- Pr.** Fēro, fers, fert; ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.
Im. Fer-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, -ere
Plu. Tul-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

- Pr.** Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.
Im. Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
Per. Tul-erim, -eris, erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Plu. Tul-issem, -isses, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.
Fut. Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

- Pr.** { Fer, fert: { ferte, ferunto. **Pr.** Ferre.
{ Ferto, fertote: { fertote, ferunto. **Per.** Tulisse.

Fut. Esse latus, a, um:
 Fuisse latus, a, um.

Participles.

- Pres.** Fērens,
Fut. Latus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

- Ferendum.
Ferendi.
Ferendo, &c.

Supines.

1. Lātum.
2. Latu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, lātus, ferri, *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fēror, ferris,
vel ferre, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.

Im. Fer-ebar, -ebaris,
vel -ebare, -batur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.

Perf. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.

Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.

Fut. Ferar, ferēris,
vel ferēre, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Ferar, feraris,
vel ferare, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.

Im. Ferrer, ferreris,
vel ferrere, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.

Perf. Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c..

Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissēm, &c.

Fut. Latus fuero, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pres. Ferre *vel* fertor, fertor; ferimini, ferunctor.

Infinitive.

Participles.

Pres. Ferri.

Perf. Latus, -a, -um.

Perf. Esse *vel* fuisse latus, -a, -um.

Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

Fut. Latum iri.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro*, *attūli*, *aīlatum*; *afīfero*, *abīstuli*, *ablatum*; *dīfēro*, *distūli*, *dīlatum*; *confēro*, *contūli*, *collatūm*; *infēro*, *intūli*, *illatūm*; *offēro*, *obtūli*, *oblatūm*; *effēro*, *extūli*, *clatūm*. So *circum-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *de-*, *pro-*, *ante-*, *prefēro*. In some writers we find *attīfēro*, *adtūli*, *aīlatūm*; *conlatūm*, *inlatūm*; *obfēro*, &c. for *affero*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nōlo* is contracted for *non vōlo*; *malo*, for *magis vōlo*; *fero*, *fers*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Fēror*, *ferris*, v. *ferre*, *fertar*, for *ferēris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco*, *dīceo*, and *fācio* are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dīc*, *dīce*, *fāc*, instead of *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

/ **FIO**, factus, fieri, *To be made or done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fio, sis, fit; sumus, siunt.

Im. Fiebam, siebas, siebat; siebamus, siuntis, siebant.

Perf. Factus sum, &c. factus, fui, &c.

Plu. Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.

Fut. Fiam, sies, fiet; siuntur, factis, fiunt.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mode.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

These three, *ōdi*, *cæpi*, and *mē:nīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification: thus,

Měmini,

/ *Mēmini*, I remember, or have remembered, *memineraṁ*,
-erim, -issem, -ero, -isse : Imperative, *memento*, *mementote*. /

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *opus sum*; and always *exodus*, *perosus sum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We say, *opus capit fieri*, or *caepit fieri*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present. *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nescio*, which is complete.

Füro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also, *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus, we say, *daris*, *datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say, *inquam*, I say, *forem*, I should be; *aufim*, contracted for *aufus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *ave* and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, or give me; *quaeso*, I pray.

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Pr.</i>	Aio,	ais,	ait:	—	—	aiunt.
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Aiebam,</i>	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
<i>Per.</i>	—	aifti,	—	—	—	—	
<i>Sub.</i>	<i>Per.</i>	—	aias,	aiat:	—	aiatis,	aiant.

Imperat. Ai. *Particip. Pres. Aiens.*

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Pr.</i>	- <i>Inquam</i> , - <i>quis</i> , - <i>quit</i> :	- <i>quimus</i> , - <i>quitis</i> , - <i>quiunt</i> .
<i>Im.</i>	—	—	<i>inquebat</i> :
<i>Per.</i>	—	<i>inquisti</i> ,	—
<i>Fut.</i>	—	<i>inquieris</i> , <i>inquiet</i> :	—

Imperat. Inque, inquito. *Particip.* Pr. Inquiens.

<i>Sub. Im.</i>	{	Förem, fores, foret:	foremus, foretis, forent.			
<i>Plu.</i>						
<i>Inf.</i>	Fore, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with <i>esse futurus</i> .					
<i>Sub. Pr.</i>	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit:	---	---	---
<i>Per.</i>	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit:	---	---	faxint.
<i>Fut.</i>	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit:	---	faxitis,	saxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *saxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

<i>Imper.</i>	Ave <i>vel</i> aveto ; plur. avete <i>vel</i> avetote.	<i>Inf.</i> avere.
—	Salve <i>v.</i> salveto ; — salvete <i>v.</i> salvetote.	— salvare.

Indic. Fut. —— Salvebis.

Imperat. second pers. sing. Cedo, *plur.* cedite.

Indic. Pres. first pers. sing. Quæso, plur. quæsumus.

Most of the other Defects

Molt of the other Defective verbs are but single to be found, but among the posts: as *infst*, *be*,

to be found, but among the poets; as, *inſit*, he begins; *deſit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *ſi*; as, *ſis*, for *ſi viſ*, if thou wilt; *ſultis*, for *ſi vultis*; *fodes*, for *ſi audes*, equivalent to *queſo*, I pray; *capſis*, for *cape ſi viſ*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dēcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *ēvenit*, it happens;

<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>
Ind. <i>Pr.</i> Delectat,	Dēcet,	Centingit,	Ēvenit,
<i>Im.</i> Delectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat,
<i>Per.</i> Delectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Ēvenit,
<i>Plu.</i> Delectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evenerat,
<i>Fut.</i> Delectabit.	Decebit.	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub. <i>Pr.</i> Dēlectet,	Dēceat,	Contingat,	Ēveniat,
<i>Im.</i> Delectaret,	Decēret,	Contingēret,	Eveniret,
<i>Per.</i> Delectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evenerit,
<i>Plu.</i> Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
<i>Fut.</i> Delectaverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
Inf. <i>Pr.</i> Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingēre,	Ēvenīre,
<i>Per.</i> Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigīse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *vēnītur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind. <i>Pr.</i> Pugnātur,	Fāvētur,	Curritur,	Vēnītur;
<i>Im.</i> Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur,	Veniebatur,
<i>Per.</i> Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
<i>Plu.</i> Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
<i>Fut.</i> Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub. <i>Pr.</i> Pugnetur,	Faveatur,	Curritur,	Veniatur,
<i>Im.</i> Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curreretur,	Veniretur,
<i>Per.</i> Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
<i>Plu.</i> Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
<i>Fut.</i> Pugnatum fue- rit.	Fautum fue- rit.	Cursum fue- rit.	Ventum fue- rit.
Inf. <i>Pr.</i> Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Venīri,
<i>Per.</i> Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
<i>Fut.</i> Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. I. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *dēlectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the sponces, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pāni-*

tens, -dum, -dus, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum,* Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *p̄nitet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *miseret*, it pities; *p̄get*, it irketh; *p̄det*, it shameth; *līcet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *lūbet*, it pleafeth; *tædet*, it wearieth; *līquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *miseratum est*; *p̄get*, *piguit*, or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *puduit*, or *puditum est*; *līcet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tædet*, *tædit*, *tæsum est*, oftener *pertæsum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations:

In the first, *Jūvat*, *speciat*, *vācat*, *stat*, *confiat*, *præstat*, *refiat*, &c.

In the second, *Appāret*, *attīnet*, *pertīnet*, *dēbet*, *dōlet*, *nōcet*, *lātet*, *līquet*, *pātet*, *plācet*, *displīcet*, *sēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accīdit*, *incīpit*, *desīnit*, *suffīcit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also Irregular verbs, *Eſt*, *obest*, *prōdest*, *pōteſt*, *intēreſt*, *supēreſt*; *fīt*, *pratērit*, *nequit*, and *nequītur*, *sūbit*, *consert*, *rēfert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgūrat*, *fulmīnat*, *tōnat*, *grandīnat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *advesperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mībi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleaseſt, &c. *pugnatur a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur*, *venitur a me*, *a te*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: Thus we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So, we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contigi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mībi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *affentio* and *affentior*, to agree; *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; *lavō*, *lavas*, *lavāre*: and *lavo*, *lavis*, *lavāre*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as, *Ferveo*, *ferves*, and *fervo*, *fervis*, to boil.

Fulgeo, *fulges*, and *fulgo*, *fulgis*, to shine.

Strideo, strides, and strido, stridis, to make a hissing noise, to creak.

Tueor, tuēris, and tuor, tuēris, to defend.

To these add *tergeo, terges*; and *terga, tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, fodis, fodere, and fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig.

Sallo, fallis, fallere, and fallio, fallis, fallire, to salt.

Arcessō, -is, arcessere, and arcessio, arcessire, to send for.

Morior, morēris, mori, and morior, morīris, morīri, to die.

Sō Oriōr, orēris, and orior, orīris, orīri, to rise.

Potior, potēris, and potior, potīris, potīri, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cīo, cīes, cīre*; and *cīo, cīs, cīre*, to rouse; whence *accīre* and *accītus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sūm*; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis or es, edit or est*; — — *editis or estis* — —

Sub. Imperf. *Eiderem or essem, ederes or esses*, &c.

Imp. *Ede or es, edito or estā*; *edite or este*; *editote or estote*.

Inf. Pres. *Edare or esse*.

Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur or estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggēro, -as, to heap up.

Appello, -as, to call.

Compello, -as, to address.

Colligo, -as, to bind.

Consterno, -as, to astonish.

Effēro, -as, to enrage.

Fundo, -as, to found.

Mando, -as, to command.

Obsēro, -as, to look.

Vōlo, -as, to fly.

Aggēro, -is, to bring together.

Appello, -is, to drive to, to arrive.

Compello, -is, to drive together.

Colligo, -is, to gather together.

Consterno, -is, to strew.

Effēro, -fers, to bring out.

Fundo, -is, to pour out.

Mando, -is, to chew.

Obsēro, -is, to beset.

Vōlo, vis, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cōlo, -as, to strain.

Dīco, -as, to dedicate.

Edīco, -as, to train up.

Lēgo, -as, to send on an embassy.

Vādo, -as, to wade.

Cōlo, -is, to till.

Dīco, -is, to say.

Edūco, -is, to lead forth.

Lēgo, -is, to read.

Vādo, -is, to go.

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite :

Aeo, acui, *to be sour.*
Cresco, cr̄evi, *to grow.*
Frigeo, frixi, *to be cold.*
Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*
Luceo, luxi, *to shine.*
Paveo, p̄avi, *to be afraid.*
Pendeo, p̄pendi, *to hang.*

Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*
Cerno, cr̄evi, *to see.*
Frigo, frixi, *to fly.*
Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*
Lugeo, luxi, *to mourn.*
Pasco, p̄avi, *to feed.*
Pendo, p̄pendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the supine :

Cresco, cr̄tum, *to grow.*
Maneo, mansum, *to stay.*
Sto, statum, *to stand.*
Succenseo, censum, *to be angry.*
Teneo, tentum, *to hold.*
Vero, versum, *to sweep.*
Vineo, victum, *to overcome.*

Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*
Maneo, mansum, *to abide.*
Sisto, statum, *to stop.*
Succendo, -censum, *to kindle.*
Tendo, tentum, *to stretch out.*
Verto, versum, *to turn.*
Vivo, victum, *to live.*

The OBSoLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e*; as, *audibam*, *scibam*; for *audibam*, *sciebam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *iber* in the passive voice: as, *dormibo*, *dormilor*, for *dormiam*, *dormier*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM*: as, *edim*, for *edam*; *duim* for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levassim*, *levasso*, for *levaverim*, *levavero*; *capsim*, *capsa*, for *ceperim* *cepero*: Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levassere* for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural; as *famino*, for *fare*; and *progr̄diminor* for *progr̄dianai*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *farier*, for *fari*; *dicier* for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos dictorum esse*, for *dicturos*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

DERIVATION and COMPOSITION of VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Derominative*; as, *Cano*, to sing; *Iudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *op̄eror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cana*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance,

semblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patriſſo*, *Græcor*, *būbūlo*, *cornicor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Græcian, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *īto*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamīto*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrīto*; *verto*, *verīto*; *dormio*, *dormīto*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minīor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noscito* from *nosco*; *scitor*, or rather *sciscitor*, from *scio*; *pavīto*, from *paveo*; *sector*, from *sequor*, *loquitor*, from *loquor*. So *querīto*, *fundīto*, *agitō*, *fuitō*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *surre*, *cursō*, *cursīto*; *pello*, *pulsō*, *pulsīto*, or by contraction *pultō*; *op̄io*, *capto*, *captīto*; *cans*, *canto*, *cantīto*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensīto*; *dico*, *dictō*, *dictīto*; *gero*, *gestō*, *gestīto*; *jacio*, *iacō*, *iacīto*; *venio*, *ventīto*; *mutio*, *mussō*, (for *mutīto*) *mussīto*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE* Verbs mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasto*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hicisco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcisco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE* Verbs signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *cenātūrio*, I desire to sup, from *cenātu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *ēsūrio*, *-īvi*, *-ītum*, to desire to eat; *partūrio*, *-īvi*, —, to be in travail; *nuptūrio*, *-īvi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *santillo*, *fortillo*, *-are*, I sing, I sup a little: To these some add *albīco* and *cendīco*, *-are*, to be or to grow whitish; also *nigrīco*, *fuscīco*, and *tellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intensive*; as *Capeſſo*, *f.aceſſo*, *petiſſo* or *petiſſa*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of these simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fūto*, *fendo*, *ſpecio*, *grus*, &c. The component parts usually remain

remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added ; as *proeo*, for *pro-eo* : or taken away ; as, *asporto*, *omito*, *trado*, *pejero*, *pergo*, *debo*, *praebo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transde*, *perjurio*, *perrego*, *dhibeo*, *præhibeo*, &c. So *demo*, *proto*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified to take, or to take away. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed : as, *danno*, *contieno* ; *calco*, *concilio* ; *ledo*, *collido* ; *audio*, *obedio*, &c. *Affero*, *afero*, *collando*, *inflico*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *conlaudo*, *implico*, &c.

P A R T I C I P L E.

/ A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time. /

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in Latin gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in English, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives ; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come ; only participles in *-us* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

/ Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active ; as, *Amans*, loving ; *amaturus*, about to love ; and the perfect and future passive ; as, *amatus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved. /

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice ; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence ; as, he having loved, *quam amavisset*, &c.

/ Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles ; as, *Sedans*, *seffurus* ; *stans*, *staturus*. /

From some Neuter Verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense ; as, *Erratus*, *fessinatus*, *juratus*, *laboratus*, *vigilatus*, *effatus*, *sudatus*, *triumphatus*, *regnatus*, *decursus*, *desitus*, *emeritus*, *emersus*, *obitus*, *placitus*, *successus*, *occidens*, &c. and also of the future in *-us* ; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *carendus*, *dormiendus*, *erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Venero* has no participle : *Fido*, only *filens* and *ffus* ; *soleo*, *solens* and *solitus* ; *vipulo*, *vapulans* and *vapulaturus* ; *Gaudeo*, *guadens*, *gatisus*, and *gavisurus* ; *Audeo*, *audens*, *aufus*, *aufurus*, *astendens*. *Aufus* is used both in an active and passive sense ; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas, a.sique politi*. Virg. Æn. vi. 624.

/ Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles ; as,

Loquens, speaking ; *locutūrus*, about to speak ; *locutus*, having spoken ; *loquendus*, to be spoken : *Dignans*, vouchsafing ; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe ; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed ; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense ; as, *Abominatus*, *conatus*, *confessus*, *adortus*, *amplexus*, *blanditus*, *largitus*, *mentitus*, *oblitus*, *testatus*, *veneratus*, &c.

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition : as, *Insciens*, *insperans*, *indicens*, for, *non dicens*, *inopīnans*, and *necopīnans*, *immērens* ; *Illæsus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incustoditus*, *immetatus*, *impunitus*, *imparatus*, *inequitatus*, *incomptus*, *indemnatus*, *indotatus*, *incorruptus*, *interritus*, and *imperterritus*, *intestatus*, *inausus*, *inopinatus*, *inultus*, *incensus*, for *non census*, not registered ; *infectus*, for *non factus*, *invitus*, for *non visus*, *indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo* ; *infactus*, from *inficio* ; *invitus* from *invideo* ; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

{ If from the signification of a Participle we take away time, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison ; as,

Amanus, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus* ; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus* : or a substantive ; as, *Præfetus*, a commander or governor ; *consonans*, f. sc. *literæ*, a consonant ; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent ; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together ; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east ; *occidens*, m. the west ; *dictum*, a saying ; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although resembling participles are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs ; as, *clatus*, *barbatus*, *cordatus*, *caudatus*, *crisatus*, *auratus*, *pellitus*, *turritus* ; *asflatus*, *cormitus*, *nasitus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus*, *æratus*, *argentatus*, *ferratus*, *plumbatus*, *gypsatus*, *calceatus*, *clypeatus*, *galeatus*, *tunicatus*, *larvatus*, *palliatus*, *lymphatus*, *purpuratus*, *præstatutus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinitus*, having long hair, *peritus*, skilled, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action ; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much ; *Sall. Jug.* 60. and 101. ; *Liv.* xxv. 13. So *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

{ GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed ; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative. /

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the

the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delecto legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delecto lectio Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciendum*, *di*, *do*, *dus*; *experiendum*, *petiendum*, *gerendum*, *petundum*, *dicendum*, &c., for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *cocum non vapulatum*, *du-dum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, v. *uerberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

A D V E R B.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote Circumstance; and those which denote Quality, Manner, &c.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of Place, Time, and Order.

1. Adverbs of Place, are fivefold, namely, such as signify,

1. Motion or rest in a place.	Huc,	Hither.
Ubi?	Where?	Illuc,
Hic,	Here.	Isthuc,
Illic,		Intro,
Isthic,	{ There.	Fōras,
Ibi,		Ex,
Intus,	Within.	Aliud,
Fōris,	Without.	Aliquid,
Ubique,	Every where.	Eodem,
Nusquam,	No where.	
Alicubi,	Some where.	Quorsum?
Alibi,	Else where.	Versus,
Ubivis,	Any where.	Horsum,
Ibidem,	In the same place.	Illorsum,
		Sursum,
		Deorsum,
		Antrorsum,
2. Motion to a place.		
Quo?	Whither?	Retrosum,

Retrorsum,	<i>Backward.</i>	Sicunde,	<i>If from any place.</i>
Dextrorsum,	<i>Towards the right.</i>	Utrinque,	<i>On both sides.</i>
Sinistrorsum,	<i>Towards the left.</i>	Sūperne,	<i>From above.</i>
4. Motion from a place.		Inferne,	<i>From below.</i>
Unde?	<i>Whence?</i>	Cœlitus,	<i>From heaven.</i>
Hinc,	<i>Hence.</i>	Funditus,	<i>From the ground.</i>
Illinc,			5. Motion through or by a place.
Isthinc,	{ <i>Tbence.</i>	Quà?	<i>Which way?</i>
Inde,		Hæc,	<i>This way.</i>
Indidem,	<i>From the same place.</i>	Illac,	{ <i>That way.</i>
Aliunde,	<i>From else where.</i>	Isthac,	
Alicunde,	<i>From some place.</i>	Alià,	<i>Another way.</i>

2. Adverbs of Time are threefold, namely, such as signify,

1. Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.

Nunc,	<i>Now.</i>
Hödie,	<i>To day.</i>
Tunc,	{ <i>Then.</i>
Tum,	
Héri,	<i>Yesterday.</i>
Dūdum,	{ <i>Heretofore.</i>
Pridem,	
Pridie,	<i>The day before.</i>
Nūdius tertius,	<i>Three days ago.</i>
Nūper,	<i>Lately.</i>
Jamjam,	{ <i>Presently.</i>
Mox,	
Stātim,	<i>Immediately.</i>
Prōtinus,	<i>By and by.</i>
Illico,	<i>Instantly.</i>
Cras,	<i>Straightway.</i>
Postridie,	<i>To-morrow.</i>
Pērendie,	<i>The day after.</i>
Nondum,	<i>Two days hence.</i>
Quando?	<i>Not yet.</i>
Aliquando,	<i>When?</i>
Nonnunquam,	{ <i>Sometimes.</i>
Interdum,	
Semper,	<i>Ever, always.</i>

Nunquam,	<i>Never.</i>
Intērim,	<i>In the mean time.</i>
Quotidie,	<i>Daily.</i>

2. Continuance of time.

Düu,	<i>Long.</i>
Quamdüu?	<i>How long?</i>
Tamdiu,	<i>So long.</i>
Jamdiu,	
Jamdūdum,	{ <i>Long ago.</i>
Jampridem,	

3. Vicissitude or repetition of time.

Quoties?	<i>How often?</i>
Sæpe,	<i>Often.</i>
Rārō,	<i>Seldom.</i>
Töties,	<i>So often.</i>
Aliquoties,	<i>For several times.</i>
Vicissim,	
Alernatim,	{ <i>By turns.</i>
Rursus,	
Itērum,	{ <i>Again.</i>
Sūbinde,	
Identidem,	{ <i>Ever and anon, now and then.</i>
Sēmel,	<i>Once.</i>
Bis,	<i>Twice.</i>
Ter,	<i>Thrice.</i>
Quäter,	<i>Four times, &c.</i>

3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde,	<i>Then.</i>	Dēnique,	<i>Finally.</i>
Deinde,	<i>After that.</i>	Postremò,	<i>Lastly.</i>
Dehinc,	<i>Henceforth.</i>	Prīmò, -ūm,	<i>First.</i>
Porro,	<i>Moreover.</i>	Secundò, -ūm,	<i>Secondly.</i>
Deinceps,	<i>So forth.</i>	Tertiò, -ūm,	<i>Thirdly.</i>
Dēnuo,	<i>Of aev.</i>	Quartò, -ūm,	<i>Fourthly, &c.</i>

II. Adverbs denoting **QUALITY**, **MANNER**, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. **QUALITY**, simply ; as, *bene*, well ; *malè*, ill ; *fortiter*, bravely ; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. **CERTAINTY** ; as, *profectò*, certè, *sānè*, *plānè*, *ne*, *ūtique*, *īta*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes ; *quidni*, why not ? *omnīno*, certainly.

3. **CONTINGENCE** ; as, *fortè*, *forsan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. **NEGATION** ; as, *non baud*, not ; *nequāquam*, not at all ; *neutriquam*, by no means ; *mīnime*, nothing less.

5. **PROHIBITION** ; as, *ne*, not.

6. **SWEARING** ; as, *bercle*, *pol*, *edēpol*, *mēcastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. **EXPLAINING** ; as, *utpōte*, *vīdēlicet*, *scīlicet*, *nīmīrum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. **SEPARATION** ; as, *scōrsum*, apart ; *sēparātim*, separately ; *sigillatim*, one by one ; *vīritim*, man by man ; *oppidātim*, town by town, &c.

9. **JOINING TOGETHER** ; as, *sīmul*, *unā*, *pārīter*, together ; *gēnerāliter*, generally ; *ūnīversaliter*, universally ; *plērumque*, for the most part.

10. **INDICATION or POINTING out** ; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. **INTERROGATION** ; as, *cur*, *quāre*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore ? *num*, *an*, whether ? *quōmādo*, *qui*, how ? To which add, *Ubi*, *quō*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quā*, *quando*, *quamdiu*, *quæstius*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. **EXCESS** ; as, *Valde*, *maximè*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *atmōdum*, *oppidō*, *perquam*, longè, greatly, very much, exceedingly ; *nīmis*, *nīmīum*, too much ; *prorsus*, *penitus*, *omnīno*, altogether, wholly ; *magis*, more ; *melius*, better ; *pījus*, worse ; *fortiūs*, more bravely : and *optimè*, best ; *pīssimè*, worst ; *fortissimè*, most bravely ; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. **DEFECT** ; as, *Firme*, *fērē*, *prōpemōdum*, *pēnē*, almost ; *pārum*, little ; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.

3. **PREFERENCE** ; as, *pōtiūs*, *sātiūs*, rather ; *pētīssimūn*, *prēcipue*, *prēsērtim*, chiefly, especially ; *im*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. **LIKENESS or EQUALITY** ; as, *ītu*, *sic*, *ādeō*, so ; *ut*, *ūti*, *sicut*, *sicuti*, *velut*, *veluti*, *ceu*, *tanguam*, *quasi*, as, as if ; *quāmadmōdum*, even as ; *sātis*, enough ; *ītīdem*, in like manner ; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. **UNLIKENESS or UNEQUALITY** ; as, *alīter*, *secus*, otherwise ; *aliōqui* or *aliōquin*, else ; *nēdum*, much more or much less.

6. **ABATĒMENT** ; as, *sensim*, *peulātim*, *pēdētentim*, by degrees, piecemeal ; *vix*, scarcely ; *agre*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. **EXCLUSION** ; as, *tantūm*, *sōlīm*, *modō*, *tantāmmādo*, *dīntaxat*, *āīnum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, and COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in **TIM** or **TUS**; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds, generally; *speciatim*, vicariously, gregariously; *radicitus*, from the root, &c. 2. From Adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in **E**; as, *liberè*, freely; *plenè*, fully: Some in **O**, **UM**, and **TER**; as, *falsò*, *tantum*, *graviter*: A few in **A**, **ITUS**, and **IM**; as, *rectà*, *antiquitùs*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primum*, v. -**ò**; *pure*, -*iter*; *certè*, -**ò**; *cartè*, -*tim*; *humane*, -*iter*, -*itus*; *publicè*, *publicitùs*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in **TER**, seldom in **E**; as, *turpiter*, *feliciter*, *acriter*; *pariter*; *facile*, *repente*: one in **O**, *omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken Adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidi*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multam* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud*, *high*, &c. for *loudly*, *highly*, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco*, *optatò advenis*. sc. *tempore*; *bac*, sc. *viâ*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *ist*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as from *ille*, *illuc*, *illuc*, *illorūsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So from *quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, and *quà*. Also of time: thus, *quando*, *quamdiu*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cæsim*, with the edge: *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cædo*, *fungo*, *stringo*: *amanter*, *properanter*, *dubitanter*; *distantè*, *emendatè*; *meritò*, *inopinato*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus*, *intro*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *sultus*, from *sub*, &c.

[Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *er*; as, *durè*, *facilè*, *acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *duriùs*, *faciliùs*, *acriùs*: The *superlative*, in *ime*; as, *durissimè*, *facillimè*, *acerrimè*.]

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too: as, *benè*, *meliùs*, *optimè*; *male*, *pejùs*, *pessimè*; *parùm*, *minùs*, *minimè*, & -*um*; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*; *propè*, *propriùs*, *proximè*; *ocùs*, *ocissime*; *priùs*, *primò*, -*um*; *nuper*, *nuperrimè*; *novè*, & *noviter*, *novissimè*; *meritò*, *meritissimò*; &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sapè*, *sepiùs*, *sepiissimè*; *penitùs*, *penitiùs*, *penitissimè*; *satis*, *setiùs*; *secus*, *seciùs*; &c. *Magis*, *maxime*; and *potius*, *potissimùm*, want the positive.

Adverbs in English are not varied by comparison, except some few of them, particularly irregulars; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*; *well*, *better*, *best*; *much*, *more*, *most*, &c.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *tantopere*, *multimodis*,

multimōdis, omnimōdis, quomōdo, quare; of postero dīc; magno opere, &c. Illicet, scilicet, videlicet, of ire, scire, videre, licet; illīco, of in loco: quorsum, of quo versum; commīnus, hand to hand, of cum or con and manus; emīnus, at a distance, of e and manus; quorsum, of quo versum; denuo, anew, of de novo; quin, why not, but, of qui ne; cur, of cui rei; pedentim, step by step, as it were pedem tendendo; perendie, for perempto die; nimīrum, of ne, i.e. non and mirum; antea, postea, præterea, &c. of ante and ea, &c. Ubivis, quovis, undelibet, quousque, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, desūper, insuper, quamobrem, &c. of ubi, and vis, &c. nudiūstertius, of nunc dies tertius: intentidem, of idem et idem; impræsentiarum, i.e. in tempore rerum præsentium, &c.

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, sapienter, wisely, for cum sapientia; hic, for in hoc loco; semper, for in omni tempore; semel, for una vice; bis, for duabus vicibus; Mehercule, for Hercules me juvet, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other: as, ubi, where or when; inde, from that place, from that time, after that, next; hactenus, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either past, present or future; as, jūn, already, now, by and by; olim, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, esse peregrē, to be abroad; ire peregrē, to go abroad; redire peregrē, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with cunque, answer to the English adjection so ever; as, ubi-ubi, or ubicunque, wheresoever; quoquā, quocunque, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words; as, quotquot, or quotcunque, how many soever; quantusquantus, or quantuscunque, how great soever; utut or utcunque, however or howsoever, &c. In English, the adverbs here, there, and where, when joined to certain participles or prepositions, as, to, of, by, with, in, &c. have the signification of pronouns; as, hereof, the same with of this; thereof, the same with of that; whereof, of which, &c.

PREPOSITION.

| A Preposition is an indeclinable word which shews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.)

Ad,	To.	Cis,	{	On this side.
Apud,	At.	Citra,		
Ante,	Before.	Circa,	{	About.
Adversus,	{ Against, towards.	Circum,		
Adversum,		Erga,	{	Towards.
Contra,	Against.	Extra,		

Inter,

Inter,	<i>Between, among.</i>	Pēnes,	<i>In the power of.</i>
Intra,	<i>Within.</i>	Post,	<i>After.</i>
Infra,	<i>Beneath.</i>	Pōne,	<i>Behind.</i>
Juxta,	<i>Nigh to.</i>	Sēcus,	<i>By, along.</i>
Ob,	<i>For.</i>	Sēcundum,	<i>According to.</i>
Propter,	<i>For, bard by.</i>	Supra,	<i>Above.</i>
Per,	<i>By, through.</i>	Trans,	<i>On the farther side.</i>
Præter,	<i>Besides, except.</i>	Ultra,	<i>Beyond.</i>

¶ The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen ; namely,

A,	{	<i>From, or by.</i>	De;	<i>Of, concerning.</i>
Ab,			E,	<i>Of, out of.</i>
Abs,	{	<i>Without.</i>	Ex,	
Absque,			Pro,	<i>For.</i>
Cum,	{	<i>With.</i>	Præ,	<i>Before.</i>
Clam;			Pālam;	<i>With the knowledge of.</i>
Cōram,	{	<i>Without ihe know- ledge of.</i>	Sinc,	<i>Without.</i>
			Tēnus,	<i>Up to, as far as.</i>

¶ These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative :

In, In, into, Sub, Under. Sūper, Above. Subter, Beneath. ¶

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after ; as, *cum*, when joined with *me*, *te*, *se*, and sometimes with *quo*, *qui*, and *quibus* : thus, *mecum*, *tecum*, &c. *Tenus* is always placed after ; as, *mento*, *tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque* ; and *ward*, in English ; as, *toward*, *eastward*, &c.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs ; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs ; as, *to go in*, *to go out*, *to look to*, &c.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together ; as, *Ex ad-
versus cum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem
quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit*, i. e. usque in eum diem, Cic. *Supplicatio iudicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob.* i. e. ab eo die, Liv. *Ex ante priore Idus Septembbris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions ; as, *propalam*, *protinus*, *insuper*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification : as, *adeo*, to go to : *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. IN joined with adjectives generally denotes privation ; as, *irfidus*, unfaithful : but when joined with verbs, increases their signification ; as, *induro*, to harden greatly. In some words in has two contrary senses ; as, *invocatus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrēnatus*, *immutatus*, *insuetus*, *impensus*, *inbumatus*, *intentatus*, &c. 2. PER commonly increases the

signification ; as, *Percārus, percēler, percomis, percuriōsus, perdifficilis, perelēgans, pergrātus, pergrāvis, perhospitālis, perillūstris, perlēetus, &c.* very dear, very swift, &c. 3. *Præ* sometimes increases ; as, *Præclārus, prædīvēs, prædulcīs, prædūrus, præpinguis, prævalidus ; prævāleo, præpolleo* ; and also *Ex* ; as, *Exclāmo, exaggēro, exaugeo, exculefacio, extenuo, exhibāro* ; but *ex* sometimes denotes privation, as, *Exsanguis, bloodless, pale : excors, exanimis, -mo, &c.* 4. *Suñ* often diminishes ; as, *Subalbidus, subabsurdus, subamārus, subdulcis, subgrandis, subgrāvis, subniger* ; &c. a little white or whitish, &c. *De* often signifies downward ; as, *Decido, decurro, degrāvo, despicio, delābor* : sometimes increases ; as, *Deāmo, demiror* ; and sometimes expresses privation ; as, *Demens, decōlor, deformis, &c.*

Obs. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am, di* or *dis, re, se, con*, which are commonly called, *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words : however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded ; thus,

<i>Am,</i>	<i>round about.</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>Ambio,</i>	<i>to surround.</i>
<i>Di,</i>	<i>asunder.</i>		<i>Divello,</i>	<i>to pull asunder.</i>
<i>Dis,</i>	<i>asunder.</i>		<i>Distrāho,</i>	<i>to draw asunder.</i>
<i>Re,</i>	<i>again.</i>		<i>Rēlēgo,</i>	<i>to read again.</i>
<i>Se,</i>	<i>aside or apart.</i>		<i>Sēpōno,</i>	<i>to lay aside.</i>
<i>Con,</i>	<i>together.</i>		<i>ConcreSCO,</i>	<i>to grow together.</i>

INTERJECTION.

¶ An Interjection is an indeclinable word thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind. ¶

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages ; as, *Oh ! Ah !*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them ; thus,

1. JOY ; as, *evax, hey, brave, io !*
2. GRIEF ; as, *ab, hei, heu, ebeu ! ah, alas, woes me !*
3. WONDER ; as, *papæ ! O strange ! vab ! hah !*
4. PRAISE ; as, *euge ! well done !*
5. AVERSION ; as, *apäge ! away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush !*
6. EXCLAIMING ; as, *Ob, prob ! O !*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR ; as, *atat ! ha, aha !*
8. IMPRECATION ; as, *væ ! wo, pox on't !*
9. LAUGHTER ; as, *ba, ba, be !*
10. SILENCING ; as, *au, 'ft, pax ! silence, hush, 'ft !*
11. CALLING ; as, *eh, ehōdum, io, ho ! so, ho, ho, O !*

12. DERISION ; as, *bui!* away with !

13. ATTENTION ; as, *bem!* ha !

Some interjections denote several different passions : thus, *Vob* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections ; as, *Malum!* with a mischief ! *Infandum!* O shame ! *Fy, fy!* *Miseram,* O wretched ! *Nefas!* O the villany !

C O N J U N C T I O N .

/ A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together. /

Thus, *You* and *I*, and *the boy*, *read Virgil*, is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed ; *I read Virgil*; *You read Virgil*; *The boy reads Virgil*. In like manner, " *You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid*," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes :

1. COPULATIVE ; as, *et*; *ac*, *atque*, *que*, and ; *etiam*, *quoque*, *item*, also ; *cum*, *tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec*, *nēque*, *nē*, *neve*, neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE ; as, *aut*, *ve*, *vel*, *seu*, *sive*, either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE ; as, *etsi*, *etiam si*, *tamen si*, *licet*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE ; as, *sed*, *verum*, *autem*, *at*, *q̄d*, *atqui*, but ; *tamen*, *attamen*, *veruntamen*, *verum enim vero*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL ; as, *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, for ; *quia*, *quippe*, *quoniam*, because ; *quod*, that, because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL ; as, *ergo*, *ideo*, *igitur*, *idcirco*, *itaque*, therefore ; *qua propter*, *quocirca*, wherefore ; *proinde*, therefore ; *cum*, *quum*, seeing, since ; *quandoquidem*, forasmuchas.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE ; as, *ut*, *uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL ; as, *si*, *sin*, if ; *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, provided, upon condition that ; *siquidem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIONAL or RESTRICTIVE ; as, *ni*, *nisi*, unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE ; as, *faltem*, *certe*, at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE ; as, *an*, *anne*, *num*, whether ; *ne*, *anno*, whether, not ; *necne*, or, not.

12. EXPLETIVE ; as, *autem*, *vero*, now, truly ; *quidem*, *equidem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE ; as, *deinde*, thereafter ; *denique*, finally ; *insper*, moreover ; *ceterum*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE ; as, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nempe*, *nimirum*, &c. to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both adverbs and conjunctions. Thus, *an*, *anne*, &c. are either interrogative

ative adverbs : as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, suspensive conjunctions ; as, *Nescio an scribat,* I know not if he writes..

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence ; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed,* *verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca; quare, si, siquidem, præterquam;* &c. : some stand in the second-place ; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim* : and some may indifferently be put either first or second ; as *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quamquam, tamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, id, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi,* &c. Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositivæ, Subjunctive, and Common.* To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne,* which are always joined to some other word; and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable ; as in the following verse,

Indocilusque pilæ, discive, trachive, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation ; thus,

Arbutos fetus montanaque fraga legebant. Ovid.

SENTENCES.

SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together ; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another ; namely, that of *Concord* or Agreement ; and that of *Government* or Influence.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents ; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

General Principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition ; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun ; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

All Sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The SUBJECT is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The ATTRIBUTE expresses what we affirm concerning the subject, as,

The boy reads his lesson: Here, "the boy," is the Subject of discourse, or the person spoken of; "reads his lesson," is the Attribute, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home*. Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

CONCORD.

I. The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

RULE I. / Substantives signifying the same thing, agree in case; | as,

Cicero orātor, Cicero the Orator; *Cicerōnis oratōris*, Of Cicero the Orator.
Urbs Athēnæ, The city Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum*, Of the city Athens.

2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

II. / An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case; | as,

Bonus vir, a good man; *Boni viri*, good men.

Femina cāstæ, a chaste woman; *Femīnae cāstæ*, chaste women.

Dulce pomum, a sweet apple; *Dulcia pēma*, sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to Adjective pronouns and participles ; as *Mens liber*, my book ; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled : Plur. *Mei libri, agri, colendi, &c.*

Obs. 1. / The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive ; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender ; / as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, Virg. ; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Pers. We sometimes however find the substantive understood in the feminine ; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*, Ter.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive ; as, *Certus amicus*, a sure friend : *Bona ferina*, Good venison ; *Summum bonum*, The chief good : *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective ; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants, Ovid *Fast.* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing ; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night ; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English, the adjective generally goes before the noun ; as, *a wise man*, *a good horse* ; unless something depend upon the adjective ; as, *food convenient for me* ; or the adjective be emphatical ; as, *Alexander the Great*. And the article goes before the Adjective : except the adjectives *all*, *such*, and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs *so*, *as*, and *how* ; as, *all the men* ; *many a man*, *so good a man* ; *as good a man* ; *how beautiful a prospect !* or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun ; as, *a man learned and religious*.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first ; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res præstantissima*, &c.

Obs. 6. A substantive in English, sometimes supplies the place of an adjective ; as, *sea-water*, *land-fowl*, *forest-trees*, *a stone-arch*, &c. and even when no hyphen is marked ; as, *the London Chronicle*, *the Edinburgh Magazine*.

Obs. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural ; as, *fifty foot* ; *six score* ; *ten thousand fathom* ; *a hundred head* ; *an hundred weight*. We say, *by this means*, *by that means* ; *for*, *by these means*, *by those means* ; *or*, *by this mean*, *by that mean*, as it was used anciently : So, *This forty*

ty years, for these; these and these kind of things, for this and that. Each, every, either, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea; as, *every twelve years*.

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. / A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; | as,

Ego lego, I read;

Nos legimus, We read.

Tu scribis, Thou writest or you write;

Nos scribitis, Ye or you write;

Præceptor docet, the master teaches;

Præceptores docent, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

/ Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patronus, tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis, ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. / An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; | as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; The sacrifice not being attended wih favourable omens detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*, Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere caperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obs. 4. / A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat, or stant*; | The multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant easi*; *Pars obnoxie trudunt*, sc. *formicæ*, Virg. Æn. iv. 406. *Magna pars rapte*, sc. *virgines*, Liv. i. 9.

Sometimes,

Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular ; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. Æn. vii. 624.

Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *it* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things ; as, *It is I* ; *it is he* ; *it was they* ; *it appears* ; in Latin, *Ego sum, ille est, &c.* *It is* sometimes understood ; as, *may be, for, it may be* ; *as follows, for, as it follows* ; *as is thought, for, as it is thought*.

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of *You were* ; which is a great inaccuracy in grammar ; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So *there's two or three of us*, for *there are* ; *There was more Sophists*, for *were* ; *great pains has been taken*, for *have*, &c.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

¶ IV. / The infinitive mode has an accusative before it ; as,

Gaudeo te valere, I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The participle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the participle is omitted ; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb ; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative ; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles ; as, *Hosium exercitum cæsum fasumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood ; as, *Pollicitus suscepiturum, scil. me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin* ; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem* : *Jubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis* ; *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat* : *non dubito eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amare*. *Miror, si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superaret*, for *populum Romanum superasse*, Nep. *Ex animi sententia juro, ut ego rempublicam non deferam*, for *me non deserturum esse*, Liv. xxii. 53.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

¶ V. Any Verb may have the same case after it as before it; when both words refer to the same thing; as,

<i>Ego sum discipulus,</i>	I am a scholar.
<i>Tu vocaris Joannes,</i>	You are named John.
<i>Illa incedit regina,</i>	She walks as a queen.
<i>Scio illum haberi sapientem,</i>	I know that he is esteemed wise.
<i>Scio vos esse discipulos,</i>	I know that you are scholars.

So Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex; Evident digni, they will become worthy; *Rerpublicam defendi adolescens; nolo esse longus,* I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malum videri timidus, quam parum prudens,* Cic. *Non licet mibi esse negligenti,* Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis,* Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem;* *cupio non putari mendacem;* *Vult esse medium,* sc. se, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater;* *Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. cum, Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse;* Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem,* and *existo;* *eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio,* &c.

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor,* to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, designor,* &c.

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos,* scil. se; It is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or acc. promiscuously; as, *Cupio, dici doctus* or *doctum,* sc. me dici; *Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax;* *vult esse medius.*

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two substantives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta,* Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erant,* Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium irae amoris integratio est,* The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ovid. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that sub-

stantive

stantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Posidonia*, Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or *licet mihi esse beatum*, me being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, scil. alicui or homini.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Restituit Ajax fovis esse frenes*, for *Se esse pronepotem*, Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. i. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens*; Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse soer*; Lucan.

Obs. 6. The verb *to be* in English, has always a nominative case after it; as, *It was I*: unless it be of the infinitive mode; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use however this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me*, *It can't be me*, *It was him*; for, *It is I*, *It cannot be I*, *It was he*.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

- VI. / One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former); as,

Amor Dei, the love of God. *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.

Domus Cæsaris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius beri* or *berilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis*; *Ensis Ewandrius*, for *Ewandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *caritas patris*, signifies either, the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *Caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soul, Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectoris Andromache*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vespse*, scil. *aem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly

particularly among the poets ; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended ; Virg. Aen. vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions ; as, *Amicitia, inimicitia, pax, cum aliquo* ; *Amor in, vel erga, aliquem* ; *Gaudium de re* ; *Cura de aliquo* ; *Mentio illius, vel de illo* ; *Quis ab armis* ; *Fumus ex incendiis* ; *Predator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*, Sallust, &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of* ; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Ayernus ; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns ; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns when used as substantives, or having a noun understood ; as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus, &c.* The book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis* : The book of her, or her book, sc. *feminæ*. *Libri eorum, v. earum*, their books ; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book ; *Querum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei* ; *pater noster*, not *nostri* ; *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum* ; but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed ; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved : *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively ; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor nisi*, My Labour, Plaut.

The possessives *meus tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive ; as, *Pectus tuum feminis simpliis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster diorum eventus*, Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mita scripti timentis*, &c. Hor. *Silius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. *Id maxime quemque decit, quod est cuiusque suus maxime*. Id.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative : as, *Cato interfecit se*, *Miles defendit suam vitam* : *Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find however *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind ; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiantur*, for *una secum*, Cæs.

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative ; as,

Vir summa prudentia, or *summa prudentiam*, A man of great wisdom.
Puer proba indolis, or *proba indole*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood ; as *cum, de, ex, in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summa prudentia*, is the same with *vir cum summa prudentia*.

Obs.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used ; as, *Magni formica laboris*, The laborious ant ; *Vir imi subsellii*, *homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war ; Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies*, sed *multi jovi*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative ; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mira sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare ; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est ratis*, Id. *Mulier magno natu*, Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence ; as, *Adolescens eximiâ spe, summæ virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative : thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio* ; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdoche* ; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os bumerofque deo similis*, Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. / An Adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive ; / as, *Multum pecuniae*, Much money. *Quid rei est?* What is the matter ?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa Pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers ; as, *Plus eloquentie, minus sapientie, tantum fidei, id negotii* ; *quicquid erat patrum, reos diceret*, Liv. *Id loci* ; *Ad hoc ætatis*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity ; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum*, &c. To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam*, &c. *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive ; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity ; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e* ; as, *Nequid hostile timerent*, not *hostilis* : we find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural ; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca lecorum, Telluris operta, loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli, sc. negotia*, Horat. An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood ; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulysses, &c.*

Opus and Usus.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying need, require the ablative ; as,

Est opus pecunia; There is need of money; *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. (They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive ;) as, *Letimis opus est*, Quint. *Operæ usus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective ; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id..

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle ; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haste; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid factò usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it ; as, *Mibi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*, as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimiles*, Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed absolutely, i. e. without depending on any other word ; as, *s.c opus est*; *si opus sit*, &c.

II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.*1. Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive ; as,

Avidus glorie, Desirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX ; as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *pertinax*, &c. (and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS ; as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *insolens*, *sciens*; *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *insuetus*, *insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind ;) 1. Desire ; as, *avarus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting ; as, *callidus*, *certus*, *cerior*, *conscius*, *gnarus*, *peritus*, *prudens*, &c. *Ignarus*, *incertus*, *inscius*, *imprudens*, *imperitus*, *immemor*, *rudis*; *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary ; as, *anxius*, *curiosus*, *solicitus*, *providus*, *diligens*; *incuriosus*, *securus*, *negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence ; as, *favidolosus*, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trepidus*; *impavidus*, *interritus*,

tus, intrepidus. 5. / Guilt and innocence ; *as, noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus ; innoxius, innocens, insens.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations ; *as, æger animi ; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, latus, præstans animi ; modicus voti ; integer vita ; seri studiorum, Hor.* But we say *æger pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinā, modicus cultu ; Latus negotio, de re, or propter rem, &c. and never æger pedum, &c.*

Obs. 1. / Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles ; thus, *patiens, algoris*, able to bear cold ; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem* : *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar ; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it. -

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction, as, *avidus in pecuniis*, Cic. *Avidior ad rem*, Ter. *Jure consultus & peritus*, or *juris*, Cic. *Rudis literarum, in jure civili*, Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala*, Ovid. *Doctus Latinè, Latinis literis*, Cic. *Affuetus labore, in omnia*, Liv. *mensæ herili*, Virg. *Insuetus moribus Romanis*, in the dat. Liv. *Laboris, ad onera portanda*, Cæs. *Desuetus bello, & triumphis*, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius, solitus, securus, de re aliqua* ; *diligens, in, ad, de*, Cic. *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re* : *Reus de vi, criminibus*, Cic. *Certior factus de re*, rather than *rei*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causa*, *in re*, or *in negotio*, or some such word understood ; *as, Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causa* or *in re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive ; thus, *studiosus pecuniae*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniae*, having a fondness for money.

XI. / Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural ; *as,*

<i>Aliquis philosophorum,</i>	Some one of the philosophers.
<i>Senior fratrum,</i>	The elder of the brothers.
<i>Doctissimus Romanorum,</i>	The most learned of the Romans.
<i>Quis nostrum ?</i>	Which of us ?
<i>Una musarum,</i>	One of the muses.
<i>Octavus sapientum,</i>	The eighth of the wise men.

/ Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among* ; *as, aliis, nullus, solus, &c. quis and qui*, with their compounds : also Comparatives, Superlatives, and

some Numerals ; as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres* ; *primus*, *secundus*, &c. To these add *multi*, *pauci*, *plerique*, *medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive ; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former ; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. Rarely with the latter ; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number ; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ; as, *Unus de fratribus* ; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter* ; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, *for omnium*, Virg. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed ; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimos orbis Britannos*, Horat. ed. i. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two ; Superlatives when we speak of more than two ; as, *Major Fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two* ; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are applied with regard to two ; *quis*, *unus*, *alius*, *nullus*, with regard to three or more ; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two* ; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three* : but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. | Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative ; as,

Utilis bello,

Profitable for War.

Perniciens reipublicæ,

Hurtful to the commonwealth.

Similis patri,

Like to his father.

| Or thus, Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs *TO* or *FOR* after it in English. |

| To this rule belong |

1. | Adjectives of profit or disprofit ; as, *Benignus bonus*, *commodus*, *felix*, *fructuosus*, *prosper*, *saluber*. —— *Calamitosus*, *dannosus*, *dirus*, *exitiosus*, *funestus*, *incommodus*, *malus*, *noxius*, *perniciens*, *pestifer*.

2. | Of pleasure or pain ; as, *Acceptus*, *dulcis*, *gratus*, *gratiosus*, *jucundus*, *letus*, *suavis*. —— *Acerbus*, *amarus*, *insuavis*, *injucundus*, *ingratus*, *molestus*, *tristis*.

3. | Of friendship or hatred ; as, *Addictus*, *aquus*, *amicus*, *benevolus*, *blandus*, *carus*, *deditus*, *fidus*, *fidelis*, *lenis*, *mitis*, *propitius*. —— *Adversus*, *enim*, *asper*, *crudelis*, *contrarius*, *infensus*, *infestus*, *infidus*, *immensis*, *inimicus*, *iniquus*, *invitus*, *invidus*, *iratus*, *odiosus*, *suspensus*, *trux*.

4. | Of clearness or obscurity ; as, *Apertus*, *certus*, *compertus*, *conspicuus*, *manifestus*,

manifestus, natus, perspicuus. — *Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

5. Of nearness ; as, *Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus.*

6. Of fitness or unfitness ; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportinus.* — *Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens.*

7. Of ease or difficulty ; as, *Fasiliſ, levis, obvius, pernivis.* — *Difficilis, ordens, gravis, laboriosus, periculosis, invius.* To these add such as signify propensity or readiness ; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus.*

8. Of equality or inequality ; as, *Aequalis, aequalis, par, compar, superpar.* — *Inequalis, impar, dispar, disjors.* Also of likeness or unlikeness ; as, *Similis, annulus, geminus.* — *Dissimilis, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON ; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, conjonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous ;* as, *Mari aér continens* cf. Cic.

To these add many other Adjectives of various significations ; as, *Onorius, subiectus, supplex, credius, absurdus, decorus, deformis, preſto, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.* — particularly.

Verbs in BILIS and DUS govern the dative ; as,

Anandus vel amabilis omnibus, To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis* ; *Optabilis omnibus pax* ; *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi*, Hor. Also some participles of the perfect tense ; as, *Bella matribus detestata*, hated by, Hor.

Verbs in DUS are often construed with the prep. *a* ; as, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis*, Cic. Perfect participles are usually so ; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis defleta*, rather than, *multis defleta*, Cic. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c.* hardly ever *tibi*.

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech ; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied ; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them ; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me : so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis*, &c. Hor. *Exiūm pecori*, Virg. *Virtutibus hostis*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive ; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superscies, conscientius, aequalis, contrarius, and adversus* ;

versus; as, *Similis tibi*, or *tui*; *Superstes patri* or *patris*; *Conscius facinori* or *facinoris*. *Conscius* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscientia recti*. We say, *Similes*, *dissimiles*, *paris*, *disparas*, *æquales*, *communes*, *inter se*: *Par & communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors*; *discordes ad alia*. Liv.

Obs. 4. | Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, *inutilis*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, *accommodatus*, *idoneus*, *babilis*, *inabilitis*, *opportūnus*, *conveniens*, &c. *alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus quæfitis*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem*, Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis*, *arrogans*, *asper*, *carius*, *difficilis*, *fidelis*, *invisus*, *iratus*, *offensus*, *suspensus*, *ALICUI*. II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus*, *animatus*, *benignus*, *gratiosus*, *injuriosus*, *liberalis*, *mendax*, *misericors*, *officiosus*, *pius*, *impius*, *prolixus*, *severus*, *sordidus*, *torvus*, *vehemens*, *IN ALIQUEM*. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition *IN*, *ERGA*, or *ADVERSUS* going before; as, *Contumax*, *criminosus*, *durus*, *exitibilis*, *gravis*, *hospitalis*, *implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* & *intolerabilis*.) *iniquus*, *scrus*, *ALICUI* or *in ALIQUEM*. *Benevolus*, *benignus*, *molestus*, *ALICUI* or *ERGA ALIQUEM*. *Mitis comis*; *IN*, or *ERGA ALIQUEM*, and *ALICUI*. *Pervicax ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. *Crudelis IN ALIQUEM*; seldom *ALICUI*. *Amicus*, *æmulus*, *infensus*, *infestus*, *ALICUI*, seldom *IN ALIQUEM*. *Gratus ALICUI*, or *IN*, *ERGA*, *ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratum*, Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*, Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, *propensus*, *proclivis*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c. *ad iram*, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. | *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *proper*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*, Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *In vitum qui servat*, *idem facit occidenti*, Hor. *Jupiter omnius idem*, Virg.

Eadem illis censemus, Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem qui*, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, and also *ut*, *cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academicici*, Cic. *Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*, Ter. *Dianam & Lunam eandem esse putant*, Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut*, &c. *In eodem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque or et*; and so sometimes *similis & par.*

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus, and fretus*; also *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honore, Worthy of honour. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [strength.] *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. *Editus de nympha*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus, and contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*, Virg. So *Mæte esto, or macti estote virtutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Juberem macte virtute esse*, sc. *te*, Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or irâ, Full of anger. *Inops rationis or ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. *Amor & melle & felle est fæcundissimus*, Plaut. *Fæcunda virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*, Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas cædis babete manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exsors, impes, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælagus*.

2. With the ablative only: *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, discentus, tumidus, turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently: *Compos, consors, egenus, exacerbans, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis*.

4. With

4. With the ablative more frequently : *Aburdans, cassus, extorris, fetus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onus, orbus, fallens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus.*

5. With both promiscuously : *Copiosus, dives, fecundus, ferox, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uer.*

6. With a preposition ; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, à re aliqua ;* for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet, in, or with respect to any thing.* *Extorris ab solo patre, banished ; Orba ab optimatibus concio, Liv.* So *pauper, tenuis, facundus, medicus, parcus in re aliqua.* *Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus a re aliqua.* *Potens ad rem, &c in re.*

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ I. VERBS governing only one Case.

1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. Sum, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive ; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king ; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Inspientis est dicere, non putarum, It is the part or property of a fool, &c.* *Militum est suo duci parere, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c.* *Laudare se vani ; vituperare stulti est, Sen.* *Hominis est errare ; Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat, Cic.* *Pecus est Melibæi, Virg.* *Haec sunt hominis ; Ter.* *Pauperis est numerare pecus, Ovid.* *Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis, Cic.*

¶ Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, are excepted ; as, *Tuum est, It is your duty. Scio tuum esse, I know that it is your duty.*

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri.* Other possessives are also construed in this manner ; as, *Est regium, est humanum, the same with est regis, est hominis.* *Et facere et parti fortia, Romanum est.* Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood ; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are sometimes expressed ; as, *Munus est principum ; Tuum est hoc munus, Cic.* *Nenquam officium liberi esse hominis puto, Ter.* In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated ; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratri.* In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these ; *Ea sunt modo gloriofa, neque patrandi belli, scil. causa or saeta, Sall.* *Nihil tam æquante libertatis est, for ad æquandam libertatem pertinet, Liv.*

Obs.

Obs. 5. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus, or tui muneris :*
So *mos est vel fuit, or moris, or in more,* Cic.

XVI. *Miseror, miseresco, and satago, govern the genitive ; as,*

<i>Miserere civium tuorum,</i>	Pity your countrymen.
<i>Satagit rerum suarum,</i>	{ He has his hands full at home, or has enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind ; as, *Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo & fallor, fasilio, intideo, laetor, miror, pendo, studso, vereor* ; as, *Ne angas te animi, Plaut. Laborum decipitur, Hor. Discrucior animi, Ter. Pendet mihi animus, pendo animi vel animo* ; but we always say, *Pendemus animis, not animorum, are in suspense, Cic. Iustitia frui mirer, Virg.* In like manner, *Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno : likewise, adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo : as, Alpineto irorum ; Desine querelorum ; Regnavit populorum, Hor. Desistere pugnae, Virg. Quarum rerum condixit, Liv.*

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed ; thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, animo. Hoc animum meum excruciat. Fasilio, miror, vereor, aliquem vel aliquid. Laetor aliquam re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive ; or with *quod, ut, ne, and the subjunctive.*

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid, & ab aliquo, to give over ; Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente ; Quiesco a labore ; Regnare in equitibus, eppidis, sc. in, Cic. Per urbes, Virg. Adipisci id ; Frustrari in re ; Furere de aliquo, Cic.*

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs : thus, *Miseror fratris, scil. causâ, Angor animi, scil. dolere, or cuxietate.*

2. VERBS governing the Dative.

XVII. *Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English ; as,*

*Finis vénit imperie, An end is come to the empire, Liv.
Animus redit hostibus, Courage returns to the enemy, Id.
Tibi seris, tibi metis, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.*

*So, Non nobis solum nati sumus, Cic. Multa male eveniunt ioris, Id.
Sol lucet etiam sceleratis, Sen. Haret lateri lethalis arundo, Virg.*

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in

English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. **S**um, and its compounds govern the dative; (except *possum*) ; as,

<i>Præfuit exercituī,</i>	He commanded the army.
<i>Adfuit precibus,</i>	He was present at prayers.

PEST taken for *Habeo*, to have, governs the dative of a person ; as,

<i>Est mihi liber,</i>	A book is to me, that is, I have a book.
<i>Sunt mihi libri,</i>	Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
<i>Dico libros esse mihi,</i>	I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner DEEST instead of CARES ; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE, govern the dative ; as,

Satisfacio, satisfio, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico, libi, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PRÆ, SUB, and SUPER, govern the dative ; as,

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, aduo, adnato, adquito, adhæres, adsto, adstipulor, advolver, affulgo, allabes, allabero, annuo, appares, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteoo, antefio, anteverto.*

3. *Colludo, concino, corsino, convivo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormis, indubit, inbis, ingemisco, inbereo, insider, insidior, insisto, insido, insulto, invigilo, illacryno, illudo, immincio, immixtor, immixtor, infendo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermico, intercede, intercedo, interceco.*

6. *Obrepso, obluclor, obtrecto, obrepo, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obfisto, obvenio.*

7. *Præcedo, præcurro, præco, prafideo, pralucco, præriteo, præsi, prævaleo, præverto.*

8. *Succedo, succubo, sufficio, suffrager, suberesco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrepo.*

9. *Supervenio, suprecurro, supercio. But most verbs compounded with SUPER govern the accusative.*

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

i. To profit or hurt ; as,

Profici, proficisci.

Prifcio, presum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, careo, metuo, timeo, consulo,
for prespicio. Likewise, Noceo, officio, incommodo, displico, infiducio.

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary } as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor; grator, ignesco, indulgeo, farco, aduler, plaudo,
blandior, lenocinor, palpor, affentor, subparastor. Likewise, Auxilior, ad-
miniculor, subvenio. succurro, patrocinor, medicor, opitulor. Likewise,
Derego, detrabo, invideo, amuler.

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist } as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, for modum, adhibeo. Likewise Pa-
reco, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigerer, obsecundo.
Likewise, Famular, servio, inservio, ministro, anciller. Likewise, Repugno,
sistio, reluctor, reniter, resistio, refragor, averteror.

4. To threaten and to be angry } as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenso.

5. To trust ; } as, Fido, confido, credo, diffido.

To these add Nubo, excillo, bareo, supplico, cedo, despico, operor, præ-
 ficer, prevaricor, recipio, to promise; renuncio; respondeo, to answer or
 satisfy; tempero, studeo, vacu, to apply; convicior.

Exc. Fubeo, juvo, lledo, and offendio, govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, cracio, aversor, &c. aliquem, not alicui.*

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as,
Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, or aliquem, to go before, to excel.

Acquiescere, rei, re, v. in re. Adequitare portæ; Syracusas.

Adjacere, mari, v. mare, to lie near.

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to.

Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose.

Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.

Advolare ei, ad eum; rostra, to fly up to.

Adflare rei v. homini; rem v. hominem; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.

Adulari ei, v. cumi, to flatter. Allabi oris; aures ejus, Virg ad exta, Liv.

Apparere

- Apparere consuli, to attend; ad solium Jovis; Res apparat mihi, appears.
 Appropinquare Eritanniae, portam, ad portam, to approach.
 Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animalia, to rule over, Ovid.
 Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, to agree.
 Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, to trust to or in.
 Ignoscere mihi, culpæ incæ, mihi culpam, to pardon me or my fault.
 Impendere alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, to hang over.
 Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, v. in eum, seized.
 Incumber, toro; gladium, in gladium, to fall upon; labori, ad laudem,
 ad studia, in studium, curia, cogitationem, &c. to apply to.
 Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio, vestitu, to indulge in. Ter.
 Inhiare auro, bona ejus, to gorge after. Innasci agris, in agris, to grow in.
 Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, to depend on.
 Insultare rei & homini, v. hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in mis-
 seriam ejus; bonos, to insult over.
 Latet res mihi, v. me, is unknown to me. Mederi ei; cupiditates, to cure.
 Ministrare ei, to serve; arma ei, to furnish.
 Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omissa, to rule.
 Nocere ei, rarely eum, to hurt, Plaut.
 Nubere alicui; in familiam; nupta ei & cum eo, to marry, Cic.
 Obrepere ei & eum, to creep upon; in animos; ad honores.
 Obstrepere auribus & aures. Obtrectare ei laudibus, ejus, to detract from.
 Obumbrat sibi vinca; solem nubes, shades. Palpari alicui & aliquem.
 Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.
 Præstolari alicui & aliquem, to wait upon.
 Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad genua, Liv. ad pedes, to fall.

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Confendo*, certo, bello, pugno, concorro, soeo, alicui, for cum aliquo; 2. *Dissire*, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, diffirre rei alicui, for a re aliqua. We also say, *Contendunt*, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se; and *contendere*, pugnare contra & adversus aliquem.

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo*, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, de te, & pro te, I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but *timeo*, horreo te, v. a te, I fear or dread you as an enemy: So *Censulo*, prospicio, caveo tibi, I consult or provide for your safety; but *censulo te*, I ask your advice; *prospicio hoc*, I foresee this: *Studere aliquid*, to desire; alicui, to favour; alicui rei, rem, &c in re, to apply to a thing. So, *Amulor tibi*, I envy; te, I imitate; *Ausculto tibi*, I obey or listen to; te, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour, ren., I desire; *Fænero*, & -or tibi, I lend you on interest; *abs te*, I borrow; *Metuisti*, ne non tibi illic fæneraret, should not return with interest, or bring usury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying Motion or Tendency to a thing are construed with the preposition ad; as,

*Eo, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c.
ad locum, rem, v. hominem.* Sometimes however in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor cælo, for ad cælum*, Virg.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. Reverere parentes, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

Ire iter or viam; Pugnare pugnam or præsum: Currere cursum; Canere cantinelam; Vivere vitam; Ludere lusum; Sequi factam: Semniare somnium, &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, Cordeq[ue] ardebat Alexin, scil. propter, i. e. vehementer amabat, Virg. Currimus equer, scil. per, Id. So, Comptos arsit adulteri crines, Hor. Saltare Cyriopa; olet bircum; Sulcos et vineta crepat mera, Hor. Vox hominem sonat: Sudare mella, Virg. Si Xerxes Hellepono juncto, et Albone perfozzo, maria ambulauisset, terraque navigasset, sc. per, Cic. Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, Clamare aliquem nomine, Virg. Callere jura; Marcere mortem; Horret iratum mare, Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere; dolere dolore, vicem ejus; gaudere gaudio; mori v. obire morte; vivere vita; ardet virgine, Horat. Ludere eleam, v. a; manare, pluere, rorare, stillare, sudare, atquid vel aliquo. Erubescere jura, Virg. origine, Tacit. equo vebi, Curt.*

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorrere famam, to dread infamy, Liv. a litibus; ab uxore ducenda, to be averse from: Id. a meis moribus abhorret, is inconsistent with, Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, to abolish, Virg. Iis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat, was not effaced from, they had not forgotten, Liv.

Adolere penates, to burn, to sacrifice to, Virg.

Ætas adolevit; adolevit ad ætem, Plaut.

Declinare iustum, to avoid; loco; agmen aliquo, to remove.

Degenerare animas, to weaken; patri, to degenerate from; a virtute majorum.

Durare adolescentes labore, to last; Res durat ad breve tempus, endures; In ædibus durare nequeo, stay or remain, Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, to lay; Hos ut sequar inclinat animus, inclines; acies inclinat, vel inclinatur, gives away.

Laborare arma, to forge; morbo, a dolore, e renibus, to be ill; de re aliqua, to be concerned.

Morari iter, to stop; in urbe, to stay;

say; *Hoc nihil moror, I do not mind.*

Proferare pecuniam bæredi, Hor. in orbem; ad unam sedem, Ovid.

Quadrare acervum, to square, Hor. aliquid ad norman; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, to fit.

Suppeditare copiam dicendi, to furnish; Sumptus illi, vel illi sumptibus, Terent. suppeditat ei ratio, is afforded; Manubia in fundamenta vix suppeditârunt, were sufficient, Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrimat, Id succensit, Ter.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prora avertit, sc. se, Virg. Flumina præcipitant, sc. se, Id. Quicunque intenderat, sc. se, turned or directed himself, Sallust. Oliit, sc. mortem, Ter. Cum faciam vitulâ, sc. sacra, Virg.* Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum; for dulcem sermonem, decorum risum, Hor.*

XIX. *Recordor, memini, reminiscor, and obli-*

viscor, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectionis or lectionem,

I remember the lesson.

Obliviscor injurie or injuriam,

I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem, Ter. Oblitus est, quid parlo ante p'suisset, Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to make mention, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini aliquis, vel de aliquo.* So *recordor*, when it signifies to recollect; as, *Velim scire e quid de te recordere, Cic.*

4. VERBS governing the Ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as

Abundat divitiis,

He abounds in riches.

Caret omni culpa,

He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scato, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigo, vaco, deficior, destituo, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget artu, He needs money, Hor. Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, Cic.*

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa, he is free from fault, Liv.*

XXI. *Uter, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative ; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit. Abutitur libris, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victo, consto, laboro*, for *male me habeo*, to be ill ; *pascor, epular, nitor*, &c.

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive ; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. And we always say *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command ; never *rebus, imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epular, and pascor*, sometimes have an accusative ; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Officia fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor, and fruor* ; as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative ; as, *Depascitur artus*. Virg.

S 2. VERBS governing two Cases.

1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. Sum taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing ; as,

Est mihi voluptati, It is, or brings a pleasure to me,

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinqu, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others ; as,

Duitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. Id veritur mihi vitio, I am blamed for that. So, Misit mibi muneri; Dedit mibi dono; Habet filii laudi; Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative ; as, *Est exitium pecori*, for *exitio* ; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono* ; *Dare filiam ei nuptam*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood ; as, *Dare crimini e, sc. id.*

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied ; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, praesidio, usui, &c. scil. mihi, alicui, dominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignori*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis militibus*, to sound a retreat ; *Habere curae, questui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludilrio, despiciatui, &c. sc. sibi.*

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming ; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro, my name is Alexander* ; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander* ; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri.*

2. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing ; as,

<i>Arguit me furti,</i>	He accuses me of theft.
<i>Meipsum inertie conderino,</i>	I condemn myself of laziness.
<i>Illum homicidii absolvant,</i>	They acquit him of manslaughter.
<i>Moneat me officii,</i>	He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accuso*, *ago*, *appello*, *arcesso*, *inquiro*, *arguo*, *defero*, *insimulo*, *postulo*, *alligo*, *astringo*; of condemning, *Damno*, *condemno*, *infamo*, *noto*; of acquitting, *Absolvo*, *libero*, *purgo*; of admonishing, *Moneo*, *admoneo*, *commoneficio*.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de* ; as, *Moneare aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquum furti*, or *de farto*. *De vi condemnati sunt*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *cepsu* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition ; as, *Damnare*, *posculare*, *alleviare eum criminis*, v. *capitis*; & *crimine*, v. *capite*; also *Absolvo me peccato*, Liv. And we always say, *Plectere*, *punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary ; thus we say, *Culpo*, *reprehendo*, *taco*, *traduco*, *witupero*, *calumnior*, *criminor*, *excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiae*. We sometimes also find *accuso*, *incuso*, &c. construed in this manner ; as, *Accusare ineritiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes ineritiae*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc*, *illud*, *istud*, *id*, *unum*, *multa*, &c. as *Moneo*, *accuso te illud*. We seldom however find, *Errorum te moneo*, but *erroris*, or *de errore*; except in old writers ; as, Plautus.

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni*, *parvi*, *nibili*, &c. as,

<i>Aestimo te magni,</i>	I value you much.
--------------------------	-------------------

Verbs of valuing are, *Aestimo*, *existimo*, *duco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, *taco*. They govern several other genitives ; as,

as, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, assis, nikili, teruncii, hujus.

Obs. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative ; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo, scil. pretio :* and also *nibilo.* We likewise say, *Pro nibilo hales, puto, dico.*

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo* ; as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui bonique facio,* I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood ; as, *Arguere aliquem furti, scil. de crinine furti ; Æstimo rem magni, scil. pretii, or pro re magni pretii ; Consulo boni, i. e. statuo or censco esse factum, or manus boni viri, or animi ; Monere aliquem officii, i. e. officii causâ, or de re or negotio officii.*

3. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative ; as,

<i>Comparo Virgilium Homerò,</i>	I compare Virgil to Homer.
<i>Sum cuique tribuito,</i>	Give every one his own.
<i>Narras fabulam surdo,</i>	You tell a story to a deaf man.
<i>Eripuit me morti,</i>	He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted) ; as,

Iegam lectionem tili, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi,* He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aretra beves,* Virg. *Paupertas saepe suadet mala hominibus,* advises men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, sumentum, naves, arma aliquibus,* to order them to furnish, Cæs.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition ; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia, & ad aliam, or comparare res inter se : Eripuit me morte, morte, a or ex morte : Mittere episolum alicui, or ad aliquem : Infendere telum alicui, or in aliquem : Incidere æri, in æs, or in are :* and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently ; as,

Circundare mænia oppido, or oppidum mænibus, to surround a city with walls.

Intercludere commatum alicui, or aliquem commata, to intercept one's provisions.

Donare, prohibere rem alicui, or aliquem re, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Mactare hostiam Deo, or Deum hostiā, to sacrifice.

Impertire salutem alicui, or aliquem salute, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or Romanos Gallia, he debarded the Romans from Gaul.

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or se veste, to put on, to put off one's cloaths.

Levari dolorem alicui; dolorum alicujus; aliquem dolore, to ease one's distress.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes alicui aliquo, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; Casari gladio, Sall.

Gratulor tibi ban- rex, bac re, in, pro, &c de hac re, I congratulate you on this. M. Titus Tullio devictis hostiis gratulatur, Liv.

Restituere alicui sanitatem, or aliquem sanitati, to restore to health.

Spergere laborem alicui or aliquem labore, to put an affront on one; arans sanguine. Litare Deum sacris, & sacra Deo, to sacrifice.

Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.

Exprobare vitium ei v. in eo, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui, & apud aliquem, i. e. pecuniam fanori locata, to place at interest, Cic.

Opponere se morti, & ad mortem. Renunciare id ei, & ad eam, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lego, as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also hortor, and invito, &c, provoco, animo, sinulo, conformato, lacesto; thus, Ad lardem milites hortatur; Ad prætorum hominem traxit, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, Inferre Deos Latie, for in Latiam, Virg. Invitare aliquum hospitio, or in hospitium, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui, scil, se; Cedere alicui, scil. locum; Detrahere alicui, scil. laudem; Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam.* And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum, He gave me a book, for to me.*

4. VERBS governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

<i>Posimus te pacem,</i>	We beg peace of thee.
<i>Ducuit me grammaticam,</i>	He taught me grammar.

i. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo, Juro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *Doceo, redoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. i. *Cedo likewise governs two accusatives; as, Celavit,*

vit me hanc rem, He concealed this matter from me ; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition ; as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo*; *Ducere aliquem de re*, to inform ; but we do not say, *ducere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticum*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a v. abste*; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex or a te, or te without the preposition*; *Interrogo, consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te discero*; *Exceret pacem diuinam, sordivos*, Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the abl. without a prep. *In hunc eum artibus*, in v. ab artibus. Also *instruo ad rem, v. in re, ignorantiam alius*. *Eruuius aliquem artes, de v. in re, ad rem*. *Formare ad studium, mentem studiis, Italia ejus*.

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

5. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, cloathing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative ; as,

Onerat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruso*: Of unloading, *levo, exonero, &c.* Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c.* Of looking, *solvoo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio, &c.* Of depriving, *privoo, nudo, orbo, spolio, frundo, emundo*: Of cloathing, *vsto, amictio, induo, cingo, tego, vela, corcio, & calcio*: Of uncloathing, *exuo, discingo, &c.*

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed ; as, *Solvare aliquem ex catenis*, Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied ; as, *Compleat naves, sc. viris, mans the ships*, Virg.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive ; as, *Andolescentem sue temeritatis implet*, Liv. And also vary their construction ; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus, or vestes sibi*.

The CONSTRUCTION of PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case ; as,

Accus. r. furti, I am accused of theft.

Virgilius comparatur Homer, Virgil is compared to Homer.

Doceor grammaticam, I am taught grammar.

Navis oneratur auro, The ship is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accusatumiri furti*; — *Eos exceptum iri morti, morte, &*

vel ex morte; — pueros doctum iri grammaticam; — rem celatum iri mibi vel me; me celotum iri de re, &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio iis.*

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

Tu laudaris a me, which is equivalent to, *Ego laudo te.* *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem.* *Guedeo meum socium proleria te*, or *te probare meum solum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collucet*, Cic. *Pba'aris non a fauis interiit*, Id. *So Cadere ab hostie*; *Cessare a præliis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo*, *Exulere ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere, &c. ab aliquo.*

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjugi*, Ovid. *Desertus suis*, sc. *a*, Tacit. *Tabula distinguitur unda*, *qui navigat*, sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, Juvenal.

The preposition *PER* is also used in the same sense with *A*; as, *Per me defensa est res publica*, or *a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me v. a me factum est*, Cic. But *PER* commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores a rege*, sc. *a rege vel a legato eius*, Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. { Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; } as,

Neque cernitur ulli, for ab ullo, Virg. *Vix audior usui*, Ovid. *Sci-beris Vario*, for *a vario*, Hor. *Hoc est a bonis viris queruntur*, for *a viris*, Cic. *VIDEOR*, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Vide-ris mihi*, You seem to me: But we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum auditam ibi, neque risa sororum*, for *a me*, Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor* and *dissingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. *Bellum militabitur*, Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur*, &c. *a nobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, vel ab aliquo*; I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optimè a Deo*; *Recla-matum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases, as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplium misereatur*, Cic. Except the accusative: For in these phrases, *Itur Athenas*, *pugnatum est biduum*, *dormitur usum noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the

the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mibi dormitur hyems*, *Noctes vigilantur amaræ*; *Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditur*, Tacit.

The CONSTRUCTION of IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. / An impersonal verb governs the dative ; / as,

Expedit reipublicæ, / It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative ; as,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego favoer*. So *Nocetur mihi*, *imperatur mihi*, &c. We find however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor*; *Ego cur invidetur*, for *imperatur invidetur mihi*, Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest*, *cæpit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *dubet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs ; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; *Mibi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra*. *Alio. um laudi & gloriæ invideri solet*, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmisimo generi resisti posse*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally ; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res*, vel de hac re, vel hujus rei, scil. memoria; This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res vel de hac re*. *Doleo vel dolet mihi*, id factum est.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun it is always joined with impersonal verbs in English ; as, It rains, it shines, &c. And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative ; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum*; *Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam*, i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*, Cic. *Accidit, evenit, contigit, ut ibi essemus*. These nominatives, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *idem*, *quod*, &c. are sometimes joined to Impersonal verbs ; as, *idem mihi licet*, Cic. *Eadem licent*, Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood ; as, *Faciat quod libet*, sc. sibi, Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes*, sc. mihi, I am resolved, Virg.

EXC. I. / REFERT and INTEREST require the genitive ; / as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter ; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, &c. to be in the ablat. sing. sem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cuja interest*, from *cujus*, -*a*, -*um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id*, *hoc*, *illud*, *quid*, *quod*, *nihil*, &c. also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *permagni*, *parvi*, *pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Iliud mea magni interest*, Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert suilium*, Lucret. *Incessus in gravida refert*, Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum*, *quantum*, *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*, *infinitum*, *parum*, *maxime*, *vehementer*, *minime*, &c. as, *Feciam quod maxime reipublicæ interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert*, Persæ *quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it, &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*, Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi*, &c. Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam*, it is of great importance, Cic. *Per multum interest qualis primus aditus sit*, Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat*, Liv. *Plurimum enim inter erit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus insituras*, Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, &c. likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis*, i. e. *est inter negotia Ciceronis*: *Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se hoc res ad negotia patris*. So *interest mea*, *est inter negotia mea*.

EXC. II. These five, *MISERET*, *POENITET*, *PUDET*, *TÆDET*, and *PIGET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you.

Tædet me vite, I am weary of life.

Poenitet me peccati, I repent of my

Pudet me culpæ, I am ashamed of
my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium or miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Poenitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum si bene pœnitet, scil. nos*, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret*, *pœnitet*, &c. are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc*, *id*, *quod*, &c. as, *Ipse sui miseret*, Lucret.; *Nonne bac te pudent*, Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias*, for *cujus te pœnitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemini vicem miseret me*, scil. *secundum* or *quod ad*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The præterites of *miseret*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, when used in

in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active ; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally ; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter.; *Miseretur te fratum*; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

EXC. III. / *DECET*, *DELECTAT*, *JUVAT*, and *OPORETET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive ; as,

Delectat me studere, It delights me to study.

Non decet te rixari, It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally ; as, *Parvum parva decent*, Hor. *Ei⁹ aliquis, quod non oporteat, etiam⁹ licet*, Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative ; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. / *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood ; as,

Sibi quisque consulit oportet, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood ; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, Ter.

Obs. 4. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, *latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive ; as, *In lege nullā esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te artea scribere*, Cic.

NOTE, *Attinet*, *pertinet*, & *spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *ad rem publicam pertinet*, *me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, Cic.

The CONSTRUCTION of the INFINITIVE.

XXX. / One verb governs another in the infinitive ; as,

Cupio discere, I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. / The infinitive is often governed by adjectives ; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quintil. (And sometimes depends on a substantive ;) as, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood ; as, *Mene incepto desistere victimam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied ; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, scil. *cancere*, Cic. So *Dicere, scire fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, The name or noun of the verb ; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive ; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own ; and likewise supplies the place of a noun,

not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Autrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare, for cantandi, or cantus*, Virg. In the dative, *Paratus servire, for servituti*, Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Dixi mihi fallere, for artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam superest, frater amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis!* for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari, for amore, or qui ametur*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of *doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping*; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitit ita facere, or more frequently, an num, or utrum ita facturus sit; Dubitavit an faceret necne; Non dubito quin fecerit. Vis me facere, or ut faciam. Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur. Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias. Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplicem venirem*, Cic. *Exsistimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, and some others*; as, *I bid him do it: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, Mitter questum, or ut querar, &c. Ready to hear, Promptus ad audiendum; Time to read, Tempus legendi; Fit to swim, Aptus natando; Easy to say, Facile dictu; I am to write, Scripturus sum; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, Domus locanda; He was left to guard the city, Relictus est ut tueretur urbem.*

To in English is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth; To proceed; To conclude; that is, That I may confess the truth, &c.*

The CONSTRUCTION of PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, and SUPINES.

XXXI. | Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; } as,

{ *Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. Carens fraude, Wanting guile.*

Obs. 1. | *Passivæ participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; } as,*

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; Suscettiores regibus, Sall. Invisus mihi; hated by me, or hateful to me: Indies invisi, Suet. Occulta, et mirilus non invisu solum, sed etiam iraudita sacra, unseen, Cic.

| *EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often also PERTÆSUS, govern the accusative; } as, Tædas exisi jugales, Ovid. Plebs consulum nomen habecus quam regum perosa erat, Liv. Pertesus ignoriam suam; semet ipsi, displeased with, Suet. vitam, weary of, Justin. levitatis, Cic.*

| *Verbals in RUNDUS govern the case of their own verbs } as, Gratulabundus patræ, Just. Vitubundus casra bestium, Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, Jusititia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus, Cic. In*sensi*,*

consuli, Sall. *Domum redditionis spe sublatā*, Cæs. *Spectatio latet*, Plaut.

Obs. 2. These verbs, *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *habeo*, *comperio*, with the perfect participle, from a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Effictum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Inventum tibi curabo*, et *adductum tuum Pantphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*; or *ad utendum*; *Misit mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo*, *habeo*, *mando*, *leco*, *conduco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret*: *Columnas ædificandas locavit*, Cic.

The CONSTRUCTION of GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; } as,

Studendum est mihi, I must study. *Apium studendo*, Fit for studying.
Tempus studendi, Time of study. *Scio studendum esse mihi*, I know that
I must study.

But more particularly;

I. The Gerund in DUM with the verb *est* governs the dative; } as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.
So *Scio legendum esse mihi*; *moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet*, *necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or, *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consulam tibi*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sanx in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*, Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum*, - *lites, est, sc. vobis*, Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel* sc. *tibi vel alicui*, P. Syr.

II. The gerund in DI is governed by substantives or adjectives } as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading; *Cupiditas discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, for *agros*, Cic. *Copja spectandi comediarum*, for *comedies*, Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In eis a venerunt sui purgandi causā*, Cæs. *Vestri abortandi causi*, Liv. *Ej: svidenli cupitus*, sc. *fimine*, Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. / The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness ; / as,

Carta utilis scribendo,

Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood ; as, *Non est solvende*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. *Is finis censendo factus est*. Liv.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs ; as, *Aesse scribendo*, Cic. *Aptat habendo ensem*, for wearing ; Virg.

IV. / The gerund in *DAT* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter* ; as,

Promptus ad audiendum,

Ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum,

Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions ; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. *Ob absolvendum*, Cic. *Circa movendum*, Quinctil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case ; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. / The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ; / as,

Pæna a peccando aliterret,

Punishment frightens from sinning.

* / Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause ; / as,

Memoria exercitando augetur,

The memory is improved by exercising it.

Defessus sum ambulando,

I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other ; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere* : only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense ; as, *Cum Tifidium vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipse imperaretur*, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum*, *vel ad parendum potius*, *Sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. *Urit viderdo*, i. e. *dum videtur*. Virg.

The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of* ; as, *He is employed in writing letters*, or, *in the writing of letters* : but it is improper to say, *in the writing letters*, or *in writing of letters*.

Gerunds turned into participles in dus.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case ;) as,

By the Gerund.

Petendum est mihi pacem,
Tempus petendi pacem,
Ad potendum pacem,
A petendo pacem,

By the Participle or Gerundive.

{ *Pax est petenda mihi.*
{ *Tempus petendæ pacis.*
{ *Ad petendam pacem.*
{ *A petenda pace.*

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was ;) as,

Genitive; *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi*, Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiendo labore idoneus*, Colum. *Capeſſendæ reipublicæ habilis*, Tac. *Areæ firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*, Liv. *Oneri ferendæ est*, sc. *aptus v. habilis*, Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis*, Ter. *Literis dandis vigilare*, Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*, Liv.

Acc. and abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua duces Romanos abſtrahere*, Liv. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorēm*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medcor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *funger*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*: but we always say, *Cupidis subveniendi*, *tibi*, and never *tui*.

The CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

i. The Supine in *um*.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion ;) as,

Abiit deambulatum,

He hath gone to walk.

So, Dicere eobortes præ datum, Liv. *Nunc venis irrigum dominum?*
Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, t: id aemonitum venio, Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat, ut se perdet*, He is beat on his own

own destruction, Ter. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illum sicut tuā operā iri deducum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri (a te, vel ab aliquo) deductum (i. e. ad deducendum) illam domum,* Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum;* *Cantatum provocemus,* Ter. *Revocatus defensum patrīam;* *Divisit copias biematum,* Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem:* or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causā,* or *opis orandae.* 2. *Venit ad orandum opem,* or *ad orandam opem.* 3. *Venit opī orandae.* 4. *Venit opem oraturus.* 5. *Venit q̄ i, ut opem oret.* 6. *Venit opem orare.* But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The supine in *u.*

XXXVIII. | The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu, Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu fidū, visuque hæc limina tangat;* *intra quæ fuer* c^a, Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus;* *Fus v. nefas est dictu;* *Opus est scitu,* Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsernatu redeo,* from getting provisions, Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus.) from bed, *postremus cubitum eat,* Cato.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci,* or *ad cognoscendum;* *Res facilis ad credendum,* Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in.*

The CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

I. The CONSTRUCTION of ADVERBS.

XXXIX. | Adverbs are joined to Verbs and Participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit; He writes well.

Servus egregiè fidelis, A slave remarkably faithful.

Fortiter pugnans, Fighting bravely.

Satis bene, Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives ; as,

Homerus planè orator ; planè noster, verè Metellus, Cic. So, Hodiè mane ; cras mane, beri mane ; hodie vesperi, &c. tam mane, tūm vespere.

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative ; as,

Nec non sacerunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. Et sacerunt, And they did perceive ; Non pateram non exanimari metu, Cic. Examples however of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors, both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode to express a stronger negation. Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum, And do not say that you were not forewarned, Ter.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. I. *Apprimè admodum, vehementer, maximè, perquam, valdè oppidò, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive ; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. perquam puerile, very childish ; oppidò pauci, very few ; persicile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum* ; as, *In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus ; parum firmus, multum bonus, Cic.* Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives ; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humana, Liv.*

QUAM is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses ; as, *Quam difficile est ! How difficult it is ! Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est ! How cruel he is ! Flens quam familiariter, very familiarly, Ter. So quam severè, very severely, Cic. Quam latè, very widely, Cas. Tam multa, quam, &c. as many things as, &c. Quam maximus potest copias armat, as great as possible, Sall. Quam maximas gratias agit, quam primum, quam sèpissime, Cic. Quam quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est, Sall.*

FACILE, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning ; as, *Faciliè doctissimus, facile princeps, v. præcipius. LONGE*, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive ; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato, Cic. Pediibus longe melior Lycus, Virg.*

2. **CUM**, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter ; **DUM**, whilst, or how long, with the indicative ; as, *Dum hoc aguntur ; Ægrotus, dum anima est, spes esse dicuntur, Cic. Donec eris felix. multos numerabis amicos, Ovid. DUM and DONEC, for usque tunc, until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive ; as, Operior, dum ista cognosco, Cic. Haud desinam, donec*

donec perfeceris, Ter. So *QUOD*, for *quamdiu*, *quantum*, *quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quod Catilina fuit in urbe*; *Quod tibi æquum videbitur*; *quod possem & liceret*; *quod progredi potuerit amoenitas*, Cic. But *QUOD*, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Tib[us] salonicæ esse statueram, quod aliquid ad me scriberes*, Cic. but not always; *Non faciem finem regandi, quod nunciatum erit te fecisse*, Cic. The pronoun *eius*, with *facere* or *fieri* is elegantly added to *quod*; as, *Quod eius facere poteris*; *Quod eius fieri possit*, Cic. *Eius* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or some such word understood. *Quod corpus, quod animam*, for *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. *POSTQUAM* or *POSTEQUAM*, after, is usually joined with the Indic. *ANTEQUAM*, *PRIUSQUAM*, before; *SIMUL*, *SIMULAC*, *SIMUL*, *ATQUE*, *SIMUL UT*, as soon as; *UBI*, when, sometimes with the Ind. and sometimes with the Subj. as, *Antequam dico* or *dicam*, Cic. *Simulac persensit*, Virg. *Simul ut video Curionem*, Cic. *Hec ubi distœ dedit*, Liv. *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi possea non oportet*, Cic. So *NÆ*, truly; as, *Næ ego homo sum infelix*, Ter. *Ne tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consuluiſses*, Cic. But *NÆ*, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura*, Plaut. *Ne post conferas culpam in me*, Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimer*, Liv.

4. *QUASI*, *CEU*, *TANQUAM*, *PERINDE*, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the Indicative; *Fuit alim, quasi ego sum, senex*, Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt*, Virg. *Hec omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur*, Cic.

5. *UTINAM*, *O SI*, *UT* for *utinam*, I wish, take the Subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*, Cic. *O mihi prateritos referat si Jupiter annus*, Virg. *Ut illum dii deæque perdant*, Ter.

6. *UT*, when or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit*, &c. ¶ Also for *quam* or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet!* *Ut falsus animi est!* *Ut sape summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*, Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut semen tem feceris, ita metes*, Cic.

7. *QUIN* for *CUR NON*, takes the Indic. as, *Quin continetis vocem indicem stulticie vestrae?* Cic. ¶ For *IMO*, nay or but, the Indic. or Imp. rat. as, *Quin est paratum argentum*; *quin tu hoc audi*, Ter. ¶ For *UT NON*, *QUI*, *QUE*, *QUOD NON*, or *QUO MISUS*, the Subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis, res, quin difficilis sit quum invitus facies*, Ter. *Nemo est, quin malit*; *Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sin miserrimus*, Cic.

The GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. / Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive ; } as,

Pridie ejus diei, The day before that day.

Ubique gentium, Every where.

Satis est verborum, There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *Postea loci*, afterwards; *inde, loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubiubi*, &c. Also *Eo, luc, buccine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*: as, *Ubi, quo, quoris, &c.* also *usquam, nusquam, unde, terrarum, vel gentium; longe gentium; ibidem loci, eo ar-dacie, recordiae, miseriарum, &c.* to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minime*; as, *Abundē glorie, affatim divinarum, largiter auri, satis loquentie, sapientiae parum est illi vel babet, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. Minime gentium, by no means.*

Some add *ergo* and *instar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. *Instar mantis*, like a mountain, Virg.: But these are properly nouns

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentiae gloriaeque abundē adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriae*: or *res, locus, or negotium* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci; Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie, postridie ejus diei, seldom diem*; but *pridie, postridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollinares, natalem ejus, absolutionem ejus, &c.* rarely *Kalendarum, &c.*

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative ; } as,

En hisis, or hōsē; *Ecce miserum Lominem*, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*, Ter. *Ecce dius* (scil. aras.) *tibi Daphri*, Virg. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. / Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives ; } as,

Omnium optimē loquitur, He speaks the best of all.

Convenienter rotare, Agreeably to nature.

Venit obviam ei, He came to meet him.

Proximē castris or castra, Next the camp.

The CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

I. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.)

An astra, *to the stars*; religari ad asserem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. *at or on*; ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem, Tiberim, *near, at*; ad templo supplicatio, *in*; ad summum, *at most, or to the top*; ad summam, *in the whole*; Cic.; ad ultimum, extremitum, *at last, finally*; ad v. in speciem, *to appearance*; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, *for, with respect to*, Cic.; ad vivum, sc. corpus, *to the quick*; ad judicem agere, *before*; nihil ad Cx:farem, *in comparison of*; numero ad duodecim, *to the number of*; omnes ad unum, *to a man*; ad hoc, *besides*; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man*; herbæ ad unam messiae, *by the light of*, Virg. ad tempus venit, *at*; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*; Cic.; ad decem annos *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*; Cic. nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day*; Liv.; ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at*; ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; ad libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no less*; ad amissim, *exactly*; ad hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and hearing these things*, Liv.

Ad seenis sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo milia cæsa sunt; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, *about*, Liv.

Apud forum, *at*; apud me coenabis, *at my house*; apud senatum, judices, v. aliquem dicere, *before*; apud majores nostros, *among*; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Est mihi fides, *vel valeo*, apud illum, *I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, Ter.

ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before*.

ADVERSUS, v. -um; **C**ONTRA hostes, *against*; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *towards*; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against*, Plin.

CIS vel CITRA flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra cruditatem, hibe citra ebrietatem, Senec.

CIRCUM & **C**IRCA regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin.

ERGA amicos, *towards*. **E**XTRA muros; Extra jocum, periculum noxiam, sortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA tectum, *below the roof*.

INTER fratres, *among*; inter & super coenam, *during in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*; Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*; Cic. Inter diem, *whence, interdia, in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi non nōrimus nos inter nos, Ter.

INTRA privatos parietes, *intra paucos annos, within*; intra famam est, *less than report*. Quint.

JUXTA macellum, *near the stables*.

Ob lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriam *for de industria, on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, *or quem penes,* *in*

in the power of; Penes te es? Are you in your senses? Hor. PER agros, through; per vim, per scelus, by; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, for, by reason of. PONE caput, behind.

POST hoc tempus, after; post ter- gum, behind; post homines na- tös, post hominum memoriam, since the world began.

PRÆTER te nemo, no body besides, or except; præter casam fugere, beyond; præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, spem, opiniōnem, &c. contrary to, against, beyond; præter cæteros excelle- lere, lamentari, above; præter ripam ire, along, near; præter oculos, before, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, for, on account of; propter aquæ rivum, near, bard by, Virg.

SECUNLUM facta & virtutes tuas, according to; Ter. secundum lit- tus, secundum autem vulnera-

tus est, near to; in actione se- cundum vocem, vultus plurimū valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, after, next to; Prætor secundum me decrevit, sententiam dedit. for, in my fa- vour, Cic.

SECUS viam, by, along.

SUPRA terram, above.

TRANS mare, over, beyond.

ULTRA oceanum, beyond.

To prepositions governing the ac- cusative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE & VERSUS; as Circiter meridiem, about mid-day; prope muros, rear the walls; usque Puteolos, Tharsum usque, as far as; Ori- entem versus, towards the east. But in these ad is understood; which we find sometimes ex- pressed; as, Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæs. In Italiam versus, Cic.

PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, by or from; a puer, vel pueris, a pueritia, incunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. from a child, ever since childhood; ab ovo usque ad mala, from the beginning to the end of supper; a manu, sc. ser- vus, an amanuensis or clerk; ad manum, a waiting man; a pedibus, a footman; a latere prin- cipis, an attendant. So a secre- tis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. a secretary, accountant, &c.; fores a nobis, for nostræ. Injuria ab illo, for illius, Ter. a cena, after; Secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, on or in; a senatu stare. for, in de- fense of; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio impictus, a pecunia & militibus imparatus, as to,

with respect to, Cic. Est calor a sole; omissores ab re, too careless about money; a villa mer- cenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causa, without; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidisssem, i. e. si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, but for you, had it not been for you, Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers; sine, by orators.

CLAM patre & patrem, without the knowledge of.

CORAM omnibus, before, in presence of.

CUM exercitu, with; testis me- cum est annulus, in my posse- sion, Ter. cum prima luce, at break of day; cum imperio esse, in; cum primis, in primis, in the first place; cum metudicere, cum lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c.

Cic.

Cic. *We say, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum ; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cum quo, quibuscum or cum quibus.*

De lana caprina rixantur, *about, concerning*; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of*; de loco superiore, *from*; de die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; de integro, *anew, afresh*; de *v.* ex improviso, *unexpectedly*; de *v.* ex industria, *on purpose*; de meo, *at my expense*; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain*; Ter. de *v.* ex compacto agere, *by agreement*; de transverso, *cross-wise, aitwartz*; de *v.* ex ejus sententia, consilio, *according to*; qua *v.* hac de causa, *for*; homo de plebe; templum de marmore, *of*; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech*; de Filio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, Ex ædibus, *from, out of*; e contrario, *v. contraria parte, on the contrary*; e regione, *over against*; e republica, e re aliquid, *for the good of*; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta prosperantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after*; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately*; poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback*; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall. diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day*; ex ordine, *in order*; magna ex parte, *for the most part*; ex supervacuo, *superfluously*; ex tua dignitate *v. virtute*, ex decreto senatus, e natura, *according to*; so vulgaris ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa estimat; ex *v.* de mo-

re, ad *v.* in morem alicujus: Ex animo, *from the heart*; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languore, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of*; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage*; ex eo die, *since*, ex amicis certis certissimus, *of or among*; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescioquo, puerum natum, *by*. Id.

Pro gloria certare, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*; Sall. Hoc est pro me, Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before*; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus. pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of*; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte *v.* facultate, *to one's ability or power*; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, *in comparison of, considering*, Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut meritor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fædus habet, *for, as*; so pro certo, infectio, comperto, nihilo, concessio, &c. habeo, ducio. Pro occiso, relictus est, Cic.

Præ se pugionem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because of*; illum præ me contempsi, *in comparison of*: So the adv. præut; as, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.

SINE labore, *without*; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querala, impensa, &c.; homo sine re fide, spe, fortunis, sede, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUS, *up to the bilt.*
Tenus is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing.; as, *Cumarum tenus*, as far as *Cumæ*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, la-*

brorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, *up to*. We also find *Corcyrae tenuis*, & *ostiis tenuis*, *Liv. Colchis tenuis, Flor. Pectoribus tenuis, Ovid.*

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added PROCUL; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patria*, *Virg. Procul ab conscientione. Quinct. Culpa est procul a me, Ter.*

3. | PREPOSITIONS governing the Accus. and Abl. |

XLIV. | The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative. |

{ IN when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; } as,

IN urbem ire, *into*; amor in partiam, in te benignus, *towards*; in lucem, *until day*; in eam sententiam, *to that purpose, on that head*; in rem tuam est, *for your advantage*; in utramque partem disputare, *on both sides*, *for and against*; litura in nomen, *en*, Cic. potestas in filium, *over*; in aliquem dicere, *against*; mirum in modum, *after*; in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, *on*; in os laudare, *to, before*; in v. inter patres lectus, *into the number of*; in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. *among*; crescit in dies in singulos dies, omnes in dies, *every day*; in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, *against*; in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow*; Est in diem, *will*

happen some time after, Ter. Induciæ in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. *for*; Ternis assibus in pedem, v. in singulos pedes, transegit, *Hebargained for three shillings a foot, or for every foot*; So in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In mediumna singula, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, Cic.

IN portu navigo, in tempore, *in*; esse in potestate, v. in potestatem, honore vel honorem, mente v. mentem: in manu v. manibus esse; habere, tenere, *one's power, on hand*; in amicis, *among*; in oculis, *before*: Occisus est in provinciam, *for* in provincia, Sall. In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, *for puer or pueri, when a boy*

boy or boys, &c. *Hoc in tempore, Nep.* In loco fratris diligere, *for ut fratrem, Ter.*

SUB terras ibit imagno, sub aspectum cadit, *under*; sub ipsum funus, *near, just before*. Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, i. e. incipiente luce, &c. *at the dawn of day, &c.*; sub idem tempus, *about*; sub eas literas recitatæ sunt tuæ, sub festos dies, *after, Cic.*

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. un-

der; sub urbe, *near, Ter.* sub ea conditione, *v. -em on or with.*

SUPER Numidiam, *above, beyond*; super ripas, *upon*; super hæc; super morbum etiam famies affixit, *besides, Liv.* super arbore, fronde super viridi, *upon*; super hac re scribere, his accensa super, *concerning*; alii super alios trucidantur, *Liv.* Super cœnam, super vinum & epulas, *for inter, during, Curt.* Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, *for, Virg.*

SUBTER terram vel terra, *under.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, pallam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra.* But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit, sc. post id tempus.* *Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & clam,* are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl. as, *Intus cellam, for intra, Liv.* *Intus templo divum, sc. in, Virg.* *Simul hic, sc. cum, Hor.*

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regione: ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte: abs before q and t; as, abs te, abs quivis homine, Ter. Some phrases are used only with e; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re mita est, &c.* Some only with ex; as, *Ex compacto, ex tempore, magna ex parte, &c.*

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos, scil. ad; It portis, sc. ex, Virg.* *Nunc id prodeo, scil. ob vel propter, Ter.* *Maria aspera juro, scil. per, Virg.* *Ut se loco movere non possent, scil. e vel de, Cæs.* *Vina promens dolio, scil. ex, Hor.* *Quid illi facias? Quid me fiet, sc. de, Ter.* And so in English, *Show me the book; Get me some paper, that is, to me, for me.* We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordie, sc. adem, Sall.* *Round St. Paul's, namely, church; Campum Stellateni divisi extra fortem ad viginti millibus civium, i. e. civium millibus ad viginti millia, Suet.* But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emissere servum, scil. manu, Plaut.* *Euumere virus, scil. ore, Cic.* *Educere copias, scil. castris, Cæs.*

XLV! A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

<i>Adeamus scholam,</i>	Let us go to the school.
<i>Exeamus scholā,</i>	Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam*; *Exire e schola*; *Adgredi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingredi orationem* vel *in orationem*; *inducere animum*, & *in animum*; *evadere undis*, & *ex undis*; *decedere de suo jure*, *decedere viâ* vel *de via*; *expellere*, *ejicere*, *exterminare*, *extrudere*, *exturbare urbe*, & *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari*, *alloqui*, *al-latrare aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So *Alluere urbem*; *accollere flumen*; *circumvenire aliquem*; *præterire injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdi-care magistratum*); *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem*, *adhortari ad aliquid*, *incidere in morbum*, *avocare a studiis*, *avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire*, *demigrare loco*; & *a*, *de*, *ex loco*; *abstrahere aliquem a*, *de*, *vel e conspectu*; *Desistere sententiā*, *a* *vel de sententia*, *Excidere manibus*, *de vel e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egredi urbe or *urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere insidiis* or *insidiæ*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Sceleratā excedere terrā*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus*; *pugnam*, *vincula*, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

3. The CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as;

O vir bonus or bone! O good man! *Heu me miserum!* Ah wretched me!

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter. *Heu vanitas humana!* Plin. *Heu miserande puer!* Virg. *O præclarum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum!* Cic.

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei nihilo! Ah me! *Væ vobis!* Wo to you!

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ab*, *vab*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem!* Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case

therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely: thus, *Heu miseram!* stands for *Heu! quam me miserum sentio!* *Hei mibi!* for *Hei! quantum est mibi!* *Prob dolor!* for *Prob! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

X The CONSTRUCTION of CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

I. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duabus assibus, I bought a book for two shillings.
Constitit talento, It cost a talent.

So *Affe carum est*; *vile viginti minis*; *auro venale*, &c. *Nocet enipta dolore voluptas*, Hor. *Spem pretio non emam*, Ter. *Plurimi auro veneunt honores*, Ovid.

¶ These genitives *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it? *Affe et pluris*, A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *pärvo pretio*, *impenso pretio vendere*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magnō*, *permagnō*, *pārvo*, *pāululo*, *minimō*, *plūrimō*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagnō constitit*, scil. *pretio*, Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carē*, *cariū*, *carissimē*; *bene*, *meliū*, *optimē*; *malē*, *pējū*, *viliū*, *vilissimē*; *Valde carē cestimas*: *Emi domum prope dimidio carius*, *quam cestimabat*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret*, Liv.

2. MANNER and CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu, I am pale for fear.
Fecit suo more, He did it after his own way.
Scribo calamo, I write with a pen.

So Ardet dolore; pallescere culpâ; cestuare dubitatione; gestire voluptate vel secundis rebus: Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentia: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore fratre; hence Rex Dei gratiâ. Paritur pax bello, Nep. Procedere Vente gradus; Acceptu regio apparatu: Nullo sono convertitur annus, Juv. Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede, Ovid. Percutere securi, defendere faxis, configere fagittis, &c.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta es*, Virg. *Magno cum metu*; *Hoc de causa*: *Præ mortore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio*, not *cum gladio*; unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, *Trajectus ab ense*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis*: *Ingressus est cum gladio*, Cic.

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum*, Liv. *Floruit acuminis ingenii*, Cic. *Pollit opibus, valet armis, vicit memoria famâ nobilis*, &c. *Eger pedibus*. When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore*, seldom *marmoris*; *Perulum ex auro factum*, Cic.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by* or *through* *which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions.

1. The Place WHERE.

L. When the question is made by *Ubi?* Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Romæ,
Mortuus est Londini,*

He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative ; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,
Studuit Parisis,*

He dwells at Carthage.
He studied at Paris..

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it; we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud* ; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy..

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood ; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed : thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris* : but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi* ?

2. The Place WHITHER..

LI. When the question is made by *Quo* ; Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative ; as,]

Venit Romam, He came to Rome.
Profectus est Athenas; He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom ; as, *Carthagini nuncius mittam*, Horat.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied ; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Hec nunciant domum Albani*, Id. *Messianam literas dedit*, Cic.

3. The Place WHENCE..

LII. When the question is made by *Unde*? Whence? or *Qua*? By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative ; as,

Discit i-

<i>Discessit Gerintho,</i>	He departed from Corinth.
<i>Lacuisse iter faciebat,</i>	He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used ; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, Nep.

Domus and *Rus.*

LIII. | *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns ; | as,

<i>Manet domi,</i>	He stays at home.
<i>Domum reveritur,</i>	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum,</i>	I am called from home.
<i>Vivit rure, or more frequently ruri,</i>	He lives in the country.
<i>Rediit rure,</i>	He is returned from the country.
<i>Abiit rus,</i>	He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. | *Humi*, *militiae*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns ; | thus, :

Domi et militiae, or *belli*, At home and abroad.. *Facet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition ; as, *In domo paterna*, not *domi paternæ* ; So, *Ad domum paternam* : *Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus*, *tuis*, *suis*, *noster*, *vester*, *regius*, and *alienus* ; as, *Domini meæ vixit*, Cic. *Regiam dñnum comportant*, Sall.

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes not ; as, *Deprehensus est domi*, *domo*, or *in domo* *Cæsaris*.

LIV. | To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added ; | as,

When the question is made by

<i>Ubi?</i>	<i>Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.</i>
<i>Quo?</i>	<i>Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, or ad urbem, &c.</i>
<i>Unde?</i>	<i>Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.</i>
<i>Qua?</i>	<i>Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.</i>

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns ; as, *In Roma* for *Romæ* ; *ad Romam*, *ex Roma*, &c.

Peto always governs the accusative as an active verb, without

without a preposition ; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns ; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, Cæs. *Cretæ jussit confidere Apollo*, Virg. *Non Lybie*, for *in Lybia* ; *non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*. Id. *Aen.* iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Roma*, *Numidiæque facinora ejus memorat*, Sall.

4. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

LV.] Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative ;] as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,
Urbs distat triginta milia, or tri- }
 ginta millibus passuum,
Iter, or itinere unius dici,

The wall is ten feet high.

The city is thirty miles distant ;
 One day's journey.

Obs. 1.] The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension ;] as, *Longus*, *latus*, *craesus*, *profundus*, and *altus* : *Patet*, *porrigitur*, *eminet*, &c. The names of measure are *pes*, *cubitus*, *ulna*, *passus*, *digitus*, an inch ; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance ; as, *Eo*, *curro*, *absum*, *dijo*, &c. The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number ; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative ; or the accusative with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe confedit*, or *ad sex milia passuum*, Cæs. *Ad quintum milliarium v. milliare confedit*, Cic. *Ad quintum lapidem*, Nep.

Obs. 4.] The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative ;] as,

Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. *Britannia longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliaribus superat*.

5. TIME.

LVI. | When the question is made by *Quando*?
When? time is put in the ablative ; } as,

Venit horā tertią, He came at three o'clock.

¶ | When the question is made by *Quamdiu*? How long?
time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the
accusative ; } as,

Mansit paucos dies, He staid a few days.

Sex mensibus absuit, He was away six months.

* | Or thus, Time when is put in the ablative, time how
long is put in the accusative. }

Obs. 1. | When we speak of any precise time, it is put in
the ablative ; but when continuance of time is expressed,
it is put for the most part in the accusative. }

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a
preposition ; as, *In præsentia*, or *in præsenti*, scil. tempore; *in vel ad præsens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *ad horam destinatam*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus, ad Kalendas soluturos ait*, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *istibuc*, *etatis*, *temporis*, *horæ*, &c. for *bac etate*, *boc tempore*, &c. And *ante* or some other word ; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, sc. *ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt*, sc. *tet annis*, *quot vel quotque sunt*, Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad soon*; *Oppidum paucis diebus*, *quibus eō ventum est*, *expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*, Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias acceperūt suas literas*, for *die tertio ante*, Cic. *Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris*, Id. *Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quam per*, Cic. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem Septemque*, sc. *Atticus*; for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old, Nep.

Obs. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition ; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante* ; as, *Paucos post annos*: but here, *ea* or *id* may be understood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or phrases, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes : That is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must therefore be in every sentence or period as many prepositions, as there are verbs of a finite mode.

| Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions ;] as,

Happy is the man who loveth religion and practiseth virtue.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. | The relative *Qui*, *Quæ*, *Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person ; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place ;] as,

Singular.

		Plural.
<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Fœmina quæ,</i>	The woman who.	<i>Fœminæ quæ.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.	<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui paret,</i>	The man whom he obeys.	<i>Viri quibus paret.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cuius opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem miseroi, cuius misereor vel misereo, &c. cuius me miseret, cuius vel cuja interest, &c.</i>	The man whom I pity.	whose interest it is, &c.

| If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb. |

But

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit; vir, quem (virum) amo: Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat*, Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbus dedit*, Ter. sc. *Eunuchus*. Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*, Cæs. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat, for sunt homines, quos homines*, &c. Hor.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chœos, Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*, Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem*, Cic. *Cogito id quod res est*, Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se affixit, quid mibi est summo dolori*, scil. *Pompeium se affigere*, Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus qui for sceleratus*, Ter. *Abundantia carum r. rum, quæ mortales prima putant*, scil. *negotia*, Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitiæ futo, facit ut te moneam* scil. *negotium*, Ter. *In omni Africa, qui agebant; for in omnibus Afris*, Sallust. Jug. 89. *Non dissidentia futuri, quæ imperavisset, for quod*, Ib. 100.

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio*, scarcely *facit*. In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make, or maketh*. But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus it is proper to say,

T

"I am

“I am the man, who takes care of your interest,” but if I add, “at the expense of my own,” it would be improper. It ought either to be, “his own,” or “who take.” In like manner, we may say, “I thank you, who gave, who did love,” &c. But it is improper to say, “I thank thee, who gave, who did love :” it should be, “who gavest, who didst love.” In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective ; as,

Omnis laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum;
Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words ; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbre aves rapuisse feruntur* ; i. e. *pluit imbre carne, quem imbre, &c.* Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure horinis necandi, quæ multa sunt, scil. tempora,* Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted ; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit : Tyrii tenuere coloni, scil. quam or eam, Virg.* Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case ; as, *Bocibus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt* ; for *qui* in *priore pugna non adfuerant*, Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed ; as, *The letter I wrote, for the letter which I wrote ; The man I love, to wit, whom.* But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent ; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuēsti, for que consuēsti agere, or quorum aliquid agere consuēsti, Cic. Restitue in quem me acceperisti locum, for in locum, in quo, Ter. And. iv. 1. 58.* But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, and idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui* ; as, *Liber eius, His or her book ; Vita eorum, Their life, when applied to men ; Vita eorum, Their life, when applied to women.* By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantum, quod, &c.* are also sometimes construed like relatives ; as, *Facies est, qualiter debet esse sororum, Ovid.* But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them ; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantum vel sapere potest : and are often applied to different substantives ; as, Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas, Cic.*

Obs.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our Father which art in heaven*: and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *This is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quid cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt advenire?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (*actually or in fact*) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, sc. vocor. Quid queris? Librum, sc. quero. Quotā herā venisti? Sextā. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus, not mei. Quanti emptus es? Dicem offlus. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimine.* Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur? Statim, sc. a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: Aliunt Petrum fecisse. Quomodo vales? Bene, male. Scripsisse? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minime, &c. Charea tuam regem detraxit tili? Factum. Et cù es indicatus? Factum. Ter.* Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

The CONSTRUCTION of CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. /The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; /as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,
Nec legit nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions ; as likewise, *quam*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an* ; and also adverbs of likeness, as, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, &c. as,

Nullum præmium a verbis posulo, præterquam hujus dici memoriam, Cic.
Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur. Id.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together ; as,

Interest mea et reipublicæ ; Constitit aſſe et pluris ; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro ; Decius cum ſe devovet, et in medianam aciem irruerat, Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summique industria ; Neque per vim, neque inſidiis*, Sall. *Tecum habita, & nōris, quam fit tibi curta ſupellex*, Pers.

Obs. 3. When *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise* ; *aut* or *vel*, by *either* ; the first *sive*, by *whether* ; and the first *nec*, by *neither* ; as,

Et legit, et ſcribit : ſo tum legit, tum ſcribit ; or cum legit, tum ſcribit, He both reads and writes ; Sive legit, ſive ſcribit, Whether he reads or writes : Fucere quā vere, quā falsa ; Increpare quā conſules ipſos, quā exercitum, to upbraid both the conſuls and the army, Liv.

LIX. | Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural ;) as,
Petrus et Joannes, qui ſunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. | If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third. As, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, Cic. In English the person speaking usually puts himself last : thus, *You and I read* ; *Cicero and I are well* : but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first : thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter ; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui* : but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied ; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, a.i quos, &c.* *Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c.* Cic. Where *Athenæ* & *urbs* are put for the learned men of Athens. So in substantives ; as, *Ad Ptolemaeum Cleopatraeque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, Liv.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender ; as, *Divitiae, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life ; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negitia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest ; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto*, Virg. *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault, and you ; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina, defunt* ; or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina*. *Omnia, quibus turbari solita eras civitas, demi discordia, foris bellum exortum* ; *Duo millia et quadringenti caesi*, Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense ; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Larèm proprium vescor, for vescimur*, Horat.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et* ; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood ; as, *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant*, Ter. *Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur*, Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. / The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode ;} as,

*Lego ut discam,
Utinam saperes,*

I read that I may learn.
I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, *Quantus, qualis, quicquid, quotuplex, uter;* Pronouns, as, *quis & cujus;* Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, quicquid, ut, quam, quantopere;* or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon:* Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit;* I do not know who it is. *An venturus est?* *Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit.* *Viden' ut alta slet nive candidum Soracte?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ego,* Plaut. *Haud scio an amat,* Ter. *Vide avaritia quid facit,* Id. *Vides quam turpe est,* Cic.

In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE;* *Neque Antonius procul abeat;* *utpote qui sequetur, &c.* Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. So *Est qui, sunt qui, est quando v, ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE, *Haud scio an recte dixerim*, is the same with *dico, affirmo;* Cic.

So in English, *if, though, unless, except, whatever, whether, or; also so, before, ere, till, &c.* have after them the subjunctive mode; as, *If thou let this man go; If thou be the Son of God; Although my house be not so; Though he stay me; Though he fall, &c.* *Unless he wash his feet; I will not let thee go except thou bless me; Except it were given from above; Whether it were I or they; Whosoever he be; Whatever be our fate, &c.* So likewise *that*, expressing the motive or end; *lest, and that* annexed to a command preceding; and *if* with *but* following it; as, *Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall; Beware that thou bring not my son thither; If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.*

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if, or though;* as, “Had he done this, he had escaped,” i. e. if he had done this; “Charm he never so wisely,” or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. *how wisely soever, for, th. u. h* he charm, &c.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate

minate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode ; as, *If he is to do it ; Although he was rich, &c.*

Obs. 3. *ETSI*, *TAMETSI*, and *TAMENETSI QUANQUAM*, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative ; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive ; *ETIAMSI* and *QUAMVIS* commonly have the subjunctive, and *UT*, although, always has it ; as, *Ut queras, non reperies*, Cic. *QUONIAM*, *QUANDO*, *QUANDO-QUIDEM*, are usually construed with the indicative ; *SI*, *SIN*, *NE*, *NISI*, *SIQUEDEM* ; *QUOD*, and *QUIA*, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. *DUM*, for *dummodo*, provided, has always the subjunctive ; as, *Oderint dum metuant*, Cic. And *QUIPPE*, for *nam*, always the indic. ; as, *Quippe veter satis*.

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them ; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former : thus, when *etsi*, *tametsi*, or *quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet, or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam—quam* ; *Adeo* or *ita,—ut* : in English, *As,—as* or *so* ; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante,—quam*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, *censeo*, *suadeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, and the like ; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine*, *fac*, or *facito* ; as, *Ducas volo ho-die uxorem* ; *Nolo mentiare* ; *Fac cogites*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave* ; as, *Cave fa-cias*, Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood ; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. iv. 47. scil. *prost*. And so in English, *See you do it* ; *I beg you would come to me*, sc. *that*.

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *Quod* are thus distinguished : *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future ; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done ; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn ; *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeà*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, &c.

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo*, *veresr*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense ; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it ; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not

not do it. *Id paves nē ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. *Ut sit vitalis, metuo*, Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not; — *ne frater moriatur*, will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

The CONSTRUCTION of COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative ; as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter than honey. *Prestanti.r aurɔ*, better than gold.

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative ; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *pre* understood, which is sometimes expressed ; as, *Fortior pre ceteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions ; as, *Immanier ante emnes*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quam*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires ; as,

Dulcior quam mel, scil. est. *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quam amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quam ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, sc. ab.

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus* ; as,

Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, Cæs. scil. *quam*. *Plus quingentes colaphos infregit mibi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter. *Casra ab urbe baud plus quinque milia passuum locant*, sc. *quam*, Liv.

Quam is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives ; as,

Triumphus clarior quam gravior, Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added ; as, *Prælium atrocissimum, quam pro numero pugnantium editur*, Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione*, *spe*, *æquo*, *justo*, *dicto* ; as,

Credibili, opinione major, Cic. *Credibili fortior*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*, Sall. *Dicto citius*, Virg. *Majora credibili tulimus*, Liv. They are often understood ; as, *Liberius vivebat, sc. justo*, too freely, Nepos.

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemis* or *nulli* ; as,

Nibil-vidi quicquid ætius, for *neminem*, Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius*, Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum*. So *quis nobis laberius*,

thus, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nulla re*, or *quam pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque*, *plus plusque*, *minus minusque*, *carior carierque*; *Quotidie plus*, *indies magis*, *semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

Obs. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better: but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, there is none better than *he*, not, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*, than *she*, than *they*, &c. the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quam ego*, He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, Ter.

Obs. 6. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (or more shortly, the difference of measure is put in the ablative); as,

Est decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor*, as big again, or a half bigger, Cic. *Ter tanto peior est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius*, Plaut. *Quinque tanto amplius, quam quantum licium sit civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio*, &c. thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felius*, The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo*, *tanto*, *quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*, Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit*, Liv.

The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

- Sole vidente, fraginnt tenebre, { The sun rising, or while the sun riseth,
 } darkness flies away.
 Operे paracto, ludemus, { Our work being finished, or when our
 } work is finished, we will play.

So, Dominante libidine, temperantie nullus est locus; Nihil animitiā praefabilius est, exceptā virtute; Oppressā libertate patrie, nihil est quid spernus amplius; Nolium vitā viduque mutato, riores mutari civitatum puto, Cic. Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi egerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatore crevis Romanam respectante, et ab auguribus, simul aves rite admissent, ex compositione telluriter signum, Liv. Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastā, Mars edes, Ovid. Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. / This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence. /

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Militis, hostibus viciis, redierunt*. The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus viciis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered*; 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered*; 3. *By conquering the enemy*; 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy*, &c.

Obs. 2. / The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consedit*, never his locutis. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romini adepti libertatem floruerunt*; or *Romani, libertate adepti, floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore find them rarely used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. / The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce, scil. existente. His consulibus, scil. existentibus. Invitā Minervā, scil. existente, against the grain; Crassa Minervā, without learning, Hor. Magistrū ac duce naturā; vivis fratribus; te hortatore; Cæsare impulsore, &c.* Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent*, i. e. cum nondum compertum esset, Liv. Tum de-

muri piam facto, sc. negotio, Id. Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera letus, Hor. Parto quod avebas, Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive ; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a Substantive plural joined with a participle singular ; as, *Nobis presentae*, Plaut. *Absente nobis*, Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb ; as, *me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Laetos fecit se consule fastos*, Lucan. v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*, Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood ; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed ; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*, Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely ; as, *Pernicioſa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturae accusatur*, Sallust. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways ; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum*, or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative ; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX to SYNTAX.

I. Various Signification and Construction of VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ASPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amorem dictis, sc ei, *to infuse*, Virg.

DESPERARE sibi, de se; salutem, saluti, de salute, *to despair of*.

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send us an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, i. e. testamento relinquere. *N. B.* Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatim allegantur; unde allegati.

DELEGARE æs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, i. e. in eum transferre, Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, eum metu, *to ease*.

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, i. e. sordidam togam induere. Liv. vestem cum aliquo, Ter. fidei, *to break*.

OBNUNCIARE comitiis vel concilio, i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, *to hinder*, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words ALIO DIE; Consuli v. magistratur; i. e prohibere ne cum populo agat, Cic.

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic.

RENUNCIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consullem, *to declare*, *to name*; vitæ, amicitiam ei, *to give up*; muneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium ei, *to divorce*.

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*; se ad negotium, Plaut. pecunium alicui v. apud aliquem grandi fœnore, *to give at interest*, Cic. occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium; begins first, anticipates, Liv.

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Ciliciae, *to seize beforehand*, Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*, Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose*; hence, UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? if any one shou'd ask. Comitia rogan-dis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom legi*, *to disannul a law*, *to repeal*, or *to change in part*; multum, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

ABROGARE id sibi, *to claim*.

DEROGARE aliquid legi, v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong;* diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute;* legi, *to add a new clause, or to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards;* aliquem ex censu, animam alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome;* montes, *to pass;* superat pars cæpti, sc. operis, *remains;* Captæ superavimus urbì, *survived,* Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate;* orbem, *to rule;* mihi sibi, *to restrain, to forbear;* alicui, *to spare;* cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from;* animo, sc. in, *to be at ease;* philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to;* vacat locus, *is empty;* si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge;* ab interitu, exercitum famie, *to free;* id sibi, & ad se, *to claim;* libertatem ejus, *to defend;* se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die;* animos, *to encourage;* manus, *to yield;* manum ei, *to shake hands;* Plaut. jura, *to prescribe laws;* literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another;* terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly;* hostes in fugam, *to put to flight;* operam, *to endeavour;* operam philosophiæ, literis, palæstræ, *to apply to;* operam honoribus, *to seek,* Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request,* Ter.

gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall,* &c. cognitores honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character,* Cic. aliquid mutuum, v. utendum, *to lend;* pecuniam fœnori, & collocare, *to place at interest;* se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio, *to think much of;* se ad aliquid, *to apply to;* se auctoritati senatus, *to yield;* fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish;* Cic. effectum, *to perform;* senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate;* actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute;* præcipitem, *to tumble headlong;* aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father;* lectos faciendos, *to bespeak;* Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a law-suit in favour of one;* aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, rarely lethum alicui, *to kill;* aliquid alicui dono, v. muneri, *to make a present;* crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise;* pœnas, *to suffer;* nomén militiæ, v. in militiam, *to list one's self to be a soldier;* se alicui, *to be familiar with,* Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me,* Id. aures, *to listen;* obli-vioni, *to forget;* civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city;* dicta, *to speak;* verbâ alicui, *to impel on,* *to cheat;* se in viam, *to enter on a journey;* viam ei, *to give place;* jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest;* se turpiter, *to make a shabby appearance;* fundum vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of,* *to warrant the title to;* Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usi, Lucre. servos in quæstionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured;* primas, secundas, &c. (sc. partes) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery;* Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. conias diffundere ventis, *to let them blow loose,* Virg. Da mihi v. nobis, tel.

tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, as matters go; solerterem dabō, I'll warrant him expert, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, to give security that what the judge has determine! shall be paid, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, to stand with, to be of the same party; judicio ejus, to follow; in sententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, to stand to, to make good an agreement; rejudicatā, to keep to what has been determined; stare, v. constare animo, to be in his senses: Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, It is not owing to me that, Ec. multorum sanguine ea Pænis victoria stetit, cost, Liv. Mihi stat plere mortuum definere, I am resolved, Nep.

ADSTARE mente, to stand by; ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, to consist of; secum, to be consistent with, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, cost me; non constat ei color, his colour comes and goes; auri ratio constat, the sum is right. Constat, impers. It is evident, certain, or agreed on; mihi, ipse omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, to be above, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, to remain, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

INSTARE viatis, to press on the vanquished; rectam viam, to be in

the right way; currum Marti, to make speedily, Virg.; instat factum, insiste that it was done, Ter.

OESTARE ei, to hinder.

PRAESTARE multa, to perform; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant, Juv. impensas, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolument, to preserve; se virum, i. e. prebere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, to bestow; culpam, v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; praestabo de me; eum facturum, I will be answerable. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum judicii praestare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, In recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N. B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipii, i. e. quasi emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.

Praefat, imperf. i. e. it is better: Praesto esse alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri prostant venales, the books are exposed to sale.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, to recline near; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, to sit upon; stratis & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Verbs in E O.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, v. inter manus, to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; judicium, to hold a trial; honorera ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter.: fidem alicui, to trust or be-

lieve; curam d. v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office; rationem, v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concession ad populum, to make a speech; aliquem odio, in odium, to hate; dulrio, to mock; id religioni, t
bar

have a scruple about it: So, habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi; se bene &c. graviter, to be well or ill; se parec & duriter, to live, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum v. pro certo, to know for certain; aliquem contemptui, despiciui, -um, v. in despicatum, to despise; excusatum, to excuse; susque deque, to scorn, to slight; Ut res se habet, stands, is; rebus ita se habentibus, in this state of affairs; Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, a form of divorce.

ADIBERE diligentiam; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, to use; in convivium v. consilium, to admit; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, to apply; vinum ægrotis, to give; aures veribus, to bear with taste; cultum & preces diis, to offer, Cic. Exhibete molestiam alicui, to cause trouble.

JUBERI legem, to make law; to pass; regem, to chose; aliquem salvere, to twist one health; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, divorced, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, adj. utriusque linguae; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latinè & Græcè; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ, Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem v. de re; sibi, de isthoc, to take care of, Ter. plus, to be more wise, Cic. De hoc tu videris, consider, be answerable for, Cic. Videor videre, methinks I see; visus sum audire, methought I heard; mihi visus est dicere, he seemed; Quid tibi videtur? What

think you? Si tibi videtur, if you please; videtur secisse, guilty, &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, v. honori ejus; ei vel eum, to envy.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, to foresee; ei, to provide for; in posterum; rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, to ride; toga bene sedet, fits; Sedet hoc animo, is fixed, Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbalem, to sit by, Sal. Assidet insano, is near or like to, Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, to disagree.

INSIDERE equo; & in equo, to sit upon; locum, Liv. in animo, memoriam, to be fixed.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, to command, Cic. exercitum, Italianam, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugnæ, loquæ, to forbear, to give over.

PENDERE promissis, ab v. ex aliquo, to depend; de, ex, ab & in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, threatens.

SPONDERE & despondere fidiam alicui, to betroth.

DESONDERE domum alicujus sibi, to be sure of, Cic. animo & -is, to promise, to hope; animum & -os, to despair; Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, to answer; votis ejus, to satisfy his wishes; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, v. de pace; legem, to speak in favour of.

DOLERE casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, to be in favour with one, lex valet, is in force; quid verbum valeat, non.

non video, signifies; valet decem talenta, or estener talentis, is worth; vale vel valeas, farewell; or ironically, away with you.

EMINERE aliqua re vel in aliqua re, inter omnes; super cætera, Liv. super utrumque. Hor. se de eminent, to excel; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, to be above. Imminere alicui, to hang over, to threaten; in occasionem, exitio aliquid, to seek, to watch for.

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, sc. in, to keep; modum, ordinem, to observe; rem, dicta, lectionem, to understand, to remember; linguam, but not suam, silentium, se in silentio, to be silent; ora, to keep the countenance fixed; secundum locum imperii, to hold, Nep. jura civium, to enjoy Cic. causam, to gain; mare, to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of; terram, portum, metam, montes, to reach; risum, lachrymas, to restrain; se ab accusando, quin accusat, Cic. Ventus tenet, hiscus; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. to be bound by; leges tenent eum, bind; teneri in manifesto furto, to be seized; tenet fama, prevails.

ABSTINERE maledictis, v. a, to abstain; publico, to live retired, Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, to keep from; jus belli ab aliquo, not to treat rigorously, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, concerns me; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratem pertinet, for meus, fratrius est, belongs to; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinent, reach.

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consulatus, to bear the character; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, to withhold assent; rem in noctem, to defer.

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, to expect, Liv. promissis, to stand to, to keep, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, awaits, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERERE laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, to serve as a soldier; futilarium, to be beaten to death.

HÆRERE latrari; tergis v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, I am in doubt; Vide, ne hæreas, lest you be at a loss, Cic.

ADHÆRERE & adhærescere iustitiae; ad turrim; in nie. Inhaerere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, to decamp; bella, to raise; aliquem tribu, to remove a Roman citizen from a more honorable to a less honorable tribe; e senatu, to degrade a senator; risum vel jocum alieni, to cause laughter; stomachum ei, to trouble, Cic.

FAVETE ore, vel linguis, sc. mihi, attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen.

Cavere aliiquid, aliquem, vel ab aliquo, to guard against, to avoid; alicui, to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client; aliiquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo vel per aliquem de re aliqua, to get security on; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, I have got security by bail and bond; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, sc. ne, see you don't do it; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, I must take care.

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, Suet. to wink; in hominum iceleribus, to take no notice of, Cic.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, paucam, fineam vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fons, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, to make; divortium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem, to show; Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, to pretend, Cic. æs alienum, v. contrahere, conflare, to contract debt; animos, to encourage; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, to lose; naufragium, to suffer; sumptum, to spend; gratum alicui, to oblige; gratiam delicti, to pardon a fault; gratiam legis, to dispense with; justa vel funus alicui, to perform one's funeral rites; rem, to make an estate; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; fœdus, v. inire, icere, ferire, persecutere, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. to make a league; moram alicui, to delay: verba, to speak; audienciam sibi, Cic. negotium, et facessere, to trouble; aliquid missum, to pass over: aliquem missum, to dismiss or excuse; ad aliquid, rarely alicui, to be fit or useful; ratum, to ratify; planum, to explain; palam suis, to make known; Nep. stipendum pedibus, v. equo, & merere, to serve in the army; sacra, sacrificium, v. rem divinam, to sacrifice; reum, to impeach; fabulum, carmen, versus, &c. to write a play, &c. copiam consilii ei, to offer advice; copiam vel potestatem dicendi legatis, to grant leave; fidem, to procure or give credit; periculum, to make trial; potestatem sui, to expose himself, Nep. aliquem loquenter, v. loqui, to suppose or represent, Cic. piraticam, sc. rem, to be a pirate; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. to be an

nsurer, a physician, &c. versoram, to contract a new debt to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo, to side with; contra v. adversus, to oppose; nomen v. nomina, to borrow money, and also, to settle accounts, i. e. rationes acceptarum, sc. pecuniarum & expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in litura, to write it where something was before, Cic. pedem, v. pedes, to trim the sails, Virg. Fac ita esse, suppose it is so; obvius fieri alicui, to meet; ne longum, v. longa faciam, ut breve faciam, not to be tedious; equus non facit, will not move, Cic. Fac velle, sc. me, suppose me to be willing, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominiâ, pœnâ, morte, leto, &c. to praise, honour, &c. to disgrace, punish, &c. Affactus æstate, morbo, weakened.

CONFICERE bellum, to finish; orationes, to compose, Nep. cibum, to chew; argentum, to raise, to get: alio to spend, Cic.; cum aliquo de re, to conclude a bargain; exercitus hostium, to destroy; alterum Curiatium, to kill, Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant; i. e. emeriti, had served out their time, Cic.

DEFICERE animo, to faint; ab aliquo, to revolt; tempus deficit mihi vel me, fails: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. to be deprived of.

INFICERE se vitro, to stain: Infectus, part. stained'; infectus, adj. not done. Inficiar, -atus, -ari, to deny.

OFFICERE alicui, to binder er lunt; Diogeni apricanti, to stand betwixt him and the sun; auribus, visui, to stop or obstruct; Umbra teræ soli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

PRAFICERE aliquem exercitui, to set over. Proficere alicui, to profit, to do good; in philosophia, & progressus facere, to make progress.

REFICERE muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, to repair; animuni, vires, saucios, se, jumenta, to refresh, to recover.

SUFFICERE laboribus, ictibus, to be able to bear; arma v. vires alicui, to afford; Vaterius in locum Collatini suffectus est, was substituted, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos sufficti sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, having their eyes red and inflamed, Virg.

SATISFACERE alicui, in v. de aliqua re, to satisfy; fidei, promisso, to perform.

JACERE aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, to throw; fundamenta, & ponere, to lay; talos, to play at dice; anchoram, to cast.

ADJICERE, to add; oculos alicui rei, to covet; animum studiis, to apply; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

CONJICERE se in pedes, v. fugam, to fly; cætera, to conjecture.

INJICERE manus ei, to lay on: spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, to inspire; admirationem sui cuivis ipso aspectu, Nep.

OCJICERE se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, to oppose or expel: crimen ei, to lay to one's charge.

REJICERE tela in hostes, to throw back; judices, mala, to reject; rem ad senatum, Romani, to refer; rem ad Idus Febr. to delay, Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, to set an hen; se imperio alicujus, to submit; testamenta, to forge; testes, to suborn; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanant, to put or class under; aliquid ei, to suggest: libellum ei, i. e. in manus

dare: odio civium, to expose: bona Pomperii v. fortunas hastæ vel voci & sub voce præconis, to expose to public sale, Cic. sub hasta venire, to be sold, Liv.

TRAJICERE copias v. exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans fluvium, to transport: Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus est, passed or sailed over. Trajectus ferro, pierced.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c. augurium, v. auspicium, & agere, to take an omen: exemplum de aliquo: locum castris: terrani, to alight: insulam, summa, sc. loca, to reach: spolia ex nobilitate, to gain, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, to receive or enjoy: virginem Vestalem, to chuse: amentium, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, to bear, to contain: aliquem, consilio, perfidia, to catch: nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, the house hardly contains us: Altero oculo capitur, blind of one eye: capitur locis, he is delighted with, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, to receive: Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, two copies of the same letter, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, to hear: id in bonam partem, to take in good part, to understand in a good sense: omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, v. rude donari, to be discharged as a gladiator; aliquem bene v. male, to treat: eum male acceptum in Medium hiematum coegit redire, roughly handled, Nep. rogationem, to approve the bill;

bill; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, to allow to stand candidate; omen, to esteem good; satisfactio nem v. excusationem, Cæs. Accep tus plebi, apud plebem, popular.

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, to prescribe the form of an oath; conceptis verbis jurare: iniurias cum aliquo, to bear enmity to one; aquam, to gather, to form the head of an aquæduct, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE cum hospitio, to entertain; fugientes, to catch; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem patera, to keep or gather; notis, & scribere, to write in short hand; motus futuros, to perceive; Hos homines excipio, I except; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, succeeded; sic except regia Juno, replied, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, to begin. Percipere fructus, to reap.

PRÆCIPERE futura, to foresee; gaudia, spem victoriarum, to anticipate; pecuniam mutuam, to take before the time, Cæs. lac, to dry up, Virg. alicui id, v. de ea re, to order; artem ei, to teach.

RECIPERE aliquid, to receive; urbem, to recover; eum teatis, to entertain; se v. pedem, to retreat; se domum, to return; se, mentem, animum, to come to one's self again, to recover spirits; in se, to take charge; alicui, to promise; se ad frugem, to amend; senem sessum, to give a seat to, Cic.

RAPERE vel trahere in pejorative partem, to take a thing in the worst sense; in jus, to bring before a judge; partes inter se, to share, Liv. Sub divum, to reveal, Horat.

U O.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se velibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, to cast off; fidem, sacramentum, to break; mentem, to change, Virg. hostem castris, to beat from.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum: cæteros, Ter. spumas, to drive or toss, Virg.

LUERE penas capitum, to suffer; æs alienum, to pay, Curt. culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine, to expiate, to atone or suffer for.

ELUERE amicitias remissione usus, to drop gradually, Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, to appoint; exemplum in hominem, vel -ne, to make one a public example; aliquem capite in terram, to set or place, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, to settle; agmen paulisper, to make to stop or halt, Sall. in digitis, to count on one's fingers, Cic. urbem, to build, Quid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, appointed, resolved, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, makes, constitutes, Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, a good constitution, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, to forsake; spem, to deceive; propositum, to give over, Ovid. deos pacta mercenaria, to defraud, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem secundum hæredem filio, to appoint, Cic. collegium fabrorum, sacra, to institute, to found, Plin. aliquem doctrinam, Græcis literis, to instruct; naves, to build, Cæs. sermionem, to enter upon, Id. animum ad cogitandum, to settle; antequam pro Murœna dicere instituo, I begin, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, qua actione illum uti eporteat, to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use, Cic. tempus ei, to determine.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem suis, to restore; oppida vicosque, to repair; aciem inclinatam, to rally; prælium, to renew, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, to substitute or put in the place of, Cic.

STRUERE

STRUERE epulas, *to prepare*; insidias, mendacium, *to contrive*; odium, crimen alicui, *vel in aliquem*, *to raise against*.

B O.

SCRIBERE sua manu, bene, vel lociter, epistolam alicui, v. ad aliquem; bellum, v. de bello; milites, *to enlist*; supplementum militibus, t. recuit tuem; heredem, *to make one his heir*; dicam ei, t. res suarum agi. s. tene; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decenivir legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, v. -e, *to make free*.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; partes Italicae, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to distribute*, *to divide*; vestigia civitatis, i. e. imperare; jura, i. e. dare v. constituere; censores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, *to direct a letter*; librum, *to entitle or name*; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold*, *to set to sale*; aliquem, *to banish*, *to outlaw*.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis v. ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, *to write an answer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to set foot soldiers on horseback*, Cæs.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, *to write below*; causæ, *to join or take part in an accusation*; Casaris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

C O.

DICERE aliquid, v. de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad v. apud aliquem; in aliquem, *against*; ad aliquid, *in answer to*; sententiam, t. give an opinion; jus, *to ad-*

minister justice, *to pronounce sentence*; mulctam ci, *to amerce or fine*; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people*; prodicere, *to put it off*; ciusam, t. plead; testimonium, *to give evidence*; non idem loqui est ac dicere, t. harangue, Cic. sacramento; seldom sacramentum, *to take the military oath*.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction*, *to sell*; servituti, v. in servitutem, *to sentence or adjudge to bondage*; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor*; se alicui, *to devote himself to one's service*: avenson addixerunt, v. abdixerunt, *the birds did not give a favourable omen*; pretio addictam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, *to promise assistance*; cœnam alicui, v. ad cœnam, *to propose supping with one without invitation*.

EDICERE alicui, *to order*; delectum, *to appoint a levy*; prædum militibus, *to promise by an edict*; justitium, diem comitiis, *vel comitia consulibus creandis*, *to appoint*.

INDICERE bellum, justitium, *to proclaim war*; legem sibi, *to appoint*, Cic. catus in domos tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv. indicare, *to show*; Indictus, an adj. not said; causâ indicâ, v. non cognitâ condemnari, *to be condemned without being heard*; me indicente, haec non fiunt, *not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui, aliquid v. aliqua re; fœminis usum purpuræ, *to forbid or debar from*; ei aquâ & igne, v. aquam et ignem, *to banish*; malè rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdici solet, Cic. interdici non poterat sociro gener, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

PREDICERE alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hac re, *to foretell*, *to forewarn*.

DUCERE

DUCERE in carcerem &c. vincula, to lead; exercitum, to command; spiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; soiam, murum, fulcum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, also to carry on, Virg. etatem, diem, to spend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to summon before a judge; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, &c., ex aere, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue; genus, nomen ab &c. ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihil, infra se; id ei laudi, laudem, &c. in laudem, oftenener the first, to reckon it a praise to him; in conscientiam, to impute to a consciousness of guilt; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas, sc. usuras, vel fœnus centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a month; or at 12 per cent. per annum; binis centesimis fœnerari, to take 24 per cent. per annum, Cic. ducere longas voces in flatum, to draw out, Virg. ordines, to be a centurion, Liv. ilia, to pant like a broken winded horse, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, to draw in; habendas, to straiten the reins.

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, coquos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price: Conducit hoc tute laudi, in &c. ad rem, is of advantage.

DEDUCERE naves, to launch; classem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. eum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.

EDUCARE gladium e vagina, to draw; florem Italæ, to lead out; copias in aciem, Cic. filium, to educate, oftenener educare; in astra, to extol, Hor. cælo, Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, &c. in animum, to persuade himself; scuta pellibus, to cover, Cæs. soleas pedibus, &c. in pedes, to put on; colorem picturæ, to varnish, Plin. nomina, to cancel or rase, to rub out.

OBDUCERE exercitum, to lead against; callidi dolori, to blunt it; sepulchre in sentibus, to cover.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, vel alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance; in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile; Vallis reducta, retired or low.

PRODUCERE testes, to bring out; funus, to attend; Cermonem in noctem, to prolong, to continue; rem in hiemem, to defer; servos vendendos, to bring to market.

SUBDUCERE se a custodibus, to steal away; eaves, to draw up on shore; cibum ei & deducere; to take from; summam, rationes, to reckon, to cast up accounts.

PARCERE sibi, labore, to spare, &c. a cædibus, to forbear; aurumnatis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, &c. re aliqua, in &c. ad hoc, to be accustomed; mentem pluribus & assuefacere, Hor. Auiinis bella, Virg. to accusation. So insuesco rei &c. re; insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, to vote, to decree: hence plebiscitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, to assume; socios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, to associate; ritus peregrinos, to adopt.

CONSCISCERE mortem &c. necem sibi, to kill one's self; fugam sibi, to flee, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, &c. apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, or without ex: Dedisce, to forget what he hath learned; Ediscere, to get by heart.

DESCENDERE

DESCENDERE de palatio, præsidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to*, Cic.

D O.

LUDERE aleâ, v. -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to耗费 one's labour*.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliqueni: Colludere ei, cum eo: illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE insidias, -iis, velex, *to escape*; in muro, *to mount*: Hæc quorsum evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*: Clarus evasit, *became*. . .

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence cessio bonorum*; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, v. locum, *to give place*; vitâ, e vita decadere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes*.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad v. in oppidum, *to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, sententiaz, v. ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the quaestorship, or the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added*, Ter. Rôbur accessit ætati, Cic. Animi accessere hosti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, eò, accedit quod, *is added*.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui, to excel*.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paullum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitâ, *to be*; in sententia, ejus, *to agree*

into one's measures; in conditions, to agree to, Liv.

DISCEDERE transversam, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, *to depart in the last*.

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against*; to oppose a law; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, *there is*, &c.

SUCCEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, v. murum; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come up to*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause*; to be cast; in v. sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum, *mentiri, is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi pueri, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, v. ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus v. ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te istud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, cursum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cœlum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*: Manibus tendit divellere nodos, tries, Virg.

ATTFENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se: amori, post. for cum amore, *to strive*; causas, sc. inter se, *to compare*, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to understand*; rem pluribus

&

& luculentioribus verbis, to express; aliquem, humanitate, amicitia, to gain; rem fictam, to discover.

INFLNDERE animum rei, ad v. in rem, to apply: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, to exert; arcum, to bend; actionem v. litem alicui vel in aliquem, also impingere, to raise a law-suit against one; telum ei, v. in eum, to shoot at; manum v. digitum in aliquid, to point at: aliquo, sc. ire, to go to; officia, to overdo, to do more than is required, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, to cover, to veil.

PENDERE pecuniam, to pay; poenas, to suffer; id parvi, to value it little.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, to hang; expectatione, vel suspensum detinere, to keep in suspense; ædificium, to arch a house; naso adunco, to sneer at, Horat.

ABDLRE se literis, in literas, to hide or shut up one's self among books, se domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in silvas, tenebras; &c.

CONDERE urbem, to build; fructus, to lay up; in carcerem, to imprison; carmen, to compose; lumina, to close, Ovid. Jura, to establish; terra, sepulchro, in sepulchro, to bury.

DEFERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujas, ad aliquem, to surrender; Deditus præceptor, & studiis, sold of; vino epulisque, engaged in, Nep. dedita opera, or purpose.

EDERE librum, & in lucem, publico; ovum, to lay; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragam, to sound, sing, Sc. manus gladiatorium, to exhibit a show of gladiators; nomen, to mention; scetus, to bring forth; extrellum spiritum, to die; exempla cruciatus in aliquem, to inflict exemplary torture.

OBDERE pessulum foribus, to bolt the door.

PRODERE arcem hostibus, to betray; aliquid posteris, v. memorizæ, to hand down; genus ab aliquo, to derive: flaminem, interregem, to appoint; aliquot dies nuptiis, to put off, Ter exemplum, to give to posterity, Liv.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, to revive; animam v. vitam, to die; Latinè, verbum verbo, to translate; matrem, i. e. referre, to resemble; epistolam alicui, to deliver.

SUBDERE calcar equo, to spur; spiritus alicui, to encourage.

CREDERE rem; homini, to believe; aliquid alicui, to trust; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, to lend on bond or bill; rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo, si, &c. I suppose, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, to pour out; hostes, to rout.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, to produce; ærarium, to spend; odium, i. e. dimittere, to drop, gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, to tell.

G O.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dexteræ: equos currui: amnem ponte, to make a bridge.

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, to build an addition to one's house: animum ad studia, to apply.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, ensim, to draw: frondes, to top off: glandes, baccaæ to beat down: rem, to waste one's fortune, Hor. littus, to touch, to brush or graze upon, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, to hit the nail on the head.

ATTINGERE Britanniam nubibus, to reach: reges, res summas, to mention, Nep. Aliquem cognitione,

cognatione, affinitate, to be related to : forum, to reach manhood, Cic. Res non te attingit, concerns.

FINGERE orationem, to polis : oratorem, to form : se ad arbitrium alterius, to adapt : Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua singit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, to break ; navem, to suffer shipwreck : fœdus, fidem, to violate : sententiam ejus, to refute, Cic. hostem, to subdue.

AGERE gratias, to give thanks : vitam, to live : predas, to plunder : fabulam, to act a play : triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, to triumph : nugas, to trifle : ambages, to beat about the bush : stationem, custodi- am urbis, to be on guard : rimas, to chink, to leak, to be rent : causam, to plead : de re, to speak : radices, to take root : cuniculos, to undermine : undam, to raise a steam : animam, to be at the last gasp : alias res, to be inattentive : festum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. to keep, to observe : ac- tum, v. rem actam, to labour in vain : censu[m], & habere, to make a review of the people, their estates, &c. forum, to hold a court to try causes : lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, to go to law with one : hence actor, a plaintiff : in hereditatem, to claim : cum populo, to treat with, to lay before : decimum agit annum, he is ten years old : id agitur, that is the question : libertas agitur, v. de libertate, is at stake : actum est de libertate, is lost : ac- tum est, illicet, all is over : actum est de pace, was treated about : cum illo bene actum est, he has been lucky or well used : hoc age, mind what you are about. Civitas lata agere, for erat, Sallust.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, ad v. in jurandum, in sua verba, per jurandum, to force to

enlist : arbitrum, i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, to force to submit to an arbitration, Cic.

COGERE copias, to bring together : ad militiam, to force to enlist : senatum, to assemble : in senatum, sc. minis, pignoribus captis, &c. to force to attend : agmen, to rally, to bring up : lac, to curd'e : jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, in certa genera cogere, to digest, to arrange.

EXIGERE foras, to drive out, to divorce : aliquid ab aliquo, to require : sarta tecta, sc. et, i. e. sarta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good reparation, Cic. supplicium, de aliquo, to inflict : sua nomina, to demand or call in one's debts : ævum, vitam, annos, to spend : ali- quid ad normam, to try or examine : columnam ad perpendiculum, to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight : monumentum, to finish. Hor. tempus & modum, to settle Virg. comœdiam, to disapprove, to hiss off, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, to bring back : pecuniam ex bonis venditis, to raise money : hostes sub imperium, to reduce.

LEGERE oram, littus, to coast along : vela, to furl the sails : halitum, to catch one's breath : milites, to enlist : aliquem in senatum, in Patres, to chose : sacra, to steal, to commit sacrilege : Hor.

H. O.

TRAHERE obsidionem, bel- lum, to prolong : purpuras, to spin : aliquid in religionem, to scruple : navem remulco, to turn.

DETRAHERE aliquem, to draw down : alicui, v. de aliquo, de fama, to detract from, to lessen one's fame : aliquid alicui, to take by force : laudem, v. de laudibus :

novem

noveni partes multæ, *to take from the fire*, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, *to spin out*, *to spend*; certamen, bellum; judicium, *to prolong*.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invectus curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot*; invehī in portum ex alto, *to enter*; in aliquem, *to inveigh against*; provehi longius, *to proceed too far*.

LO.

CONSULERE rem v. de re, *to consult about*; eum, *to ask his advice*; ei, *to consult for his good*; de salute sua; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against*; in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consulor, *my advice is asked*; mihi consultur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for a me, I have taken care*, Cic.

APPELLERE classe in Italiām, vel classem, *to land on*; se aliquò, Ter. ad villam nostram nāvis appelletur, Cic. animū ad philosophiam, *to apply*.

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely* eum: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, *to excel*.

TOLLERE animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de vel e medio, *to kill*.

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to divorce*; annulum v. equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade*.

DIRIMERE litem, *controversiam, to determine*.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, nox, e vinculis, a culpa, de nu-

mero proscriptorum, obsidione, *to free*; de dolio, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

INTERIMERE se, *to kill*.

REDIMERE captivos, *to ransom*; pecuaria de celsoribus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex v. de eo, *to take*; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam virilem, *to put on the dress of a man*; sibi inimicitias, *to get ill-will*; operam in re, vel in rem insumere, *to bestow pains*; sumotanum, *vel hoc milii, I take this upon me*.

PREMERE caseum, *to make cheese*; vocem, *to be silent*; dolorem corde, *to conceal*; vestigia ejus, *to follow*; littus, *to come near*; pollicem, *to save a gladiator*; librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

EXPIMERE succum, *to press out*; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, *to force from*; effigiem, *to draw to the life*; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word*.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint*.

REPRIMERE se, & reprendere v. retinere, *to check*.

NO.

PONERE spem in homine v. re, & habere; castra, *to pitch*; viteni, *to plant*; vitam, *to die*; ova, *to lay*; insidias alicui; panem convivis, not ante; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend*; præmia, *to propose*; pocula, *to stake or lay*; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ*, *to bestow*; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficij, *to reckon*; serocia corda, *to lay aside*; aliquer

aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic. : ventos, to calm : hominem coloribus, saxo, to paint, engrave, Hor. : pecuniam in scenore, to lay out at interest : templa, to build, Virg. Venti posuere, are busb'd, Virg., Pone esse victimum eum, Ter. Positum sit, suppose, grant, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. to compose : lites, to settle : bellum, to finish by treaty : parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare : manus manibus, to join, Virg.

DEPONERE v. ponere tegam praetextam, to lay aside the dress of a boy : imperium & demittere, to lay down a command.

EXPONERE rem, to set forth or explain : frumentum, to expese to sale, Cic. pueros, sœtus, to leave to perish, Liv. exercitum, sc. in terram, to land.

IMPONERE. onus alicui v. in aliquem : aliquem in equum, to set upon : personam v. partes duriores ei, to lay a task or duty on one : alicui, to impose on, to deceive, Nep. honorem ei, to confer ; vadimonium ei, to force to give bail : Nep. manum summam v. extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, to finish : pontem flu mini, to make a bridge, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, to insert, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis, & ad pericula, to expose : pignori, to pledge : manum fronti, ante oculos, to put, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, to propose, to set before : edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda affigere : congiarium, to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money.

SUPPONERE ova gallinae, to set a hen : testamentum, v. subjicere, to forge.

CANERE aliquem, to praise :

signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle : receptui, rarely -um, to sound a retreat : tibia, to play on the pipe : ad tibiam, to sing to it : palinodiam, to utter a recantation.

STERNERE lectos, to spread or cover the couches : equos, to harness : viam, to pave : aquora, to calm, Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, to cut off the rear : somnos, quietem, to sleep : viam, iter, to go, Virg. opera alterius, to censure : labores, virtutes, to diminish or obscure, Hor.

RUMPERE fiduci, fœdus, amicitiam, to violate : vocem v. silentium, to speak, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, to break out : stomachum in aliquem, to vent passions nubem, to break, Virg.

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam sibi, to seek or gain, Cic. sermonein, to beat about for conversation, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, to make a fortune by merchandise : ex aliquo ; & in aliquem, de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack ; in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.

ANQUIRERE aliquid, to search after : aliquem capit, v. -te, to accuse or try for a capital crime.

GERERE res, to perform : negotium male, to manage : consultatum, to bear, to manage : se bene vel male, to behave : exercitum, to conduct, Sallust. morem ei, vel morigerari, to humour : civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, to pass for, to bear the character of : inimicitias vel similitatem cum aliquo, to be at enmity or variance with.

INGERERE

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, to inveigh against.

SUGGERERE aliquid, ei, to suggest, to hint, sumptus his rebus, to supply or afford: Horatium Brutus, to abuse in place of, to put after, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, to raise, to spread accusations.

CONSERERE manus, manū, certamen, pugnam, cunct hostibus, inter se, to engage.

ASSERERE aliquid, to affirm; aliquem manū, ab injuria, in libertatem, to free; in servitutem, to reduce; divinam maiestatem, to claim.

T O:

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ad eo, rarely cum; in beneficii gratia que feci, Cic. to aye; urbem Romanam ruram, mones, to go to, to make for; aliquem sagittā, lapide, to aim at; consulatum, pœnas ab aliquo, &c. repetere, to punish.

COMPETERE animo, to be in one's senses; in eum competit actio, an action lies against him, Cic.

REPETERE res, to demand restitution; bona lege, v. profœqui lite, to recover by law; castra, oppidum, hoc, to return to; aliquid memoriā, to call to mind; altè, to trace from the beginning. Mihij nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, I have; si vita suppetet, if life shall remain, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, to send the people to vote; aulæum, mappam, to drop the curtain; talos, to throw the dice; senatum, to dismiss; timorem, to lay aside: in acta, to register, to record; sanguinem, vel emittere, to let blood; noxam, to forgive; signa timoris, to shew; vocem, to utter, to speak; habenas, v. remittere, to slacken; manu et emittere, to free a slave; filium emancipare, to free a son from the power of his father; sub jugum, to make to pass under the yoke; iusserias

manibus dñis, to sacrifice to the infernal gods; rem, v. de re, to admit; mitto rem: I say nothing of fortune, Ter. in possessionem bonorum, to give the possession of the debtor's effects; misit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad erandum, Ter.

AMITTERE litem, v. causam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aspectum, to lose, Cic.

ADMITTRE in cubiculum, to admit; equum immittere, & permettere, to gallop; delictum in se, to commit a fault; aves non admisserunt, have not given a favourable omen, Liv.

COMMITTRE facinus, to commit; se alicui, v. in fidem alicujus; to exsuffi; prælium, to engage; exercitum pugnar, rem in casuī accipitis eventus prælii, to risk a battle, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, to set at variance, or by the ears; rem eo, to bring to that pass; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis, to match or pair; committere; ut, to chuse; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, to seek relief by laws.

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, made a compromise or agreement, &c.

DIMITTRE exercitum, to disband; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium v. repudium ad eam remittere, to divorce.

PROMITTERE id ei, to promise; capillum, barbam, to let grow, Liv.

PERMITTRE alicui, to allow; divis cetera, to leave, Horat. se in fidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vexandis consulibus, to give up, to employ, Liv.

REMITTRE

REMITTERE animum, *to ease*; calcis, tela, *to throw back*; ex pecunia, de suppicio, tributo, &c. *to abate*; debitum, iras alicui, *to give up, to forgive*; justicium, *to discontinue*; pugnam, *to slacken*; remittit explorare, neglects, Sallust.

SUBMITTERE fasces populo, *to lower*; se v. animum, *to submit, to humble*; percussores alicui, *to suborn assassins*.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. *to pass over*.

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight*; terga, *to fly*; ab imo, *to overthrow*; solum, *to go into banishment*; id ei vitio, v. criminis, & in crimen, *to blame*; in superbiam, *to impute*; Platonem, Latinè Græca, Greca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, *to translate*; pollicem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb*; terram, *to plough*; crateram, *to empty*, Virg. Stilum, *to correct*, Horat. Salus vel causa in eo vertitur, *depends*; fortuna vertatur, Liv. Annus vertens, *a whole year*, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, *prosper*.

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to observe*; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. *to punish*.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to*, Virg. oras, *to arrive at*; aures, mentes, animum, v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, *to attend to*; in aliquem, ostener animadvertere, *to punish*.

ANTEVERTERE ei, *to come before*; damnationem veneno, *to prevent*; rem rei, *to prefer*, Plant.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam aliquis, &c aliquem pecuniā, *to embezzle, to cheat*; candelabrum, *to steal, to pilfer*; promissum & receptum, sc. Dolobellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transstulit, *treacherously withheld*, Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, *to oustrip*; desiderium plebis, *to prevent*; metum supplicii morte voluntariā, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, *to put before*, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial*; nec sisti posse, *nor could the state be saved*, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, *to stand by*; ad fores; contra, super cum.

CONSISTERE in digitos, *to stand on tiptoe*; in anchoris, ad anchoram, *to ride at anchor*; frigore, *to be frozen*; Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, *depends on*; virtus in actione consistit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon*; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in doles, negotium, Plant. *to insist upon, to urge*.

OBSISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose*.

RESISTERE ei, *to resist*.

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still; sumptui, to bear*.

VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; versurâ, *to pay debt by borrowing from another*, Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise, or according to others, to perform*, Ter. And. IV. I. 19. litem æstimatam, *to pay the fine imposed on him*, Nep. Votum, *to discharge*; obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obsidione, *to raise a siege*; navem, e portu, *to set sail*; epistolam, v. resignare, *to break open*; aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, *to free from*; solvitur in somnos, Virg. Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non astricta & devincta, prose; solve metus, dismiss, Virg.

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break*.

RESOLVERE vocem, v. era, *to break silence*; Virg. jura, *to violate*; vectigal, *to take off taxes*, Tacit. In pulvrem, *to reduce to*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex ab aliquo, *to bear from one*; de aliquo, *about one*, also *from one*, *as*, s̄epe hoc audivi de patre, *for ex patre*, Cic. Audire bene v. malē apud socios, ab omnibus, *to be well spoken of*, *to have a good character*; rexque paterque audisti, *have been called*, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law*, Liv. in circulum, *into a company*, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, *he has succeeded to an estate*; ei usu venit, *happened*, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, scribito, *occurs*, Cic.

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, urbem, *ad urbem*, *to come to*.

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, consilia & itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with*, *to speak to*; ego et frater conveniemus, copiæ convenient, *will meet together*; con-

venit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt. *I and my brother are agreed*; s̄evis inter se convenit ursis, Juv. Ipsius secum non convenit, *vel ipse, he is inconsistent*; pax convenit, *vel* contenta est, *is agreed upon*; rem convenit in putamus, Cic. conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, *agree*; calcei pedibus v. ad pedes conveniunt, *fit*, *fuit*; hoc in illum convenit: Catilinam interficere esse convenit, *ought to have been slain*, Cic. Convenire in matrimonium, *the usual form of marriage*, named Coempto, *whereby women were called matresfamilias*.

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive*; cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion*; bene vel malē de eo, *to think well or ill of him*.

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter se; alicui rei, *de v.* in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree*; So dissentire; et ab aliquo, *to disagree*; nē vita orationi dissentiat. Senec.

DE PONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess*, *to teach publicly*; se candidatum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office*; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, *to give an account of*, *to declare how much one has*; indicium, *to promise to make a discovery*.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se; sometimes alicui, ad v. apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; s̄eptam Cæsaris, *to be of his party*, Cic. Assequi, consequi, *to overtake*; gloriam, *to*

attain. Consequi hereditatem, *to get*; Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love*, *praise*, &c.

NITI hastā; in cubitum, *to lean*; ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on*; ad gloriam, ad v. in summa, *to aim at*; in vetitum, in adversum, contra aliquem, *pro aliquo*, *to strive*; gradibus, *to ascend*.

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one*; ventis adversis, *have cross winds*; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v.* -no, -re; ejus opinionis, *v.* ea opinione; in maxima spe: in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, in vel cum imperio; magno periculo, *v.* in periculo; in tuto; apud se, in his sensibus; fui juris, *v.* mancipii, sui potens, *v.* in sua potestate; to be at his own disposal: Res est in vado, *is safe*, Ter. Est animus, sc. mihi, *I have a mind*, Virg. Est ut, car, quaniobrem, quod, quin, &c. There is cause; bene, male est mihi, with me; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you*: Quid est tibi, sc. rei, What is the matter with you? Ter. Cernere erat, one might see; religio est mihi id facere, *I scruple to do it*; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit, ut admirerit, &c. for si velit, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latins ordinet arbusta fulcis, it happens, Hor. Certum est facere, sc. mihi, *I am resolved*, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id. Cassius querere solebat, Cui BONO FUERIT: Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

ADESSE pugnæ, in pugna, ad exercitem, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, to be present; alicui, to favour, to assist; scribendo, *v.* esse ad scribendum; to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate, Cic. consilio utriusque, to be a counsellor to, Nep.

ABESENCE domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, to be absent; alicui, *v.* desse, to be wanting, not to assist; a sole, to stand out of the sun; sumptus funeri defuit, he had not money to bury him, Liv. abesse a persona principis, to be inconsistent with the character, Nep. Paulum *v.* parum absuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur,

&c. they were near taking, &c. Tantum absit ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. is so far from being, &c. Cic. Tantum absuit a cupiditate pecuniae, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

INTERESSE convivio, *v.* in convivio, to be at a feast; anni decem interfuerunt, intervened; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus & pater interest, Id. Inter hominem & bellum hoc interest, Cic. differ in this, this is the difference; multum interest, utrum, it is of great importance. Pons inter eos interest, is between, Cic.

PRESSE exercitui, to command; comitiis, judicio, quæstioni, to preside in or at.

OBESENCE ei, to hurt, to binder.

SUPERESSE, to be over and above; alicui, to survive; modo vita supersit, sc. mihi, if I live; superest, ut, it remains; that.

IRE ad arma, ad saga, to go to war; in jus, to go to law; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, to agree with; viam *v.* viâ; res bene eunt Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis it, passes.

ABIRE magistratu, to lay down an office; a conspectu, to retire from company; in ora hominum, to be in every body's mouth; ab emptione, to retract his bargain; decem mensis abierunt, have past, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, i. e. non seres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, a form of imprecation.

ADIRE periculum capitis, to run the hazard of one's life.

EXIRE vitâ, e, *v.* de vita, to die; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, to avoid, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Vejenti populo exierat, had expired, Liv.

INIRE magistratum; suffragium,

gium; rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. to enter upon; to begin; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo; to gain his favour: Ineunte æstate, vere, anno, &c. in the beginning of; but we seldom say, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte æstate, from our early years.

O SIRE diem edicti, vel audiōnis, judiciū, vadimonium, to be present at; provinciam, domos nostras, to visit; to go through, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, to perform; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem supremum, v. diem, to die.

P RÆIRE alicui, to go before; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, to repeat or read over before; alicui voce, quid judicet, to prescribe or direct by crying, Cic.

P RODIRE in publicum, to go abroad; non præterit te, you are not ignorant, Cic. Dies induciarum præteriit, is past, Nep.

R EDIRE in gr. tiancum aliquo, to become friends again; ad se, to come to himself, to recover his senses:

S UBIRE murum, vel -o, ad monites, to come up to; laborem vel -i, onus, poenam, periculum, crimen, to undergo; spes, timor subiit animalium, came into..

V ELLE aliquem; sc. alloqui vel conventum, to desire to speak with; alicui, ejus causā, to wish one's good; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum velo, I wish to deny, Liv. Quid sibi vult? What does he mean? Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, sc. esse, I will admonish them again and again, Cic. nolle factum, I am sorry it was done; nolle hic exitum, sc. esse a me, I wish I had not come out here, Ter.

F ERRE legem, to propose or

make; privilegium de aliquo, to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one, Cic. rogationem ad populum, to bring in a bill; conditiones ei, to offer terms; suffragium, to vote; sententiam, to give an opinion; centuriam, tribum, to gain the vote of; perdere, to lose it; victoriam. ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, to gain all the votes; repulsa, to be rejected; fructum hoc fructi, to reap, Ter. letitiam de re, to rejoice; præ se, to pretend; et declare openly; alienam personam, to disguise one's self; in oculis, to be fond of, Fer. manus in prælia, to engage, Virg. acceptum et expensum; to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr and Cr, Cic. animus, opinio fert, inclines; tempus, res, causa fert, allows, requires.

C ONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in vel erga aliquem, to bestow; beneficia, culpam in eum, to confer, to lay; operam, tempus, studium ad vel in rem, & impendere, to apply; capita inter se, consilia sua, to lay their heads together, to consult; signa, arma, manus, to engage; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, to set foot to foot; rationes, to cast up accounts; castra castris, to encamp over against one another; sc in, vel ad urbem, to go to; tributa, to pay; se alicui, vel cum aliquo, to compare; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, serve, are useful to, Quint.

D EFERRE situlam vel sitellam, to bring the ballot-box; aliquid ad aliquem, to carry word, to tell; rarely alicui; causam ad patronos; honorese; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, to confer; in beneficiis ad æarium, to recommend for a public service, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu,

ambitu, nomen alicuius ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*; primas, sc. partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERRE *vel* transferre rem in annum; post bellum; diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se; moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, *to be diffraeted or torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbū de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter.. pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo funere, & cum funere, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad cœlum laudibus, *to raise*, *to extol*; foras peccatum, *to divulge*.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, se, pedem, *to advance*; litem, *vel* periculum capitis alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life*.

OFFERRE sè morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, *to expose*, *to present*.

PREFERRE legem, *to carry through*, *to pass it*.

PRÆFERRE facem ei, *to carry before*; salutem reipublicæ suis commodis, & anteferre, anteponere, *to prefer*. Prælatus equo, *riding before*.

PROFERRE imperium, pomæri-

um, terminos, *to enlarge*; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publicise*; nuptias, diem, *to delay*; diem Ilio, *to defer the destruction of*, Hor.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se, gradum v. sedem, *to retreat*; gratiam alicui, *to make a requital*; pari, Ter. victoriam ab, *vel* ex aliquo, et reportare, *to gain*; institutum, *to renew*; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the E- quites the right of judging*; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down*; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted*; pecunias acceptas & expensas, nomina vel summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts*; alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by*; in v. inter seruos, *to reduce to the lowest class*; in numerum deorum, in *vel* inter deos, & respondere, *to rank among*; pugnas, res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore, *to resemble*; amissos colores, *to regain*, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, *to post one's books*, *to state accounts*; in Latinam linguam, *to translate*; verba, *to use metaphorically*; culpam in eum & rejicere, *to lay the blame on him*.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbaton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

I. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense, as, *Aiunt*, *ferunt*, *dicunt*, *perhibent*, scil. homines : *Dic mihi*, *Dameta*, *cujum pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi*, *Dameta*, *(eum hominem) cujum pecus (est hoc pecus)*. *Aberant bidui*, sc. *iter vel itinere*. *Decies*: *sestertiū*, sc. *centena milia*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*. *Antiquum obtines*, sc. *morem*, v. *institutum*. Plaut. *Hodie in ludum occipi ire literarium, ternas jam scio*, sc. *literas*, i. e. *AMO*, Id. *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. *literas*, i. e. *epistolam*, Cic. *Brevi dicam*, sc. *sermone* : So. *Complecti*, *rispondere*, &c. *brevi*. *Dii meliora*, sc. *faciant* : *Rhodium volo*, *inde Athenas*, sc. *ire*, Id. *Bellicum*, v. *classicum canere*, sc. *signum*, Liv. *Civicā donatus*, sc. *coronā*; So *obsidionalem*, *muralem adeptus*, &c. Id. *Epistola librarii manu est*, sc. *scripta*, Cic. So in English, “The twelve,” i. e. *apostles*; “the elect,” i. e. *persons*.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called **ANASYNDETON**; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et*; *Sartum tectum conservare*, i. e. *sartum et tectum*; So *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. *Ferte citi flammis, date uila, impelite remos*, Virg. *Felix nolis*, sc. *siu*.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classified by grammarians, under the names of **ENALLAGE**, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; **ANTIPTOSIS**, i. e. the putting of one case for another; **HELLENISM OR GRÆCISM**, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; **SYNESIS**, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c. thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi*, is, *Duo millia (hominum) Samnitium fuerunt homines*;

homines). *ceti*, Liv. So *Servitia immemores*, Liv. *Monstrum que*, scil. mulier, Hor. *Scelus qui*, sc. hom., Ter. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. secundum, Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati*; i. e. *Missi legati* (et) *uterque* (legatus missus) *de magnis rebus*, Horat. *Servitia repudiabat, cuius*, scil. servitii, Sall. Cat. 51. *Familia nostrae, quorum*, &c. sc. *hominum*, Sall. *Concussus populi, mirantium*, Liv. *Illum ut vivet optant, for ut ille vivat*, Ter. *Populum late regem; for regnante*, Virg. *Expediti militiam, for milites*; *Classis stabat Rhegii for ad Ekegium*; Liv. *Latium Capuaque agro multati*, sc. *homines*, Id. *Utraque formosae, sc. mulieres*, Ovid. *Aperiite aliquis ostium, Ter.* *Sensit delapsus, for delapsi*; sc. *esse*, Virg.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ore locuta est*; *adest prasns*: *Nusquam gentium*; *vivere vitam*; *servire serviutem*; *Quid mihi Celsus agit?* *Fac me ut sciām*, &c. *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Ter. *Suo sibi succo vivant*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruant*, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called PERIPHRASIS; as, *Urbs Troja*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura*; *Genus piscium*, for *pisses*; *Flores rosarum*, for *rosa*, Hor.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anaphora*, *Antithesis*,

Anastrophe, *Hysteron proteron*, *Hypallage*, *Synthesis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthesis*.

1. **ANASTROPHE** is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first ; as, *Italianam contra* ; *His accusa super* ; *Spemque metumque inter dubii* ; for *contra Italianam, super his, inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are, for arescit*, Lucret.

2. **HYSTERON PROTERON** is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter ; as, *Valeat atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valit*, Ter.

3. **HYPALLAGE** is the exchanging of cases ; as, *Dare classibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*, Virg.

4. **SYNTHESIS** is a confused and intricate arrangement of words ; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras* ; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*, Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion ; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruentem*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos atque parentes*, sc. *oro vos per liberos*, &c. Sallust. Jug. 14.

5. **TMESIS** is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts ; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*, Ter. *Quem sors dierum cunque dabit, lucro Appone*, Horat.

6. **PARENTHESIS** is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction : as, *Tityre, dum redeo*, (*brevis est via*), *pasce capellas*, Virg.

III: ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words

can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorial* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to be a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take first the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; next, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; then, the verb and adverbs joined with it;

it ; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence ; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up ; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mibi carissimum ; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me ; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences ; 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale*, 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipſi) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mibi* : 3. *sed (tu persuade tibi ipſi te) fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotio)*, 4. *si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) præc p̄tis*.

1. Fare (*you*) well then, my (*son*) Cicero, 2. and assure (*you*) yourself that *you* are indeed (*a son*) very dear to me : 3. but (*assure you yourself that you*) shall be (*a son*) much dearer (*to me*), 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (*if you shall take delight in such*) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis* as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence *Vale igitur, &c.* thus,

Vale, scil. *tu* ; Fare (*thou*) well : Second person sing. lar of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valeo, valui, valitum, valere*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

Igitur, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, Voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my ; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicerō, -onis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 60. We turn *que* into *et*, because, *que* never stands by itself.

Persuade, scil. *tu*, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo, si, sum, d̄ere*, to persuade ; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suadeo, -si, sum*, to advise ; used impersonally in the passive ; thus, *Persuadetur mibi*, I am persuaded ; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say however in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mibi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi,

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou ; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, *fui*, *esset*, to be.

Quidem, Indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, -a, -um, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, -a, -um, dear : Comparative degree *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear : agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mibi, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I : governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or, to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem*, -res, -ret, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 60.

Multo scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -a, -um, much, put in the ablative, according to observation 6. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -or, -us, the comparative of *carus*, as before : agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

Si, If, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but often with the latter. See Rule 60. Obs. 2.

Letabere, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *letor*, *letatus*, *letari*, to rejoice : Future, *let-abor*, -aberis or -abere, *abitur*, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *talis*, such ; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -ti, neut. a monument or writing ; of the second declension ; derived from *moneo*, -ui, -itum, -ere, to admonish ; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, -ti, neut. a precept, an instruction ; derived from *præcipio*, -capi, -ceptum, -cipere, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capiro*, *capi*, *captum*, *capere*, to take. The *ȝ* of the simple is changed into *i* short ; thus, *præcipio*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflexion of nouns and verbs, in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero ? *Ciceron-*
pi? With Cicero ? *Ciceron-**ce*. A dear son ? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son ?

son? *Cari filii.* O my dear son? *Mi or meus caro fili.* Of dearer sons? *Ceriorum filiorum, &c.*

Of thee? or of you? *Tui.* With thee or you, &c.: Of you? *Vestrum* or *vestri.* With you? *Vobis.*

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt.* I can persuade? *Persuadeam;* or much more frequently *possum persuadere.* They are persuaded? *Persuadeter,* or *persuasum est illis,* according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus.* He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur,* or *persuasum erit illi.* He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi.* I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi;* that he will be persuaded? *Ei persuasum iri, &c.*

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric.*

IV. Different kinds of STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*); the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*); and the sublime, (*sublime, grande.*)

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as, the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscenity*: 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected*, *intricate*, and *feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names;

1. A **BARBARISM** is when a foreign or strange word is made use of; as, *croftus*, for *agellus*; *rigoſus*, for *rigidus* or *severus*; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *ſtavi*, for *ſteti*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A **SOLECISM** is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was walking* for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An **IDIOTISM** is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribēre*, for *ego sum scripturus*; It is *I*, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism*, in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, *He is wiser than me*, for *than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse?* *Whom do they say that I am?* for *who*, &c.

4. **TAUTOLOGY**

4. TAUTOLOGY is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. BOMBAST is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. AMPHIBOLOGY is when by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses ; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse.* But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds ; figures of words, (*figuræ verborum,*) and figures of thought, (*figuræ sententiarum.*) The former are properly called *Tropes* ; and if the word be changed the figure is lost.

I. TROPES OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio,*) is an elegant turning of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdoche*, and *Irony*.

i. METAPHOR: (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance ; as, a *hard heart*; a *soft temper*; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful crop*; *ridet ager*, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them ; as when, instead of *youth*, we

say, the morning or spring time of life ; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures ; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory ; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia v. Adagia*;) thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper, when they are taken from low objects ; when they are forced or far fetched. ; when they are mixed or too far pursued ; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance ; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrēsis* (*abusio*;) as, *a leaf of paper, of gold, &c.* the empire flourished ; *parricida*, for any murderer ; *Vir gregis ipse caper*, Virg. *Altum ædificant caput*, Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis* (*comprehensio*;) as *Galathæa thymo mihi dulcior Hybla*, Virg. *Ego Sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*, Id.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes ; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars ; i. When the cause is put for the effect ; or the inventor, for the thing invented ; or the author, for

for his works ; as, *Boum labores*, for corn ; *Mars*, for war ; thus, *Æquo marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage; *Liv. Ceres*, for grain or bread ; *Bacchus*, for wine ; *Venus*, for love ; *Vulcanus*, for fire ; thus, *Sin, Cérere & Baccho friget Venus*, *Ter. Furit: Vulcanius Virg.* So, a general is put for his army ; *Cicero, Virgil, and Horace*, for their works : *Moses* and the Prophets, for their books ; a beautiful *Raphael, Titian, Guido Rheni, Rembrant, Rubens, Vandyke, &c.* for their pictures. 2. When the effect is put for the cause ; as, *Pallida mors, Pale death*, because it makes pale ; *atra cura, &c.* 3. The container, for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary ; as, *Hausit pateram*, for *vinum*, *Virg. He loves his bottle*, for drink : *Secundam mensam servis dispertit, i. e. ferula in mensa, Nep.* So *Roma*, for *Romani* ; *Europe*, for the *Europeans* ; *Heaven*, for the Supreme Being ; *Secernit Europen ab Afro*, for *Africa* ; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabincrum* ; *Incolumi Jove*, for *Capitolio* ; *Janus*, for the temple of Janus, *Hor. Proximus ardet Ucalegon*, for *domus Ucaleontis*, *Virg.* So *Sergestus*, for his ship, *Id. Æn. v. 272.* 4. The sign, for the thing signified ; as, The *crown*, for royal authority ; *palma* or *laurus*, for victory ; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, *Stat. Sylv. v. i. 82.* 5. An abstract, for the concrete ; as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*, *Ter. Audacia*, for *audax*, *Cic. Custodia*, for *custodes*, *Virg. Servitus*, for *servi* ; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles* ; *juventus*, for *juvenes* ; *vicinia*, for *vicini* ; *vires* for strong men, *Hor. Furta*, for stolen oxen, *Ovid. Fast. i. 560.* 6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them ; thus, *cor*, for wisdom or address ; as, *habet cor, vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the heart is put for courage or affection, and the head for wisdom ; thus, a stout heart ; a warm heart ; a sound head, &c. So, to have a well hung tongue, for to speak with ease, &c.

When we put what follows, to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*;) thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for to be dead, lost,

lost, or absent : So *Fuimus Troes, & ingens gloria Dardanica,* i. e. are no more. *Virg. Æn. ii. 325.*

3. SYNECDOCHE (*Comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense ; as, 1. When a genus is put for a species, or a whole for a part and the contrary ; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines* ; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris* ; *priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ, Xanthumque bibissent*, for *partem pabuli, & fluminis Xanthi*, *Virg. Nat unda carina*, for *navis* ; *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships ; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house ; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines* ; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, *Horat. Sat. i. l. 114* ; the door or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in temple divæ*, *Virg. Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c. 2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary ; thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *It is written in the prophets*, for in a book of some one of the prophets ; *millies*, a thousand times, for many times. 3. When the materials are put for the things made of them ; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money ; *æra*, for vases of brass trumpets, arms, &c. *ferrum*, for a sword ; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, *Virg. Dust thou art*, i. e. made of dust, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia* (*pronominatio* ;) as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle* ; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero* ; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil* ; the *Wise man*, for *Solomon* ; *Astu*, for *Athens* ; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country ; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal* ; a *Nero*, for a cruel prince ; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning ; as, *Sint Mæcenates non deerunt, Flacce, Marones*, i. e. *sint munifici patroni, non deerunt boni poetæ*, *Martial. viii. 56. 5.*

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis* ; as, *Pelopis parens*, for *Tantalus* ; *Anysi reus*, for *Socrates* ; *Trojani belli scriptor*, for *Homer* ; *Chironis alumnus*, for *Achilles* ; *Potor Rhodani*, for *Gallus* ; *Jubis tellus*, for *Mauritania*, *Horat. &c.* or by a patronymic noun ; as *Anthisiades*, for *Æneas* ; *Tyndaris, -idis*, for *Helena*, &c. or by an epithet ; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Æneas*, *Virg. sometimes*

times with the noun added ; as, *Fatālis et incestus iudex, famosus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor. i. 1. 1

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said ; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil* ; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cœlo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter railery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a SARCASM ; as, *Satiæ sanguine, Cyræ, Justin. Italianam metire jacens, Virg.*

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called LITOTES ; as, *He is no fool, for he is a man of sense* ; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis*, or *superba* ; *non indecoro pulvere*, for *dècoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called ANTI-*phrasis* ; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *exècrabilis*, Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitalis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called EUPHÈMISMUS ; as, *Vitâ functus*, for *mortuus* ; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant* ; *mactare* or *ferire*, for *occidere* ; *Fecerunt id servi Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisse*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The PERIPHRASIS, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another ; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions ; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio*;) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the abovementioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative. There

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old Falernian wine: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Horat. These and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called **ANAPHORA**; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsum palatii, nihil urbis vigiliae*, &c. Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te veneniente die, te descendente canebat*, Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called **EPISTRÖPHE** or *conversio*; as, *Penos Populus Romanus iustitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate viuit*, Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called **SYMLÖCE** or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus*, Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called **EPANALEPSIS**; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatam; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus*, Cic. pro Marceilo.

The reverse of the former is called **ANADIPLÖSIS**, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imo in senatum venit*, Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called **EPANÖDOS** or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; crudelis mater magis an puer impröbus ille? Impröbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater*, Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence is called **EPIZEUXIS**; as, *Excitate, excitat; eum ab inferis*, Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus*, &c. Id. *Me, me: adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum*, Virg. *Bella, horrida bella*, Id. *Ibimus, ibimus*, Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called **CLIMAX** or *Gradatio*; as, *Africono virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmules compræavit*, Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called POLYPTOTON; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plene sapientum vales, plena exemplorum vetustas*, Cic. *Littora littoribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprecor, arma armis*, Virg. To this is usually referred what is called SYNONYMIA, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly: as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam*, Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo*, Id. And also EXPOLITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called ANTANACLASIS; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid insit emari*, Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the PARONOMASIA or Agnomination, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium*; *Consul pravo animo & parvo*; *De oratore orator factus*, Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes*, Ter. This is also called a PUN.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called HOMOIOPTON, i. e. similiter cadens; as, *Pellet auctoritate, circumfluit opibus, abundat amicis*, Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called HOMOIOTLEUTON, i. e. similiter definens; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, & vivere turpiter*, Cic.

3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the Hyperbole, Prosopopeia, Apostrophe, Simile, Antithesis, &c.

1. HYPERBOLE is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil speaking of Polyphemus says, *Ipse arduus, altaque pulsat sidera*. So, *Contracta pisces aequora sentiunt*, Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called Tapeinosis. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called Bombast.

2. PROSOPOPEIA, or Personification, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit*, &c. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*, Hor. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante*, Id.

3. APOSTROPHE, or Address, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore

therefore often joined with it ; as, *Trojaque nunc stares,
Priamique arx alta maneres*, Virg.

4. SIMILE, or Comparison, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another ; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. ANTITHESIS, or Opposition, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the more striking light ; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious*. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato*, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. *Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia*, &c. Cic. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumōrōn*, i. e. acute dictum ; as, *Amici absentes adsunt*, &c. Cic. *Impietate pia est*, Ovid. *Nun capti potuere capi*, Virg.

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotēsis*,) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form ; as, *Quousque tandem*, &c. Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes* ? Virg. *Heu ! quæ me æquora possunt accipere*, Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio* ; as, *Quid ergo ? audacissimus ego ex omnibus* ? *minime*, Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION ; (Ecphonēsis) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis !* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores !* Id. *O patria ! O Divum domus Ilium !* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or Imagery, (*Hypotyphosis*,) when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision* ; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Videre magnos jam videor duces*, *Non indecoro pulvere sordidos*, Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637. &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence ; as, *Hannibal peto pacem*, Liv. *Proh ! Jupiter, ibit hic !* Virg.

10. EPANARTHOSIS, or Correction, is when the speaker either recals, or corrects what he had last said ; as *Filium habui, ah ! quid dixi habere me ? imò habui*, Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or Omission, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. **A PARITHMÉSIS**, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. **SYNATHROISMUS**, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together ; as,

Faces in castra tulisse,
Implessimque feros flammis, natumque, patremque
Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedisse. Virg.

14. **INCREMENTUM**, or **CLIMAX** in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest ; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called **AUXÉSIS**, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Similè and the Climax.

15. **TRANSITION** (*metabasis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced ; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another ; as, Horat. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, *a change of person* is sometimes used ; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365. &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. **SUSPENSIO**, or *Sustentatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense ; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **CONCESSIO** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another ; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus, &c. at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. i. **PROLEPSIS**, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. **ANACOINÓSIS** or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers ; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio*. **LICENTIA**, or the pretending to assume more freedom than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering ; as, *Vide quam non reformidem, &c.* Cic. pro Ligario. **APOSIOPÉSIS**, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete ; as, *Quos ego — sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg.

18. **SENTENTIA**, (*gnome*,) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms ; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adeo in teneris assuescere multum est*, Virg. *Probitas laudatur*

Et alget; Misera est magni custodia census; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus, Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers ; 2. The *Narration* or *Explication* : 3. The argumentative part, which includes, *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics ; and are either intrinsic, or extrinsic ; common or peculiar, 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

The QUANTITY of SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of verse, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with respect to their quality, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short ; as, *tēndērē*.

Some syllables are *common* ; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short ; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish

by

by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long ; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious ; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi* ; *relēgo*, -*ēre* ; *relēgo*, *āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short ; as, *Mēus*, *alīus* : so *nībil* ; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crēate*, *bēhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīebam*, &c. unless when followed by *r* ; as, *fīēri*, *fīērem* ; thus,

Omnia jam sīent, fīēri quāe posse negabam, *Ovid*.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long ; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cāi*, and such like words ; but we sometimes find *Pompeii* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. II. 7*.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ōte* and *Diana* is common ; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius* ; as, *illius*, *unius*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alīus*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *aliius* ; *alterūs*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short : as, *Danāe*, *Idēa*, *Sophīa*, *Symphonīa*, *Simōis*, *Hȳades*, *Phāon*, *Deucalīon*, *Pygmalīon*, *Thebāis*, &c.

Often it is long ; as, *Lycāon*, *Machāon*, *Didymāon* ; *Amphīon*, *Arīon*, *Ixīon*, *Pandīou* ; *Nāis*, *Lāis*, *Achāia* ; *Brisēis*, *Cadmēis* ; *Latōus*, & *Latōis*, *Myrtōus*, *Nerēius*, *Priamēius* ; *Achelōius*, *Mi-nōius* ; *Archelāus*, *Menelāus*, *Amphiarāeus* ; *Ænēas*, *Penēus*, *Epēus*, *Acrisionēus*, *Adamantēus*, *Phœbēus*, *Gigantēus* ; *Darīus*, *Basilīus*, *Eugenīus*, *Bacchīus* ; *Cassiopēa*, *Cæsarēa*, *Chæronēa*, *Cytherēa*, *Galatēa*, *Laodicēa*, *Medēa*, *Panthēa*, *Penelopēa* ; *Clio*, *Enyō*, *Elegīa*, *Iphigenīa*, *Alexandrīa*, *Thalīa*, *Antiochīa*, *idololatrīa*, *litanīa*, *politiā*, &c. *Lāertes*, *Dēiphōbus*, *Dēījanīra*, *Trōes*, *herōes*, &c.

Sometimes it is common ; as, *Chorea*, *plateā*, *Malea*, *Nereīdes*, *cano-peum*, *Orion*, *Geryon*, *Eos*, *eōus*, &c. So in foreign words, *Michael*, *Krael*, *Raphael*, *Abraham*, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eūs* is usually short ; as, *Orphēa*, *Salmo-nīa*, *Capbarēa*, &c. but sometimes long ; as, *Iāmentīa*, *Ilioneā*, *Virg.*

Instead

Instead of *Elegia*, *Cytherea*, we find *Elegēia*, *Cythēria*, Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science*, *idea*.

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant is long (*by position, as it is called*); as,

arma, *fallō*, *āxis*, *gāza*, *mājor*; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijugus*, *quadrijugus*, &c.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as

Ferte citi flammas, date velā, scandite muros, Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common;

as the middle syllable in *volucris*, *tenebrae*, thus,

Et primò similis volūcri, mox vera volūcris, Ovid.

Nox tenebras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras, Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro*, *pharetra*, *pallagra*, *clavigra*, *celebris*, *latebrae*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patri*s is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris*, *acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salubris*, *ambulacrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus*, *salutis*, and *ambulatum*. So *a* in *arte*, *abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as,

Nil, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alīus*, for *aliīus*; *tibīcen*, for *tibiīcen*; *īt*, for *iit*; *sēdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijugæ*, *scilicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long; as,

Aurum, *Cæsar*, *Eubœa*, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *praire*, *præcūstus*; thus,

Nec

Nec totā tamen ille prior praeunte carinā. *Virg.*

Stipibus duris agitur sudibusque praeustis. *Id.*

But it is sometimes lengthened ; as,

—cum vacuus domino praeiret Arion. *Statius.*

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.

Except *bībi*, *scīdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, and *stēti* which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Vīsum*, *cāsum*, *mōtum*.

Except *sātum*, from *sēro*; *cītum*, from *cieo*; *lītum*, from *līno*; *sītum*, from *sīno*; *stātum*, from *sīsto*; *ītum*, from *eo*; *dātum*, from *do*; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *rūo*; *quiūtum*, from *queo*; *rātus*, from *reor*.

Preterites which double the first syllable.

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short ; as,
Cēcīdi, *tētīgi*, *pēpūli*, *pēpēri*, *dīdīci*, *tūtūdi* : except *cēcīdi*, from *cēdo*; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo*; and when two consonants intervene ; as *fēfelli*, *tētēndi*, &c.

INCREASE of NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative ; as, *rex*, *rēgis*. Here *re* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a cremen.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one ; as, *iter*, *itīnēris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular ; as, *gener*, *gēnēri*, *gēnērōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another ; as, *fructus*, *fructui* ; *res*, *r̄ei* ; which fall under Rule I.

Third Declension.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long ; *e*, *i*, and *u* short ; as,

Pietatis, *honoris* ; *muliēris*, *lapiēdis*, *murmūris*.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive ; as, *dogma*, -ātis ; *poema*, -ātis.

O.

O shortens *itis*, but lengthens ēnis and ūnis ; as, *Cardo*, -īnis ; *Virgo*, -īnis ; *Anio*, -ēnis ; *Cicero*, -ōnis. Genitive or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive ; as, *Macēdo*, -ōnis ; *Saxo*, -ōuis : Some are long ; as, *Sueffōnes*, *Vettōnes*. *Brittones* is common.

I. C. D.

I shortens -ītis ; as, *Hydromēli*, -ītis. Ec lengthens -ecis ; as, *Halec*, -ēcis.

A noun in D shortens the crement ; as, *David*, -īdis.

L.

Masculines in AL shorten ālis, as, *Sal*, -sālis ; *Hannibal*, -ālis ; *Hasdrubal*, -ālis ; but neuters lengthen it ; as *animal*, -ālis.

Sōlis from *sol* is long ; also Hebrew words in el ; as, *Michæl*, -ēlis. Other nouns in L shorten the crement ; as, *Vigil*, -īlis ; *consul*, -ūlis.

N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it ; as, *Helicon*, -ēnis ; *Chiron*, ūnis. Some shorten it ; as, *Memnon*, -ōnis ; *Actæon*, -ōnis.

EN shortens inis ; as, *flumen*, īnis ; *tibicen*, -īnis. Other Nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN ānis ; as, *Titan*, -ānis : EN ; ēnis as, *Siren*, -ēnis : IN īnis ; as, *dolphin*, -īnis : YN ūnis ; as, *Phorcyn*, ūnis.

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen aris ; as, *calcar*, -āris. Except the following, *bacchar*, -āris ; *jubar*, -āris ; *nectar*, -āris : Also the adjective *par*, pāris, and its compounds, *impar*, āris, *dispar*, -āris, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, *Nar*, nāris, the name of a river ; *fur*, fūris ; *ver*, vēris : Also *Recimer*, -ēris ; *Byzer*, -ēris ; *Ser*, Sēris ; *Iber*, -ēris, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen teris ; as, *crater*, -ēris ; *character*, -ēris. Except *aether*, -ēris.

4. OR lengthens eris ; as, *amor*, -ōris. Except neuter nouns ; as, *marmor*, ūris ; *equor*, -ōris : Greek nouns in tor ; as, *Hector*, -ōris ; *Aetor*, -ēris ; *rhetor*, -ōris. Also *arbor*, -ōris, and *memor*, -ōris.

5. Other

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *aris*, masc.; as, *Casar*, -āris; *Hamilcar*, -āris; *tar*, lāris. ER *eris* of any gender; as, *aer*, aēris; *mālier*, -ēris, *cadāver*, -ēris; *iter*, anciently *itiner*, itinēris; *verbēris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris*; as, *vulter*, -ūris; *murmur*, -ūris. YR *yris*; as, *Martyr*, -ȳris.

A S.

I. Nouns in A S, which have *atis*, lengthen the clement; as, *pictas*, -ātis; *Maccenas*, -ātis. Except *anas*, -ātis.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the clement; as, Greek nouns having the genitive in ādis, ātis, and ānis; thus, *Pallas*, -ātis; *artocreas*, eātis; *Melas*, -ānis, the name of a river. So *vas*, vādis; *mas*, māris: But *vas*, vāsis, is long.

E S.

ES shortens the clement; as, *miles*, -ētis; *Ceres*, -ēris, *pes*, pēdis.

Except *locūples*, -ētis; *quies*, -ētis; *mansues*, -ētis; *bæres*, -ēdis; *merces*, -ēdis.

I S.

Nouns in IS shorten the clement; as, *lapis*, -īdis; *Sanguis*, -īnis; *Pbyllis*, īdis.

Except *Glis*, glīris; and Latin nouns which have ītis; as, *lis*, lītis; *dis*, dītis; *Quiris*, -ītis; *Samnis*, -ītis: But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charītis*.

The following also lengthen the clement: *Grenis*, -īdis; *Psophis*, -īdis; *Nesis*, -īdis, proper names. And Greek nouns in is, which have also in; as, *Salāmis*, or in, *Ssalānīnis*.

O S.

Nouns in OS lengthen the clement; as, *nōpis*, -ōtis; *flos*, fōris.

Except *Bos*, bōvis; *compes*, -ōtis; and *impos*, -ōtis.

U S.

US shortens the clement; as, *tempus*, -ōris; *tripus*, -ōdis.

Except nouns which have ūdis, ūris, and -ūtis; as, *incus*, ūdis; *jūs*, jūris; *salus*, -ūtis. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris*; the obsolete *pecus*, pecūdis; and *intercus*, -ūtis.

The neuter of the comparative has ūris; as, *melius*, -ōris.

Y S.

YS shortens, ydis or ydos; as, *clamys*, -ȳdis, or -ȳdos: and lengthens ynis; as, *Trachys*, -ȳnis.

B S. P S. M S.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *cælebs*, -ibis; *inops*, -ōpis, *biems*, biēmis.

Except *Cyclops*, ūpis; *scops*, sēpis; *gryps*, gryphēs; *Cercops*, ūpis; *plebs*, plēbis; *bydrops*, -ōpis.

T.

T shortens the clement; as, *caput*, -ītis.

X.

I. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in gis, shorten the clement;

mēnt ; as, *conjux*, -ūgis ; *remex*, -īgis ; *Allobrox*, -ōgis ; *Phryx*, Phr ygis. But *lex*, lēgis ; and *rex*, rēgis, are long ; and likewise *fūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis* ; as, *vertex*, -īris : except *vibex*, -īris.
3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement ; as, *pax*, pācis ; *radix*, -īcis ; *vox*, vōcis ; *lux*, lūcis ; *Pollux*, ūcis, &c.

Except *fācis*, nēcis, vūcis, prēcis, *calicis*, cīlicis, pīcis, fernīcis, nīvis, *Cappadōcis*, dūcis, nūcis, crūcis, trūcis, onȳchis, Er̄ycis, mastyx, -ȳchis, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or mastic-tree, and many others, whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement ; as, *Syphax*, -ācis, or -ācis ; *San̄eyx*, -īcis, or -īcis, *Bebryx*, -ȳcis, or ȳcis.

Increase of the Plural Number:

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long ; but shorten *I*, and *U* ; as,
musārum, rērum, dominōrum ; rēgibus, portūbus : except bōbus
or būbus, contracted for bōvibus.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active ; as, *amas*, amāmūs, where the second syllable *ma* is the increase or crement ; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables ; as, *amus*, amābāmīni ; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third increase*.

X. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u*, short ; as,

Amāre, docēre, amātōte ; legīmus, sūmus, volūmus.

The poets sometimes shorten dēdērunt and flētērunt ; and lengthen rīmus, and rītis, in the future of the subjunctive ; as—transfēritis aquas, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority* ; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the Quantity of the PENULT of WORDS.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult ; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eūs* ; as, *Pelides*, *Tyrides*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult ; as, *Achais*, *Ptolemäis*, *Chrysēis*, *Ænēis*, *Mēphītis*, *Lacis*, *Icariōtis*, *Nerīne*, *Arisōne*. Except *Thebāis*, and *Phocāis* ; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult ; as, *Ægyptiacus*, *academicus*, *lepidus*, *legitimus* ; also superlatives ; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opacus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *pudicus*, *mendicus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short,) *bimus*, *quadrimus*, *patrimus*, *matrimus*, *optimus* ; and two superlatives, *imus*, *primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult ; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *aestīvus*, *decorus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult ; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it ; as, *anīlis*, *civīlis*, *herīlis*, &c. To these add, *exīlis*, *subtilis* ; and names of months, *Aprilis*, *Quinctīlis*, *Sextīlis* : Except *humīlis*, *parīlis* ; and also *simīlis*. But all adjectives in *atīlis* are short ; as, *versātilis*, *volatīlis*, *umbratīlis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult ; as, *amaracīnus*, *crocīnus*, *cedrīnus*, *fagīnus*, *oleagīnus* ; *adamantīnus*, *crystallīnus*, *crastīnus*, *prīstīnus*, *perendīnus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long ; as, *agnīnus*, *austrīnus*, *bīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *Latīnus*, *marīnus*, *supīnus*, *vespertīnus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM* ; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult ; as, *urcełlus*, *filiła*, *muscełum* ; *lectūlus*, *ratiuncula*, *corcūlum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult ; as, *oppidātim*, *virītim*, *tribūtim*. Except *affatim*, *perpetim*, and *statim*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which

which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esūrio*, *esūris*, *esūrit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio*, *ligūris*; *scatūrio*, *scatūris*, &c.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult. *Abdēra*, *Abȳdus*, *Adōnis*, *Ælōpus*, *Ætōlus*. *Ahāla*, *Alarīcus*, *Alcīdes*, *Amȳclæ*, *Andronīcus*, *Anūbis*, *Archimēdes*, *Ariarāthes*, *Ariobarzānes*, *Aristīdes*, *Aristobūlus*, *Aristogīton*, *Arpīnum*, *Artabānus*; *Brachmānes*, *Buſīris*, *Buthrōtus*; *Cethēgus*, *Chalcēdon*, *Cleobūlus*, *Cyrēne*, *Cythēra*, *Curetes*; *Darīci*, *Demonīcus*, *Diomēdes*, *Diōres*, *Dioscūri*; *Ebūdes*, *Eriphȳle*, *Eubūlus*, *Euclīdes*, *Euphrātes*, *Eumēdes*, *Eurīpus*, *Euxīnus*; *Gargānus*, *Gætūlus*, *Granīcus*; *Heliogabālus*, *Henrīcus*; *Heraclīdes*, *Heraclītus*. *Hippōnax*, *Hispānus*; *Irēne*; *Lacīdas*, *La-tōna*, *Leucāta*, *Lugdūnum*, *Lycōras*; *Mandāne*, *Mausōlus*, *Maxi-mīnus*, *Meleāger*, *Messāla*, *Messāna*, *Milētus*; *Nasīca*, *Nicānor*, *Nicētas*; *Pachyñus*, *Pandōra*, *Pelōris*; & us, *Pharsālus*, *Phœnīce*, *Polītes*, *Polyelētus*, *Polynīces*, *Priāpus*; *Sarpēdon*, *Serāpis*, *Sinōpe*, *Stratonīce*, *Suffētes*; *Tigrānes*, *Thessalonīca*; *Verōna*, *Veronīca*.

The following are short: *Amāthus*, *Amphipōlis*, *Anabāsis*, *Anti-cýra*, *Antigōnus*, & -ne, *Antilōchus*, *Antiōchus*, *Antiōpa*, *Antīpas*, *Antipāter*, *Antiphānes*, *Antiphātes*, *Antiphila*, *Antiphon*, *Anȳtus*, *Apūlus*, *Areopāgus*, *Arimīnum*, *Armēnus*; *Athēsis*, *Attālus*, *Attīca*; *Bitūrix*, *Bructēri*; *Calāber*, *Callicrātes*, *Callistrātus*, *Candāce*, *Can-tāher*, *Carneādes*, *Cherīlus*, *Chrysōstōmus*, *Cleombrōtus*, *Cleomē-nes*, *Corȳcos*, *Constantinopōlis*, *Cratērus*, *Cratȳlus*, *Cremēra*, *Crus-tumēri*, *Cybēle*, *Cyclādes*, *Cyzīcus*; *Dalmātæ*, *Damōcles*, *Dardānus*, *Dejōces*, *Dejotāru*; *Democrītus*, *Demīpho*, *Didīmus*, *Diogēnes*, *Drepānum*, *Dunmōrix*; *Empedōcles*, *Ephēsus*, *Evergētes*, *Eumēnes*, *Eurymēdon*, *Eurīpīkus*; *Fucīnus*; *Geryōnes*, *Gyārus*; *Hecȳra*, *He-lipōlis*, *Hermiōne*, *Herodōtus*, *Hesiōdus*, *Hesiōne*, *Hippocrātes*, *Hippotāmos*, *Hypāta*, *Hypānis*; *Icārus*, *Icētas*, *Illȳris*, *Iphītus*, *Is-mārus*, *Ithāca*; *Iaodīce*, *Iaomēdon*, *Lampsācus*, *Lamȳrūs*, *Lapīthæ*, *Leueretīlis*, *Libānus*, *Lipāre*, v. -a, *Lysimāchus*, *Longimānus*; *Ma-rāthon*, *Mænālus*, *Marmarīca*, *Massagētæ*, *Matrōna*, *Megāra*, *Meli-tus*, & -ta, *Metropōlis*, *Mutīna*, *Mycōnus*; *Neōcles*, *Nerītos*, *No-rīcum*; *Omphāle*; *Patāra*, *Pegāsus*, *Pharnāces*, *Pisistrātus*, *Poly-dāmas*, *Polyxēna*, *Poīsēna*, or *Porsenna*, *Praxitēles*, *Puteōli*, *Pylā-des*, *Pythagōras*; *Sarmātæ*, *Sarsīna*, *Semēle*, *Semirāmis*, *Sequāni*, & -a, *Serīphos*, *Sicōris*, *Socrātes*, *Sodōma*, *Sotādes*, *Spartācūs*, *Spo-rādes*, *Strongȳle*, *Stymphālus*, *Sybāris*; *Taygētus*, *Telegōnus*, *Te-le-māchus*, *Tenēdos*, *Tarrāco*, *Theophānes*, *Theophilus*, *Tomȳris*; *Urbīcus*; *Venēti*, *Vologēsus*, *Volūsus*; *Xenocrātes*; *Zoīlus*, *Zopȳrus*.

The penult of several words is doubtful: thus, *Batāvi*, *Lucan*. *Batāvi*, *Juv.* & *Mart.* *Fortuitus*, *Horat.* *Fortuitus*, *Mart.* Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*, *Stat.* *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præfotor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity, there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short ; as, *Musā*, *templā*, *Tydeā*, *lampādā*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long ; as, *Musā*, *Ænēā* ; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*, as, *O Æneā*, *O Pallā*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long ; as, *Amā*, *frustrā*, *prætereā*, *ergā*, *intrā*.

Exc. *Itā*, *quiā*, *ejā*, *posteā*, *putā*, (adv.) are short ; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contrā*, *ultrā*, and the compounds of *ginta* ; as, *trigintā*, &c. *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short ; as, *Natē*, *sedilē*, *patrē*, *currē*, *nempē*, *antē*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long ; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē* ; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quē*, *vē*, *nē* ; and these syllabical adjectives, *ptē*, *cē*, *fē* ; as, *suaptē*, *hujuscē*, *tutē* ; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long ; as, *Calliōpē*, *Anchisē*, *fidē*. So *rē-*, and *diē*, with their compounds, *quare*, *hodiē*, *pridiē*, *postridiē*, *quotidiē* : Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē*, *melē*, *Tempē* ; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation ; as, *Docē*, *manē* ; but *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long ; as, *placidē*, *pulchrē*, *valdē*, contracted for *validē* : To these add *fermē*, *ferē*, and *ohē* ; also all adverbs of the superlative degree ; as *doctissimē*, *fortissimē* : But *benē* and *malē* are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long ; as, *Domini*, *patri*, *doceri*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short ; as, *Alexī*, *Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common ; as *Palladi*, *Minoīdi*.

Mihī,

Mibi, tibi, sibi, are also common : so likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi* ; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

O.

XIV. *O* final is common ; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long ; as, *ō, do, stō, prō* : The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long : as, *librō, dominō* : Also Greek nouns, as, *Didō*, and *Athō* the genit. of *Athos*, and adverbs derived from nouns ; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō* ; likewise, *illō, idcirco, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short ; *Egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illicō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō* : but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long ; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long ; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and *Y*.

XV. *U* final is long ; *Y* final is short ; as, *Vultū* : *Molȳ*.

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R*, and *T*, in the end of a word, are short ; as,

Ab, apūd, semēl, precōr, capūt.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl, pār* and its compounds, *impar, dispar, &c.* ; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr* ; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive ; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr* ; likewise *aēr, aērēr* : to which add Hebrew names ; as, *Jōb, Daniēl, Davīd*.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short : as, *Militūm oīo*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel ; thus, *milit' oīo* ; except in compound words ; as, *circūmāgo, circūmēc*.

C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long ; as,

Ac,

Ac, sic, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn, Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn; Lacedæmon, &c.*

The following words are short, *něc* and *doněc*; *forsitān, īn, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *īnis* in the genitive; as, *carmēn, crimēn*; together with several Greek nouns; as, *Iliōn, Pylōn, Alexīn.*

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

The following words are short, *anās, ēs*, from *sum*, and *penēs*; *ōs*, having *ōssis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās, herōās, Phrygēs, Arcadōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlōs, &c.* and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS, US, and YS*, in the end of a word, are short; as,

Turrīs, legīs, legīmūs, annūs, Capīs.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnīs*, for *omnes, fructūs, manūs*: also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short; as, *floribūs, fructibūs, rebūs.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *ītīs, īnīs, or entīs*; as, *līs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Simoīs*: To these add the adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *ītīs*; as, *audīs, abīs, possīs*. *Rīs* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grus, sūs*: also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtīs, un-tīs, or ūdis*; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, amāthūs, tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third

declension ; as, *Cliūs*, *Sapphūs*, *Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative ; as, *Panthūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative ; as, *Phorcȳs*, *Trachȳs*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common ;

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVE and COMPOUND Words.

I. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives ; as,

āmīcus, from	āmo.	Decōro, from	decus, -ōris.
Auctiōnor,	auctio, -ōnis.	Exūlo,	ēxul, -ūlis.
Auctōro,	auctor, -ōris.	Pāvidus,	pāveo.
Audītor,	audītum.	Quirīto,	Quiris, -ītis.
Auspīcor,	auspex, īcis.	Rādīcītūs,	rādix, -īcis.
Caupōnor,	caupo, -ōnis.	Sospīto,	sospes, -ītis.
Compētītor,	compētītūm.	Nātura,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornix, -īcis.	Māternus,	māter.
Custōdio,	custos, -ōdis.	Lēgebam, &c.	lēgo.
Decōrus,	decor, -ōris.	Lēgerām, &c.	lēgi.

E X C E P T I O N S.

1. Long from short.

Dēni, from dēcem.	Suspīcio, from suspīcor.	Mōbīlis, from mōveo.
Fōmes, fōveo.	Sēdes, sēdeo.	Hūmor, hūmus.
Hūmanus, hōmo.	Sēcius, sēcus.	Jūmentum, jūvo.
Rēgula, rēgo.	Pēnuria, pēnus.	Vox, vōcis, vōco, &c.

2. Short from long.

Arena and ārīsta, from āreō.	Lūcerna, from	lūceo.
Nōta, and nōto,	nōtus.	dūco.
Vādum,	vādo.	stābam.
Fīdes,	fīdo.	dis, dītis.
Sōpor,	sōpio.	quālus. &c.

2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compouds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them ; as,

Dēducō,

Dēdūco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōf ēro*, *antēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērūdio*, *exūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investīgo*, *prægrāvo*, *prænāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prægrāvis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* & *suffōco*, *diffidit* from *diffindo*, and *diffidit* from *diffido*, *indīco* and *indīco*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnīmus* and *devēnīmus*; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *īncīdo*, from *in* and *cēdo*, *suffōco*, from *sub* and *fau*, *fau*cis. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ādmitto*, *pērcello*, *dēsculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. 1. *Agnītum*, *cognītum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *innūba*, *prēnūba*, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, *nībilum*, *semisōpitūs*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio*: *ambītus*, a participle from *ambīo*, is long; but the substantives *ambītus* and *ambītio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prīfugus*, *prōnēpos*, *prēneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānius*, *prōfecto*, *prēcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; *propīno*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpīna*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sēpāro*, *dīvello*: except *dīrīmo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmitto*, *rēf ēro*: except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *trēcenti*, *nēfas*, *nēque*, *patēfacio*, &c. *Caprīcornus*, *omnipotens*, *agricōla*, *signīfīco*, *bīformis*, *alīger*, *Trīvia*, *tubicen*, &c. *duōdē*, *cīm*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *cīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately;

rately ; as, *ludim̄aḡister*, *lucr̄ifac̄io*, *s̄iquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter short ; also *ubique*, *ibidem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is founded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphāsis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds ; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked ['] ; as, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone ; and is thus marked [`] as *dōct̄ē*, This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable ; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^] ; as *amāre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction ; as in these adverbs, *aliquò*, *continuò*, *dōct̄ē*, *unà*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poētā*, *gloriā*, in the ablative : *fructūs*, *tu-multūs*, in the genitive : *nōstrūm*, *vestrūm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos* ; *ergā*, on account of ; *ossidit*, he slew ; *Pompīlī*, for *Pompili* ; *amārit*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A VERSE is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always turn back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cassura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two syllables.

Spondēus, consists of two long ; as, *ōmnēs*.

Pyrrhichius, two short ; as, *dēūs*.

Iambus, a short and a long ; as, *āmāns*.

Trochæus, a long and a short ; as, *sērvūs*.

2. Feet of three syllables.

Dactylus, a long and two short ; as, *scribērē*.

Anapæstus, two short and a long ; as, *pītās*.

Amphimäcer, a long, a short, and a long ; as, *chārītās*.

Tribrachys, three short ; as, *dōmīnūs*.

The following are not so much used.

<i>Molossus</i> ,	<i>dēlētānt.</i>	<i>Antispastus</i> ,	<i>ālēxāndēr,</i>
<i>Amphibrachys</i> ,	<i>bēnōrē.</i>	<i>Ionicus minor,</i>	<i>prōpērābānt.</i>
<i>Bacchīus</i> ,	<i>dōlōrēs.</i>	<i>Ionicus major,</i>	<i>cālcāribus.</i>
<i>Antibacchīus</i> ,	<i>pēllūntūr.</i>	<i>Pæon primus,</i>	<i>tēmpōrībus.</i>

3. Feet of four syllables.

<i>Procelesmaticus</i> ,	<i>bōmīnībūs.</i>	<i>Pæon secundus,</i>	<i>pōtēn:īā.</i>
<i>Dispondeus</i> ,	<i>ōrātōrēs.</i>	<i>Pæon tertius,</i>	<i>ānimātūs.</i>
<i>Dijambus</i> ,	<i>āmēnītās.</i>	<i>Pæon quartus,</i>	<i>cēlērītās.</i>
<i>Choriambus</i> ,	<i>pōntīfīcēs.</i>	<i>Epitrītus primus,</i>	<i>vō:ūptātēs.</i>
<i>Ditrochæus</i> ,	<i>Cāntīlēnā.</i>	<i>Epitrītus secundus,</i>	<i>pēnitētēs.</i>
		<i>Epitrītus tertius,</i>	<i>dīscōrdītēs.</i>
		<i>Epitrītus quartus,</i>	<i>fērtūtātēs.</i>

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalecticus* or *Acatalecticus*, an Acatalectic verse : If a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus*; if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalecticus*, or *Hypermeter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Glausula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

I. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdērē | quæ vēl- | lēm cālā- | mō pēr- | mīsīt ā- | grēstī. *Virg.*
Infān- | dūm Rē- | gīnā, jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cārā Dē- | nūm sōbō- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jōvīs | Incrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used, when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnīlā | Mērcūrī- | ū simī- | līs vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque
Et flavos crines ————— *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*

Pinguis et ingratæ premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre su patulæ recubans sub tegmine sagi.

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense ; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*

Illi inter se magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

Accipiunt inimicum imbreui, rimisque faticunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse is the CÆSURA.

Cæsura is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot ; as,

At rē-gīnā grā-vī jām-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris* : When on the fifth half foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris* : When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthēmimēris* : and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennēemimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse ; as,

Illē lā-tūs nīvē-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hȳā-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim ; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause* ; as,

Tityre dum rede- O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long ; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose ; as,

Rōmæ mœniā tērūit īmpīgēr Hānnibāl ārmīs. *Ennius.*

The

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sēqui- | tūr sē- | mīnā quīs- | quē sūæ. *Propert.*
Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs īn ūm- | nē mēīs. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a Cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæsura: thus,

Nātū- | ræ sēqui- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīsquē sū- | æ:
Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | ūmnē mē- | īs.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadēan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē | gībūs. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus; In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæcē- | nās atā- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYC-

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and Pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tibi crē- | dītūm. *Horat.*

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two daœtyle; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, spondee, daœtyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ, scēlē- | rīsqué | pūrūs. *Horat.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a daœtyle and spondee; as,

Jūpītēr | ūrgēt. *Horat.*

6. PHERECRATICIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, daœtyle, and spondee; thus,

Nigrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs. *Horat.*

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet; namely, a spondee, a daœtyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmām | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | ūptēs. *Martial.*

8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Daœtyletic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two daœtyles; as,

Vīrtūs | rēpūl- | s̄æ | nēsciā | sōrdidæ. *Horat.*

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a Cæsura; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aūt | pōnūt | s̄ēcū- | rēs. *Horat.*

10. The

IO. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbitri- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūræ. *Horat.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

II. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimeter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sīt æ- | sūō- | sūīs. *Horat.*

Trimeter, Sūīs | ēt ī- | psū Rō- | mā vi- | rībūs | rūīt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cānīdī- | ā trā- | ētāvīt | dāpēs. *Horat.*

Vidē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmūm. *Id.*

Trimeter, Quōquō | scēlē- | sī rūī- | tīs aūt | cūt dēx- | tērīs. *Id.*

Pāvidūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aūt ād | vēnām | lāquēō | grūēm. *Id.*

Alīti- | būs āt- | quē cānī- | būs hōmī- | cīd' Hē-ātōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tētrameter* or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES in SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalœpha*, *Ecthipsis*, *Synæsis*, *Diæsis*; *Systole*, and *Diatostole*.

1. **SYNALOEPHA** is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. Virg.

to be scanned thus,

Cōnticū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbānt.

The *Synalœpha*, is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divūmque æterna potestas. Virg.

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. Virg.

Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia singunt. Id.

Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.

Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.

Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. **ECTHIPSIS** is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! Pers.
thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst īn | rēbūs īn- | ānē.

Sometimes the *Synalœpha* and *Ecthipsis* are found at the end of the verse; as,

*Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.* Virg.
*Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant.* Id.

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus,
qu' Adspicit; *r' Ardua*.

3. **SYNAESIS** is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthon* for *Phaethon*.

So ēi in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, deinde, *Pompei*; ūi in *huic*, *cūi*; öi, in *proinde*; èd, in *aureā*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*

Proinde tono eloquio, solitum tibi. *Virg.*

Filius huic eontrà, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*

Aureā percussum virgā, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antehac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, dēest, deerit, vēhemens, anteit, eodem, alveo, graveolentis, omnia, semianimis, semihomo, fluviorum, totius, promontorium, &c. as,

Unā eādemque viā sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*

Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*

Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid dēest. *Hor.*

Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulentia deerit. *Virg.*

Vēhemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*

Tē semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcæic.* *Hor.*

Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*

Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*

Inde ubi venere ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*

Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*

Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*

Semiheminis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*

Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*

Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*

Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genva*, *tenvis*; *arjetat*, *tenvia*, *abjete*, *pitvita*; *parjetibus*, *Nasidjenus*; for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c. as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. *Luer.*

Genvâ labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*

Arjetat in portas & duros objice postes. *Id.*

Velleraque ut soliis depestant tenvia Seres. *Id.*

Ædificant, fectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*

Præcipuè fanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*

Parjetibusque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*

Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati. *Hor.*

4. DIÆRESIS divides one syllable into two; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ*; *Troïæ*, for *Trojæ*; *Persœus*, for *Perseus*; *milius*, for *milvus*; *soliuit*, for *solvit*; *voluuit*, for *volvit*; *aquiæ*, *sueetus*, *süasit*, *suevos*, *relanguit*, *reliquias*, for *aqua*, *suetus*, &c. as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
 Stamina non ulli dissoluenda Deo. *Pentam.* *Tibullus.*
 Debuerant fusos evolüsse suos. *Id.* *Ovid.*
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque süctæ. *Horat.*
 Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque süadent. *Lucr.*
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Süevos. *Lucan.*
 Imposito fratri moribunda relangüit ore. *Ovid.*
 Reliqüas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. SYSTÖLE is when a long syllable is made short; as the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulérunt, fastidia menses. *Virg.*

6. DIASTÖLE is when a syllable usually short is made long; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse;
Confidant, si tantus amōr, et mœnia condant. *Virg.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called PROSTHESIS; as, *gnatus*, for *navus*; *tetuli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTHESIS; as, *reli-giō*, for *religiō*: *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called PARAGOGĒ; as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHÄRÉSIS; as, *natus*, for *gnatus*; *tenderant*, for *te-tenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called SYNCÖPE; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti*; *deūm*, for *des-rum*: If from the end, APOCÖPE; as, *viden'*, for *videsire*; *Antōnī*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called METATHESIS; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called ANTITHESIS; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

Different kinds of POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a Poem, (*Poema* or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION; in praise

praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPI-TAPH, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*: A poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its Point. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an AENIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour:

I nter cun&a; micans I gniti sidera c&el I,
E xpellit tenebras E toto Ph&ab;us ut orb E;
S ic c&et&as removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,
V ivificansque simul V ero pr&ae;cordia mot V
S olem justitiae S ese probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds; Historical, Didactic, or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle); and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral poems*; or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Aeneas in Italy in the *Eneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES in poems.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*, Lucan, Silius Italicus,

icus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse : Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCÖLON, sc. *poema v. carmen*; or MONOCÖLOS, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, DICÖLON; and that which has three kinds of verse TRICÖLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICÖLON DISTRÖPHON; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an HEXAMETER, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiacum*,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects ; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegëia, solve capillos ;
Ah ! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoses ; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Trifstrophon* ; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetrastrophon* ; as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti ; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. Horat.

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Trifstrophon* ; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetrastrophon* ; as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace ; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cælum, negatâ tentat iter viâ ;
Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
Spennit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Sirophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE IN HORACE AND BUCHANAN.

I. ODES AND PSALMS OF ONE KIND OF VERSE.

1. *Asclepiadēan*, See N° 3. page 270. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8.

III. 30.—Buch. Ps. 28, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus : Hor. I. 11, 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Ps. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Ps. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 12. — Buch. Ps. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. The Greater *Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Ps. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable ; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot ; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyl, and anapestus.—Buch. Ps. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyl ; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimacer, or trochee.—Ps. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable ; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Ps. 131.

II. ODES AND PSALMS OF TWO KINDS OF VERSE FOLLOWING ONE ANOTHER ALTERNATELY.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadēan*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3. 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Ps. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line, (*Dactylico-Trochaic*,) consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last ; every second verse (*Iambic Archiloelian*) consisting of an iambus or spondæus, an iambus, a cæsura, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4. 3. The

3. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Ps. 4. 111.
4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer: Every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.
5. The first line, (*Trochaic*), consisting of three trochees and a cæsura; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, № 9. Hor. II. 13.
6. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*), two dactyls and a cæsura. Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Ps. 12.
7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter*; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, № 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Ps. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.
8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter*; the second (*Sapphic*) consists of two dactyls, a cæsura, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondeus, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, № 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, № 11. Hor. Epod. 11.
9. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 81.
10. *Hexameter*, and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Ps. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.
11. The first line, *Sapphic*, № 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, № 11. Buch. Ps. 8.
12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Ps. 33, 70, 121, 142.
13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Ps. 36, 63.
14. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Ps. 68.
15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Ps. 88, 114, 137.
16. The first line, (*Trochaic*), three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*, № 11. Buch. Ps. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, N° 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Ps. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67; 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 22. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Ps. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyl, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, No 4. admitting also a spondee, or iambus in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. Buch. Ps. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, N° 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N° 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23, III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Ps. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The first two lines, the *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. The fourth, the *Lesser Alcaic*, N° 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadēan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyls and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted; as, Buch. Ps. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, i. e. consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *aléft*, *créate*: or *Trochaic*, i. e. consisting of a long and a short syllable; as, *hōly*, *lōfty*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of four syllables, or of two feet; as,

With ravish'd ears,
The monarch hears. Dryden.

2. Of six syllables, or of three feet; as,

Aloft in awful state,
The godlike hero sat. Dryden.

3. Of eight syllables, or of four feet; as,

While dangers hourly round us rise,
No caution guards us from surprise. Francis' Horace.

4. Of ten syllables, or of five feet, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

Poetic

Poetic fields encompass me around,
And still I seem to tread on Classic ground ;
For here the Muse so oft her harp has strung,
That not a mountain rears its head unsung.

Addis*n.*

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse: thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along, *Pope.*

Waller was smooth; but Dryden taught to join
The varying verse, the full resounding line, }
The long majestic march, and energy divine. } *Pope.*

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest;
For thèè the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast, }
And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. } *Dryden.*

Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,
At length by fate to power divine restor'd,
His thunder taught the world to know its lord, }
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. } *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
And many an humorous, many an amorous lay.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Was sung by many a Bard on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself: the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, o'er for over; e'er for ever, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of three syllables; as,

Dreadful gleams,
Dismal screams, &c. *Pope.*

2. Of

2. Of five syllables ; as,

In the days of old,
Stories plainly told,
Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of seven syllables ; as,

Fairest Piece of well form'd earth,
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, *i. e.* a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short, and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,
'Till the roofs all around,
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,
How the nightingales warble their loves! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions with absolute sway,
And grow wiser and better, as life wears away. *Id.*

In this measure, a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot; as,

The sword or the dart
Shall pierce my sad heart. *Addison.*

Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,
Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c.

I vow'd to the muses my time and my care,
Since neither could win me the smiles of the fair. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems; for generally in longer works the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of Stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number

number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together ; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My rising soul surveys :
Transported with the view, I'm lost,
In wonder, love, and praise. Addison.

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another ; as,

Keep silence, all created things,
And wait your Maker's nod :
The muse stands trembling while she sings
The honours of her God. Wat. s.

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse ; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

In Blank verse.

'Tis heav'n itself that points out an hereafter. Addison.

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.

The piece, you think, is incorrect ? Why, take it,
I'm all submission ; what you'd have it, make it. Pope.

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

"Twas when the seas were roaring,
With hollow blasts of wind,
A damsel lay deplored,
All on a rock reclin'd. Gay.

4. *In*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,
Prais'd the sly musician's art ;
Love, his light disguise rejecting,
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenstone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,
Birds delighting. *Addison.*

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah ! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a bother.
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenstone.*
Now with furies surrounded,
Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect ; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country ;
Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*
The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
Darkness inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Otway.*

APPENDIX

APPENDIX I.

Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Month.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (.).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it. For the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the Colon, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon, the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon, double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?) the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!) and the *Parenthesis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon,

colon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other marks made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* (') ; *Asterisk* (*) ; *Hyphen* (-) ; *Obelisk* (†) ; *Double Obelisk* (‡) ; *Parallel Lines* (||) ; *Paragraph* (¶) ; *Section* (§) ; *Quotation* (“ ”) ; *Crotchets* [] ; *Brace* ({ }) ; *Ellipsis* (. . . or —) ; *Caret* (^) ; which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Seslertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra*, *Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinae Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Coss. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Impp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq; *Esquire*; Dr *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt Hon. *Right Honorable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratia*; v. g. *verbi gratia*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I. denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combination of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what its stands for to the greater; thus,

IV.	Four.	V.	Five.	VI.	Six.
IX.	Nine.	X.	Ten.	XI.	Eleven.
XL.	Forty.	L.	Fifty.	LX.	Sixty.
XC.	Ninety.	C.	A hundred.	CX.	A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* is marked thus, c*io*, which in later times was contracted into m. *Five hundred* is marked thus, i*o*. or, by contraction, d.

The annexing of o to i*o*. makes its value ten times greater; thus, i*oo*. marks *five thousand*; and i*ooo*. *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of c, together with the annexing of o to the number of c*io*. makes its value ten times greater; thus, cc*ioo*. denotes *ten thousand*; and ccc*iooo*. *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, ccc*iooo*, ccc*iooo*. signified *two hundred thousand* &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn

drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, III. denotes *three thousand*; X *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or *figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nought, nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant Figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8 *Eight*. 85 *Eighty-five*. 856 *Eight hundred and fifty-six*. 8566 *Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six*.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 *One*. 10 *Ten*. 100 *A hundred*. 1000 *A thousand*.
2 *Two*. 20 *Twenty*. 200 *Two hundred*. 2000 *Two thousand*.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together; CIC, CCCXCVIII. or M,DCCXCVIII.
1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked

Kalendis

Kalendis Januariis or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: The day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: The day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In Leap-year, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos;
Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUIS tenet octo viginti;
At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.
Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas.
Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes post idus luceas dic esse kalendas,
Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. *Kal.* of the following month; the 15th, XVII. *Kal.* &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. *Kal.* &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. *Kal.* &c. And the 14th day of *February*, XVI. *Kal.* *Martii* or *Martias*. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

APPENDIX II.

Containing RULES from RUDDIMAN'S Grammar, which will be found explained in the Pages of this Book that are marked before each Rule.

I. Concerning the GENDER of NOUNS.

Names of Trees. See page 12.

1. Arbor femineis dabitur : sed mas *oleaster*,
Et rhamnus : petit hic potius *cytisusque rubusque* :
Hic quandoque larix, lotus volet, atque cupressus :
Hoc quod in um, suberque, siler dant, robur acerque.

Nouns in A of the first declension. p. 13. and 18.

2. Hæc dat A quod primæ est : sed neutrum *Pascha* requirit.
Hadria mas æquor, pariterque *cometa, planeta* :
Masca & interdum talpam damamque videbis.

Nouns in US and OS. p. 27. 39. and 48.

4. Hæc *domus & vannus*, pro fructu *ficus & alvus* ;
Sic humus atque manus, poscunt : acus addito quartæ,
Porticus atque tribus. Capit hoc *virus pelagusque.*

Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini
 Sæpè solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem :
 Femineum sed multa petunt : ut *abyssus, eremus,*
Antidotusque, pharus, dialectus, carbasus : adde
 Ex *odos & phthongos* genitum, quæque à generali
 Voce genus plantæ & gemmæ capiunt muliebre.

Hic aut hæc donat *balanus, specus, atque phaselus,*
Barbitus, atque penus, grossus : sed *grus, atomusque*
 Femineum potius cupiunt ; *colus* adde, virile
 Quod rarò invenies : muliebre at contrà *camelus*
 Est ubi nonnunquam videoas. Vult hic dare *vulcus*,
 Sed magis hoc. Ternæ *specus & penus* addito neutrīs.

Nouns of the Third Declension in O. p. 30. and 31.

7. Hic dat O : femineis *halo* cum *caro* dantur & *echo* ;
 Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,
 Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.
 Adjice femineis DO, GO : sed mascula *cudo*,
Harpagy, sic *ordo*, simul *udo*, *tendo*, *ligo*que.
 Rariūs hæc *margo*, vati est, hic sæpe *cupido*,
Arrhabo cum *cards*, muliebria vix imitanda.

C and L. p. 32. rule 3.

9. Quod fit in L, vel T, C, vel M, neutralibus adde :
 Mascula *sol*, *mugil*, seu *sal*, quod rarius hoc vult.

N. p. 32. rule 4.

10. Masculeum capit N. Finita in MEN dato neutris,
 Quæque secunda creat, cum *gluten* & *inguen* & *unguen* :
 Addideris *pollen*. *Sindon* petit hæc, & *aedon* ;
Alcyonem junges, data postea queis comes *icon*.

AR and UR. p. 33. rule 5.

11. Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculeum *salar* optat.
 Hoc dat UR. Hic *furfur* capiet, cum *vulture* *turtur*.

ER and OR. p. 33. rule 6.

13. ER capit hic. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :
 At *tuber* hic fructus ; *tuber* quemcunque tumorem
 Significans neutrale petit ; cumque *ubere spinther*,
Verque, *cadaver*, *iter*. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi *linter*.
 Hic dat OR. Hæc *arbor* : *cor*, *adrorque* hoc, *marmor*
 & *æquor*.

AS. p. 34. rule 7.

15. AS petit hæc. Neutrum est *vas*, *vasis*, queisque Pelasgi
 Dant *atis* in patrio : quibus *antis* masculo sunto.

ES. p. 35. rule 8.

- 16 Hæc dabit ES. Capient *ales* hic hæcve, *palumbes*,
 Atque *dies* : sed mas proles : mas *peoples* & *ames*,

Fomes,

*Fomes, pes, paries, palmes, cum limite stipes,
Queis addes trames, termes, cum gurgite cespes ;
Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio ; sed neutra capeſſunt
Hippomanes, panaces, nepenthes, ſic cacoethes.*

IS. p. 36. rule 9.

17. IS dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piscis & axis,*
Glis, callis, vermis, vectis, mensis, cucumisque,
Mugilis & postis cum sanguine fascis & orbis,
Fustis item collis, caulisque & follis & ensis,
Serpentemque notans cenchris, cum vomere, torris,
In NIS finitum Latium, lapis, unguis, aqualis.
Hic aut hæc finis, clunis, cum torque canalis,
Dant scrobis, ac anguis : corbis muliebre præoptat ;
Masculeo potius gaudent pulvis, cinis, amnis.

OS. p. 38. rule 10.

19. Os maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos, melos, os, os,*
Postulat hæc arbos, cos, dos, & origine Græcâ
Orta eos, arctos, perimetros cum diametro.

US. p. 38. rule 11.

20. Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.
Femineum voluere palus, subſcusque ſalusque,
Quæque ſenex, juvenis, cum ſervio, nomina formant,
Et Virtus, incus. At mascula ſunt lepus & mus,
Et pus compositum : petit at muliebre lagopus.

ÆS and AUS. p. 39. rule 13.

21. ÆS neutrale petit : *laus, fraus, muliebria funto,*

S with a consonant before it, p. 40. rule 14.

22. S dato femineis, ſi confona ponitur ante.
Mascaſ ſed pons, fons, mons, ſeps, dum denatat an-
guem ;
Et queis P præit S polysyllaba, forcipe dempto,
Densque, chalybs, cum gryphe, rudens, quod rariūs
hæc vult.

Hic

Hic aut hæc *serpens* dat, *scrobs*, *stirps* trucus, *adeps*:
que.

Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebre præoptat.

X. p. 41. rule 16.

23. Hæc petit X. *Ax*, *ex maribus polysyllaba* junge :
Dic tamen hæc *fornax*, *smilax*, *carex*, *velut halex*,
Et cum prole panax, & *forfex atque supellex*.
Mascula sunto calix, *phœnix*, *pro vermeque bombyx*,
Et coccyx, *fornix*, & *onyx vas*, aut lapis unde
Vas fit ; *oryx*, *tradux*, *grex his adjunge calyxque*.
Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum *grege cernes*.
Hæc modò feminis, maribus modò juncta videbis ;
Calx pro parte pedis metâve laboris & *hystrix*,
Imbrex ; *sardonychem jungas*, *rumicem*, *silicemque* :
Hic imagè vult *cortex* & *obex*, cum *pumice*, *varix* :
Hæc potius *limax*, *lynx*, & cum *sandice perdix* :
Atriplici neutrum melius dabo quam muliebre.

II. RULES Concerning the OBLIQUE CASES.

The Accusative Singular of the Third Declension, p. 43.

Finit in EM quartus. Petit *im sibi ravis*, *amussis*,
Vis cucumisque simul, *tussis*, *sitis atque sinapis*,
Cannabis & gummis, *buris*, *conjunge mephitim*.
Adde urbes, aliosque locos, amnesque, deosque,
IS quibus est recto : sed & hæc dant in quoque quarto.

Sæpius *im*, *turris*, *puppis*, cum *reste securis* :
Em, sed & *im* quandoque, volunt *sibi febris aqualis*,
Et *navis*, *pelvis*, *clavis* ; sic *lens*, *strigilisque*,
Sementisque, *cutis*. Cumulant his plura vetusti.

Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græcā,
Sæpe & *Tros*, *Minos*, *heros*, quartum per a formant :
EUS ea vult. Vix *em* dato *Pan*, cumque æthere *delphin*.

Ablative Singular. p. 44.

Sextus e vult : quibus at rectus per E clauditur i dant,
(Propria ni fuerint :) AL & AR neutralia junge.
Deme *jubar*, *sal*, *far*, *par* fixum, *nectar* & *hepar*,
Sed solet has leges migrare licentia vatum.

I quoque

*I quoque dant in & im tantum facientia quarto.
Cannabis at Bætis, Tigris, voluistis utrumque.
Ym quibus in quarto est, ye dant, aut m modo demunt.
Dant e vel i sexto, queis quartus in em vel in im fit.
Excipe sed restis, quod e semper, cum cutè, donat.
I magè sementis, strigilis petit atque securis.
Quod simul im vel idem format, capit i sibi rarò.
Hæc quoque dant e vel i : finis, cum rure supellex,
Occiput & vectis : per UBI cum quæritur, urbes,
Et pugil & mugil, jungas. Per e sæpiùs effer,
I raro, civis, classis, fors, anguis, & imber,
Unguis, avis, postis, fustis, simul amnis & ignis.
Usus plura tulit priscus, quæ respuit ætas
Cultior. I tantum sexto retineto canalis.*

Genitive Plural. p. 45.

*Præbet ium patrius, si sextus in i fuit antè.
Tolle vigil, vetus, uber, inops, supplexque memorque,
Mugilis & consors, quibus & pugil & celer adde ;
Atque gradus medios ; (sed ium plus poscit.) Adhæ-
rent
His composta genus, capio, facioque caputque.
Sextus e si tantum dederit, capit um genitivus.
AS sed ium Latiale petit : poly syllaba deme,
Queis magis um placuit. Sed ium quærentibus adde
Nomen in IS vel in ES non crescens : jungito & NS :
Tolle parens, vates, panis, juvenisque, canisque.*

*Donat ium Samnis, linter, caro, dos, & os ossis,
Glis, nix, noxque cohors, mus, faux, uter : adde Qui-
ritem,
Atque larem, litem, cotem, cor ; compositumque
Uncia, quod simul as genuit : monosyllaba junge
Consorna quæ duplex claudit. Bos ritè boum dat.*

Dative Plural of the fourth Declension, p. 48.

*Partus ūbus, specus, artus, acus, dant & lacus, arcus,
Atque tribus : sed utrumque genu, portusque, veruque,*

III. RULES concerning ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE. p. 71.

Hæc viduata gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo ;
Ultimus, ulterior, prior, & primus, propiorque,
Proximus, oxy or atque oxyssimus adjiciantur :
Deterior jungi quibus & deterrimus ambit.

Adjectives wanting the COMPARATIVE. p. 71

Nuperus, orba gradu medio, novus ac meritus sunt ;
Par, sacer, invictus, persuasus, & inclytus adde.

Adjectives wanting the SUPERLATIVE. p. 71.

Hæc superante carent : *satur, & diuturnus, & ingens,*
Atque senex, juvenis, adolescens, pronus, opimus ;
Et finita BILIS propè cuncta, vel ILIS, & ALIS :
Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE and SUPERLATIVE. p. 71.

Anterior solum, sequior, satiorque leguntur.

IV. RULES concerning VERBS.

VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION wanting both PRETERITE and SUPINE. p. 108.

— *Labo, nexo, cum plico nil dant.*

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE. p. 108.

Quod dat UI neutrum, timeo, fileoque, supina Nulla dabunt. Valeo, placebo, caret & licet aufer, Paret, item jaceo, caleo, noceo, doleoque ; Queis coalet, latet atque meret sociabis, oletque. Arceo quod simplex nescit, dant nata supinum : Quod retinent taceo, lateo, sobolique recusant.

— *Viduata supinis*

Si capiunt urget, cum fulget, turget, & alget.

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting both PRETERITE and SUPINE. p. 111.

Nil formant lactet, livet, scateoque renidet, Mæret, aæret, pollet, flavet, cum denseo glabret.

VERBS

VERBS of the THIRD CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE ;
and some also the PRETERITE. p. 113.

SCO. p. 114.

Disco

Vult didici primam geminans : sic posco, poposci ;
Dispescit, compescit UI dant : cuncta supinis
Orba. Nihil glisco, nihil Inceptiva crearunt.

UO. p. 113.

Nulla, supina dabunt metuo, pluo, congruo, sicut
Annuo, cum sociis ; quibus ingruo, respuo junges.

DO. p. 116.

Tundo facit tutudi, tunsum compostaque tusum.
Et cado vult cecidi casum ; sed nata supinum
(*Incido* si demas, *rerido*, simul *occido*,) spernunt.
Præterito *Distrido*, rudo, dant, absque supinis,
Sidoque, sed soboli *fedeo* dat mutuo *sedi*.

GO. p. 118.

Nil vergo capessit.

XI *clango, ningo*, dat et *ango*, supinaque nulla.

VERBS of the FOURTH CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE
p. 124.

Cæcutit, gestit, glocit, & dementit, inepit,
Nulla supina dabunt, cum *prosilit* atque *ferocit*.

DEPONENT VERBS wanting the PARTICIPLE PERFECT, p. 128.

Nil formant vescor, liquor, medeor, reminiscor,
Irascor, ringor, prævertor, diffiteorque :
Queis demum adjungas divertor, dequefetiscor.

Verbs wanting the first person singular. p. 134.

Dor, furo, for, der, fer, vix unquam suscipit usus.

V. RULES

V. RULES concerning the QUANTITY of SYLLABLES, &c.

I. Concerning FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

A vowel before another. p. 253.

Vocalem breviant aliâ subeunte Latini.
*Ni capit r, fio produc : & nomina quintæ
 E servant longum, si præsit i, ceu speciei.*
*Anceps ius erit patrio : sed protrahe alius,
 Alterius brevia tantum ; commune sit ohe,
 Pompei, Cai, produc, conformia jungens.
 Dianam varia : longa aër, dius, & eheu,
 Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in ai.
 Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.*

A vowel before a mute and a liquid. p. 254.

*Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllaba eâdem,
 Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur anceps.
 Hanc tamea in prosa semper breviare memento.
 Sunt l, r, liquidæ, queis raro jungimus m, n.*

Contracted Syllables and Diphthongs. p. 254.

Vocalem efficiet semper contractio longam.
*Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis ;
 In Græcis semper : at PRÆ composta sequente
 Vocali brevia ; veluti præit atque præustus.*

Preterites and Supines. p. 255.

Præterita assumunt primam dissyllaba longam.
Tolle bilit, scidit, & fidit, ac tulit, ortaque do, sto.
*Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,
 Ut pario, peperi ; vetet id nisi consona bina.*
At quod cædo creat tardat, ceu pedo, secundam.
Cuncta Supina tenent primam dissyllaba longam :
Præter nata sero, cieo, lino, cum sine, sisto,
Quæ breviant ; eo, doque, ruo, quo junge, reorque.
Cætera præsentis mensuram verba reservant.
Excipe sed posui positum, genui genitumque,
Et potui ; quæ dant quoque silvo & volvo supina.

Præ tum vocalem polysyllaba cuncta supina.
 Producunt, *atum*, quibus, *etum* finis, & *utum* :
Ivi præterito veniens sociabis & *itum*.
 Cætera corripies in *itum* quæcunque residunt.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A in the end of a word. p. 261.

Casibus A flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,
 Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in AS fit.
 Casibus haud flexum produc. *Ita*, cum *quia*, & *eja*,
 Et *puta* non verbum subduxeris, hallequeluja.
 Curta quoque interdum, *contra*, *ultra*, & *ginta* creata.

E in the end of a word. p. 261.

E brevia. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ
 Cum natis. Addes pluralia cuncta : secundæ
 Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis
 Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.
 Adde à mobilibus flexûs quæcunque secundi
 Manârunt, summiq[ue] gradûs adverbia quævis.
 Sed *bene* cum *male* corripies, *inferne*, *superne*,
 Produçtis ferme atque ferè jungantur, & ohe.

I in the end of a word. p. 261.

I longum pono. Vocitantem corripe Græcis.
 His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.
 Sic variato *mihi*, *tibi* cum *sibi* : sed magè curtis
 Vult *ibi*, vultque *cui*, *nisi*, mox *ubi*, cum *quasi*, jungi.
 Sicuti sed breviant, cum *necubi*, *sicubi*, vates.

O in the end of a word. p. 262.

O commune loces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,
 Græcaque ceu *Dido*, ternum sextumque secundæ,
 Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,
 Quò jungens & eò. Variant at *denuò*, *serò*,
Mutuò, *postremò*, *verò* ; *modò* sed breve pones,
 Sæpiùs *ambo*, *duo*, *scio* corripe, & *illicò* & *imò*,
 Et *cedo da* signans, *ego queis homo*, cum *citò* junge.
 Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Maroni.
 Ergo pro causa produc : secus editur anceps.

U and Y in the end of a word. p. 262.

U semper longis, sed Y raptis jungere oportet.

B, D, L, M, R, and T, in the end of a word. p. 262.

Corripe B Latium : peregrinum at tendere malim.

D breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis.

L breve sit. Cum sol, sal, nil, tolluntur Hebræa.

M nunc vocalis perimit : rapuere vetusti.

R brevies. Produc cujus dat patrius eris ;

Addito Iber, ær, æther. Sit Celtiber anceps.

At par, far, lar, Nar, quoque cur, fur, adjice longis.

T breve semper erit nisi quondam syncopa tardet.

C and N in the end of a word. p. 262.

C produc, præter nec, donec : sed variabis

Hic benè pronomen : fac verbum jungimus isti.

N produc. Demas EN inis dans, quæque priore

Græca per ON casus numero tenuere secundæ ;

Et quartum casum, si sit brevis ultima recti.

Sin quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum :

Forsitan, in, forsan, tamen, an viden' insuper addens.

AS, ES, and OS, in the end of a word. p. 263.

AS produc. Patrio sed adis quod flebit, an asque.

Sit breve : plurales ternæ quibus addito quartos.

Ponitur ES longum. Pluralia corripe Græca

Quæ crescunt ; velut es de sum ; penes additur illi ;

Cum neutris ; & queis patrii penultima curta est

Ternæ. Tolle Ceres, paries, aries, abies, pes.

OS produc. Patrius brevis est, & compos & impos,

Osque offis prabens. Rectos breviato secundæ.

(O nisi det patrius :) neutra his dein addito Graiūm.

IS, US, and YS, in the end of a word. p. 263.

IS brevio. Verùm plurales protraho casus ;

ISque quod in patrio mutatur in itis & inis,

Aut entis ; gratisque foris, glis, vis quoque, nomen

Seu verbum fuerit : sicut & persona secunda

Protrahit IS, quoties itis plurale reponit.

In subjunctivi ris est communis futuro.

US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis
Ternæ vel quartæ produc : numerique secundi
In quarta primum, quartum, quintumque ; & in *uris*,
Dumve in *utis* patrius, vel in *udis*, & *untis*, *odis*ve est ;
Aut quintus sit in *u*, longus tum rectus habetur.
Ergo produces venerabile nomen IESUS.

YS junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps.
Longaque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus yn dant.

The last Syllable of a verse. p. 264.

Ultima cujusque est communis syllaba versūs.

III. The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVES and COMPOUNDS.

1. The Quantity of Derivatives. p. 264.

Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum :
Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio*, *regula*, *sedes*,
Seciūs, *humanus*, *penuria*, *mobilis*, *humor*,
Fumentum, *fomes*, primam producere gaudent.
Corripiunt sed *arista*, *vadum*, *sopor* atque *lucerna*,
Duxque ducis, *stabilisque*, *fides*, *ditioque*, *quasillus*,
Nata licet longis ; quæ pluraque suggeret usus.

2. The Quantity of Compouuds. p. 264.

Simplicium servant legem composta suorum,
Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.
At breviant *nihilum* cum *pejero*, *degero*, nec non
Veridicus, *sociis junctis*, & *semisopitus*.
Cognitus his addes, velut *agnitus*, *innubus*, atque
Pronubus : at longis *ambitus* mobile junges,
Imbecillus item : sed *connubium* variabis.
Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,
Juncta tenet : subiens illam nisi litera mutet.
Est PRO breve in Græcis, PRO longum ritè Latinis.
At rape quæ *fundus*, *fugio*, neptisque *neposque*,
Est *festum*, *fari*, *fateor*, fanumque creârunt.
Hisce profectò addes, pariterque *procella*, *protervus*.
Atque *propago* genus, *propago* protrahe vitis.
Propino varia, verbum *propago*, *profundo* :
Cum *pello*, *curo*, *genitis*, *Proserpina* junge.

SE produc & DI, præter *dirim̄o* atque *disertus*.
 Est RE breve: at viduum personis protrahe *refert*.
 Pars si componens fini prior i vel o donat,
 Sit breve: *vaticinor* monstraverit, *Arctophylaxque*.
I quibus est flexu mutabile jungito longis,
 Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens
 De quibus aut *Crasis* aliquid vel Syncopa tollit.
Idem masculine produc, & ubique & *ibidem* ; -
 Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composta diei.
 His *intro*, *retro*, *contraque* & *quando* creata
 (*Quandoquidem* excepto) bene junxeris, atque *alioquin*,
 Quæque per o magnum scribuntur nomina Graiis.

FIGURES of PROSODY.

Synalæpha and *Eēhlipsis*. p. 275.

Vocalem *Synalæpha*, *Eēhlipsis* & m quoque tollit,
 Altera cùm voci est vocalis prima sequenti.

Synærēsis and *Diærēsis*. p. 276.

Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* esto.
 Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Diæresis* unam.

Systōlē and *Diastolē*. p. 277.

Systola præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.
 Protrahit huic adversa *Diastola* corripiendas.

Figures of DICTION. p. 277.

PROSTHESIS apponit capiti, sed APHÆRESIS ausert.
 SYNCOPA de medio tollit, sed EPENTHESIS addit.
 Abstrahit APOCOPE fini, sed dat PARAGOGUE.
 Constringit CRASIS, distracta DIÆRESIS effert.
 Litera si legitur transposta, METATHESIS exit.
 ANTITHESIN dices, tibi litera si varietur.

F I N I S.



C

9

